

Q. H. 13

Joy Stephenson.

Cambridge junior

Jan: 12th 1892.

Trickie

Q.

19

ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND ANALYSIS.

Recd

Davidson and Alcock's

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

1. **A First English Grammar and Analysis.**
32 pages. Price 2d.
 2. **An Intermediate English Grammar and Analysis.**
80 pages. Price 6d
 3. **English Grammar and Analysis, with copious Exercises and Examination Papers.** 288 pages, strongly bound. Price 2s.
 4. **Complete Manual of Parsing.**
New Edition. 204 pages, strongly bound. Price 1s. 6d.
 5. **Complete Manual of Analysis and Paraphrasing.**
232 pages. Price 2s.
 6. **Key to English Grammar and Analysis.**
Strongly bound. Price 5s.
 7. **English Composition.** Price 1s. 6d.
 8. **Key to English Composition.** Price 3s. 6d.
-

The Parsing Book, or Blank Papers for Grammatical Analysis.

Arranged by Rev. W. B. GIBSONE, M.A. Price 1s. 6d.

Allmans' Parsing Copy Book, with full Instructions for Use. Price 1s.

Allmans' Copy Book of Grammatical Analysis, with Full Instructions for Use. Price 1s.

LONDON :

ALLMAN & SON (LTD.), 67, NEW OXFORD STREET.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

AND

ANALYSIS.

BY

WILLIAM DAVIDSON, B.A. (LOND.),

AND

JOSEPH CROSBY ALCOCK,

AUTHORS OF

"THE COMPLETE MANUAL OF PARSING," "INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND ANALYSIS," "FIRST ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND ANALYSIS," "COMPLETE MANUAL OF ANALYSIS AND PARAPHRASING," "KEY TO ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND ANALYSIS," "ENGLISH COMPOSITION," AND "KEY TO ENGLISH COMPOSITION."

NEW EDITION, WITH CONSIDERABLE ADDITIONS.



LONDON :

ALLMAN & SON, LTD., 67, NEW OXFORD STREET.

1889.

PE
1111
D38
1859
MAIN

PREFACE.

THE want of a really good, practical School Grammar is still felt, and it has been the aim of the writers of the present book to meet that want. Care has been taken to state the rules and definitions in accurate terms, at the same time keeping in view conciseness and clearness of expression. As the work is intended for schools and students of all classes, the writers have endeavoured to combine simplicity with exhaustiveness. Use has been made of the results of the labours of the best philologists so as to secure a scientific treatment of the subject. The writers wish to draw attention to the following features :—

1. *Copious Exercises*, consisting of sentences and passages from good English writers, are supplied.
2. *Syntax* is very fully treated.
3. An attempt has been made to render the *Analysis of Sentences* lucid and complete.
4. A sketch of the *Origin and History* of the Language is included.
5. Numerous *Questions for Examination* are appended to every important division of the book ; and *Examination Papers* selected from Government and University Examinations are placed at the end.
6. The whole work is carefully *graduated*.

Frequent reference is made to the “Complete Manual of Parsing,” a work by the present writers, which may, with advantage, be used in conjunction with this Grammar.

PREFACE TO NEW EDITION.

ADVANTAGE has been taken of the reprinting of this Grammar to subject the work to a thorough revision. Considerable additions have been made, especially with regard to the derivation of inflexional forms, and to the origin and history of the English language. Numerous additional Examination questions have been given from more recent papers. In dealing with the Moods of Verbs an arrangement has been made (see p. 57) to meet the wishes of those who omit the potential mood as well as of those who prefer to recognise the five moods usually given by grammarians. Notwithstanding the great extent of important matter which has been added, it has been so arranged that the new edition may read with the previous ones.

August, 1886.

CONTENTS.

| | SECTION |
|--|---------|
| INTRODUCTION | 1 |
| PART I. | |
| ORTHOGRAPHY | 5 |
| PART II.—ETYMOLOGY. | |
| A. Classification and Inflexion | 15 |
| CHAPTER I.—DEFINITIONS. | |
| 1. THE NOUN | 17 |
| 2. THE VERB | 18 |
| 3. THE ADJECTIVE | 19 |
| 4. THE PRONOUN | 20 |
| 5. THE ADVERB | 21 |
| 6. THE PREPOSITION | 22 |
| 7. THE CONJUNCTION | 23 |
| 8. THE INTERJECTION..... | 24 |
| PARSING | 25 |
| CHAPTER II.—THE NOUN. | |
| I. Classification | 26 |
| II. Inflexion | 33 |
| CHAPTER III.—THE ADJECTIVE. | |
| I. Classification | 63 |
| II. Inflexion | 68 |
| CHAPTER IV.—THE PRONOUN. | |
| I. Classification | 77 |
| II. Inflexion | 87 |
| CHAPTER V.—THE VERB. | |
| I. Classification | 108 |
| II. Inflexion | 112 |
| CONJUGATION | 137 |
| IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS | 160 |
| CHAPTER VI.—THE ADVERB. | |
| I. Classification | 166 |
| II. Inflexion | 173 |
| CHAPTER VII.—THE PREPOSITION | 175 |
| „ VIII.—THE CONJUNCTION | 183 |
| „ IX.—THE INTERJECTION | 197 |
| „ X.—WORDS NOT EASILY CLASSIFIED | 201 |

B. Derivation.

| | | |
|---------|---|-----|
| CHAPTER | I.—DEFINITIONS—PRIMARY DERIVATIVES..... | 253 |
| „ | II.—SECONDARY DERIVATIVES | 261 |
| „ | III.—COMPOUND WORDS... .. | 276 |
| „ | IV.—OLD ENGLISH WORDS | 287 |
| „ | V.—LATIN WORDS..... | 288 |
| „ | VI.—GREEK WORDS | 289 |

PART III.—SYNTAX.

| | |
|---|-----|
| A. Rules of Syntax | 290 |
| CHAPTER I.—SYNTAX OF THE NOUN | 294 |
| „ II.—SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE | 317 |
| „ III.—SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN | 334 |
| „ IV.—SYNTAX OF THE VERB | 349 |
| „ V.—SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB | 367 |
| „ VI.—SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION | 369 |
| „ VII.—SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION | 372 |
| „ VIII.—THE INTERJECTION | 376 |
| „ IX.—FIGURES..... | 377 |
| SPECIMEN PARSING | 395 |
| SYNOPSIS OF PARSING | 396 |

B. Analysis of Sentences.

| | | |
|--|---|-----|
| CHAPTER | I.—DEFINITIONS..... | 397 |
| „ | II.—THE SUBJECT | 403 |
| „ | III.—THE PREDICATE | 409 |
| „ | IV.—THE COMPLETION OF THE PREDICATE | 411 |
| „ | V.—THE EXTENSION OF THE PREDICATE | 417 |
| RULES FOR ANALYSIS..... | | 424 |
| EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS | | 425 |
| CHAPTER VI.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE | | 426 |
| EXAMPLE OF ANALYSIS | | 443 |
| CHAPTER VII.—THE COMPOUND SENTENCE | | 444 |
| EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS | | 455 |

PART IV.

| | |
|---------------|-----|
| PROSODY | 456 |
|---------------|-----|

PART V.

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| PUNCTUATION | 477 |
|-------------------|-----|

PART VI.

| | |
|---|----------|
| ORIGIN AND HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE..... | 499 |
| EXAMINATION PAPERS | page 260 |

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

1. **Language** is the expression of our thoughts in words.

2. **Grammar** is the science of language, and the art of speaking and writing correctly.

3. Language consists of sentences. A sentence is a complete thought expressed in words. Spoken words are made up of different sounds, and written words are made up of signs called letters, which are used to represent the different sounds of which spoken words are composed.

4. Grammar is divided into four parts, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

I. **Orthography** treats of the proper sounds of letters and the just method of spelling words.

II. **Etymology** treats of the classification, inflexion, and derivation of words.

III. **Syntax** treats of the correct method of arranging words into sentences.

IV. **Prosody** treats of the laws of poetry or verse.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 1—4.

1. What is language? 2. What is grammar? 3. Of what does language consist? 4. What is a sentence? 5. What are spoken words made up of? 6. What are written words made up of? 7. Into how many parts is grammar divided? 8. What is orthography? 9. What is etymology? 10. What is syntax? 11. What is prosody?

PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

5. **Orthography** treats of the proper sounds of letters and the just method of spelling words.

Obs.—**Letters** (from Latin *littera*, a mark, through French *lettre*) are characters employed to represent the elementary sounds.

6. There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet—*a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.*

Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

A **vowel** is a letter which makes a complete sound by itself.

A **consonant** is a letter which cannot be properly sounded without the help of a vowel.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*; also *w* and *y* when they do not begin a word or syllable.

The consonants are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*; also *w* and *y* when they begin a word or syllable.

Obs. 1.—When *w* and *y* come before a vowel in the same syllable, they are generally consonants: as, *swine, twine*.

Obs. 2.—*W* and *y* are called **semi-vowels** or half-vowels, because they are used both as vowels and consonants.

7. The English language contains forty-three elementary sounds.

Of these fourteen are vowel sounds (viz., *a* in *hat*, *a* in *hair*, *a* in *name*, *a* in *father*, *a* in *ball*, *a* in *want*, *e* in *net*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *o* in *note*, *oo* in *cool*, *oo* in *wood*, *u* in *but*), five diphthongs (viz., *i* in *sigh*, *ai* in *aisle*, *oi* in *voice*, *ou* in *house*, *ew* in *new*), and twenty-four consonant sounds (viz., *b, d, f, g, j, k, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, v, w, y, z, ch* in *church*, *ng* in *king*, *th* in *breathe*, *th* in *breath*, *z*, in *azure*, *sh*, *wh*).

Obs.—As *c, q,* and *x* are represented in sound by other letters, they have not been included in the foregoing list of consonant sounds.

C is equivalent (1) to *k* before *a, o, u, l, r, t*, as in *can, come, cub, clap, crop, act*; and where it ends a syllable: as, *public*; (2) to *s* before *e, i,* and *y*: as, *centre, city, cynical*.

Q is always followed by *u*, and is equivalent to *kw*, as in *queen*.

X represents the sounds of (1) *ks*, as in *box*; (2) *gz*, as in *cert*; (3) *z*, as in *Xenophon*.

8. The consonant sounds are subdivided into *Mutes* and *Spirants*.

(1) **Mutes**, or dumb sounds, are those consonant sounds in the utterance of which the breath is stopped or cut short. They are also called *checks*.

The soft or flat mutes, that is, those which are pronounced with a small effort, are: *g* (in *gun*), *j, d, b*.

The hard or sharp mutes, that is, those which are pronounced with a greater effort, are: *k, ch* (in *church*), *t, p*. To these may be added the nasals, *m, n, ŋ*.

(2) **Spirants** are those consonant sounds in the utterance of which the breath is partially stopped.

The flat spirants are *z* (in *azure*), *s* (in *size*), *th* (in *breathe*), *v*, and *w* (in *wist*).

The sharp spirants are *h* (properly only a breathing, and hence called the aspirate), *y* (in *yes*), *sh, s* (in *house*), *th* (in *breath*), *f, wh* (in *whist*). To these may be added the trills *r, l*, produced by the vibration of the organs of speech.

L, m, n, and *r*, are sometimes called *liquids* from their continuous flowing sounds.

N.B.—Consonant sounds are often classified according to the organs of speech by which they are produced. Thus we have

Labials, or lip-sounds : *b, p, v, f, w, wh* ; also the nasal liquid *m*.

Dentals, or teeth-sounds : *d, t, th* (in *breathe*), *th* (in *breath*) ; also the nasal liquid *n*.

Gutturals, or throat-sounds : *g* (in *gun*), *k, h* (a guttural breathing) ; also the nasal *ng*.

Sibilants, or hissing sounds : *z* (in *azure*), *z* (in *size*), *s* (in *house*) ; also the trilled liquids *r, l*.

Palatals, or palate-sounds : *j, ch, and y* (in *yes*).

Obs. 1.—*J* is nearly equivalent to *dzh*, and *ch* to *tsh*.

Obs. 2.—*M, n, ng* are called *nasals*, or nose-sounds, because in these sounds the breath passes through the nose.

Obs. 3.—In combining consonant sounds it is a general law for a flat sound to follow a flat sound, and a sharp sound to follow a sharp sound : as,

(a) Flat follows flat : (1) Plural noun, *ribs*=*ribz* ; (2) possessive case, *hog's*=*hog'z* ; (3) third person singular of verb, *rubs*=*rubz* ; (4) past tense and past participle of verb, *plugged*=*pluggd*.

(b) Sharp follows sharp : (1) Plural noun, *caps* ; (2) possessive case, *rat's* ; (3) third person singular of verb, *sleeps* ; (4) past tense and past participle of verb, *crept*.

9. TABLE OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

| | MUTES. | | | SPIRANTS. | | |
|-----------|--------------------|----------------------|--------|---|---|---------|
| | FLAT. | SHARP. | NASAL. | FLAT. | SHARP. | TRILLS. |
| Labials | b | p | m | v w (<i>wist</i>) | f wh (<i>whist</i>) | |
| Dentals | d | t | n | th (<i>breathe</i>) | th (<i>breath</i>) | |
| Gutturals | g (<i>gun</i>) | k | ng | | h | |
| Sibilants | | | | z (<i>azure</i>) z (<i>size</i>) | sh (<i>sharp</i>) s (<i>house</i>) | r l |
| Palatals | j (<i>judge</i>) | ch (<i>church</i>) | | | y (<i>yes</i>) | |

10. In a perfect alphabet every phonetic element or simple sound should have its own sign or letter, and no sound should be represented by more than one sign or letter.

The English alphabet is *redundant*, *defective*, and *inconsistent*.

It is *redundant* because the letters *c, q, and x* are superfluous.

It is *defective* because forty-three sounds have to be represented by twenty-three letters ; e.g., the four sounds in the words *father, fate, fat, fall*, are represented by the same sign or letter *a* ; the letter *o* is used to represent the two vowel sounds in *note* and *not* ; the sound of *th* in *thine*, and *th* in *thin*, have the same sign *th*, which is not even a simple sign ; so also there are no corresponding simple signs for *ng* (in *song*), *sh* (in *shine*), and *z* (in *azure*).

It is *inconsistent* because one sound is frequently represented by more than one sign : thus, the letter *a* (in *fall*) may be represented by *au* (in *Paul*), *aw* (in *bawl*), *awe* (in *awe-struck*), *al* (in *talk*), *o* (in *nor*), *oa* (in *broad*), *ou* (in *bought*).

Obs.—The original and normal sounds of the letters *a, e, i, o, u*, are those which they have respectively in the words *further, grey, clique, mole, rude*. They are thus sounded in other languages in which they are used.

11. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one sound or syllable : as, *ou* in *house*.

A **triphthong** is the union of three vowels in one sound or syllable : as, *eau* in *beauty*.

There are five diphthongs : *ou* or *ow*, as in the words *noun* and *now* ; *oi* or *oy*, as in the words *soil* and *boy* ; *eu* or *ew* or *u*, as in *feud, dew, cruel* ; *i*, as in *high* ; *ai* or *ay*, as in *aisle, aye*. If two vowels come together in one syllable, and only one is sounded, they form what some call a **written diphthong**, or an **improper diphthong** : as, *oa* (in *boat*), *ea* (in *seam*), *ie* (in *sieve*). Such combinations, however, are not true diphthongs, as they represent simple vowel sounds.

12. A syllable is a single vowel or collection of letters pronounced by one effort of the voice, and containing only one vowel sound:

Obs.—Every vowel, with the exception of *w*, can form a syllable by itself.

A **monosyllable** is a word of one syllable : as, *part*.

A **dissyllable** is a word of two syllables : as, *part-ner*.

A **trisyllable** is a word of three syllables : as, *part-ner-ship*.

A **polysyllable** is a word of more than three syllables : as, *co-part-ner-ship*.

13. The following are the chief rules observed in spelling English words :—

i. Monosyllables and words accented on the last syllable, ending with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the last consonant when a syllable beginning with a vowel is added : as, *sin, sinner* ; *rob robbery* ; *commit, committing* ; *beg, beggar* ; *fat, fatten*.

ii. The final consonant is usually doubled in words ending in the letter *l* preceded by a single vowel, even when the word is accented on the first syllable : as, *travel, travelled* ; *counsel, counselling* ; *duel, duellist*.

iii. The final consonant is doubled contrary to the rule in the words *biassed, unbiassed, woollen, worshipping, worshipped*.

iv. Words ending in *y* preceded by a consonant change the *y* into *i* when a syllable not beginning with *i* is added : as, *lovely, lorclier* ; *glory, glorify* ; *bounty, bountiful* ; *holy, holiness* ; *merry, merriment* ; *envy, enviable*.

N.B.—When the place of *y* can be supplied by *i*, *y* is not generally found in any part of a word except at the end. The addition of a letter or syllable makes it no longer the final letter, and consequently it is changed into *i*. In the words *sly, shy, and dry*, the *y* is not changed into *i* when *ly* or *ness* is added : as, *slyly, shyly, dryness*.

v. The final *y* is not changed into *i* when a vowel precedes it. This occurs in words ending in *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, and *uy* : as, *betray*, *betrayed* ; *attorney*, *attorneys* ; *purvey*, *purveyor* ; *boy*, *boyish* ; *buy*, *buyer*.

vi. If the syllable added begins with *i*, the *y* is not changed into *i* : as, *magnify*, *magnifying* ; *deny*, *denying*.

vii. When a word ending in *ie* has *ing* added to it, the *i* is changed into *y*, and the *e* omitted : as, *die*, *dying* ; *lie*, *lying*.

viii. *Y* retains its form when proper nouns are pluralized : as, *The eight Henrys*, *The Crosbys*.

ix. Mute *e* at the end of a word is generally omitted when a syllable beginning with a vowel is added : as, *love*, *loving* ; *convince*, *convincing* ; *slave*, *slavish* ; *desire*, *desirous* ; *cure*, *curable* ; *arrive*, *arrival* ; *sense*, *sensible*.

x. Mute *e* preceded by *c* or *g* soft is retained in order to preserve the pronunciation : as, *service*, *serviceable* ; *change*, *changeable* ; *peace*, *peaceable*.

xi. Mute *e* is retained before *ing* in the verbs ending in *oe*, *ye*, *ie*, and *ee* ; as, *shoe*, *shoeing* ; *dye*, *dyeing* ; *hie*, *hieing* ; *see*, *seeing*. It is also retained in the words *swingeing* and *singeing*.

xii. Mute *e* is generally retained when a syllable beginning with a consonant is added : as, *pale*, *paleness* ; *blame*, *blameless* ; *entice*, *entice-ment* ; *shame*, *shameful* ; *close*, *closely* ; *peace*, *peaceful*.

Obs.—Sometimes, however, mute *e* is omitted when the syllable added begins with a consonant, and the vowel sound of the last syllable is short : as, *judge*, *judgment* ; *acknowledge*, *acknowledgment* ; *lodge*, *lodgment* ; *abridge*, *abridgment*. It is also omitted in the words *duly*, *truly*, and *awful*.

xiii. When words ending in *ll* are compounded with others ; or when the suffix *ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *ful*, is added to words ending in *ll*, one *l* is omitted : as, *albeit*, *although*, *almost*, *withal*, *until*, *dulness*, *chilblain*, *fully*, *skillless*, *fulfil*, *wilful*, *elbow*, *bulrush*.

Obs.—In the words *farewell*, *unwell*, *shrillness*, *allspice*, *stillborn*, *stillness*, *tallness*, *illness*, *uphill*, *downhill*, *downfall*, *waterfall*, *befall*, *befell*, *millstone*, *millrace*, and some others, the *l* is not omitted.

xiv. If a word to which *mis* or *dis* is prefixed begins with *s*, the *s* must be retained : as, *dissever*, *dissolve*.

xv. In monosyllables the final letter is generally single, except in the words ending in *f*, *l*, and *s*, preceded by a single vowel : as, *staff*, *stiff*, *stuff*, *scoff* ; *all*, *ill* ; *mass* *truss*.

N.B.—It is impossible to make rules of universal application for dividing words into syllables. The four rules commonly given are :—

(a) In most cases the word should be divided so that each syllable may begin with a consonant : as, *con-ster-na-tion*.

(b) When two or more consonants come together between two vowels, they must be separated in the way best suited to the pronunciation of the word : as, *bal-loon*, *in-flect*. Exceptions to this rule are such words as *ta-ble*, *fee-ble*, *me-tre*, *ha-tred*.

(c) When two vowels not forming a diphthong come together, they must be placed in separate syllables : as, *so-ci-e-ty*.

(d) Prefixes, suffixes, and grammatical inflexions (as *er*, *est*) form separate syllables : as, *trans-port*, *in-fer-ence*, *wis-er*.

Obs.—The first two of these rules when applied to many words are very unsatisfactory. By (a), instead of *right-eous*, *treat-ise*, *imag-ine*, *desir-ous*, *demean-our*, we should have *right-eous*, *trea-tise*, *ima-gine*, *desi-rous*, *demea-nour*. By (b), instead of *guard-ian*, *de-grade*, *soft-en*, *front-ier*, *burgh-er*, *re-plete*, *encamp-ing*, we should have *guard-ian*, *deg-rade*, *sof-ten*, *fron-tier*, *burg-her*, *rep-lete*, *encamp-ing*.

The best general rule for dividing words into syllables is to follow as nearly as possible the divisions made by the organs of speech in accurately pronouncing them, retaining, as far as possible, their etymological divisions.

14. Words in the following situations must begin with capital letters :—

- (1) The first word of every sentence : as, *He* turned from their presence.
- (2) The first word in every line of poetry : as,
How sleep the brave who sink to rest,
By all their country's wishes blest !
- (3) The first word of a direct quotation : as, He exclaimed, "*How* late you are !"
- (4) Every proper noun : as, *France*, *Cerberus*, *The Schiller* (ship).
- (5) Words derived from names of places : as, *Norwegian*, *English*.
- (6) The names of objects personified : as, Thou sure and firm-set *Earth*, hear not my steps.
- (7) The names of days, weeks, and months : as, *Monday*, *Easter-week*, *January*.
- (8) The name of any important event : as, *The Restoration*.
- (9) The pronoun *I* and the interjection *O*.
- (10) The form of address in a letter : as, *Sir*, *My dear Father*.
- (11) *Yours*, *Servant*, *Friend*, and all words denoting relationship in the subscription of a letter : as, *Your obedient Servant*, *Your sincere Friend*, *Your affectionate Brother*.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 5—14.

1. What is orthography? 2. What are letters? 3. Name the letters of the English alphabet. 4. Into what two classes are letters divided? 5. What is a vowel? 6. What is a consonant? 7. Name the vowels. 8. Name the consonants. 9. What are semi-vowels? 10. How many elementary sounds exist in English? 11. Name the vowel sounds. 12. Name the diphthongs. 13. Name the consonant sounds. 14. To what is *c* equivalent? 15. To what is *q* equivalent? 16. To what is *x* equivalent? 17. Into what two classes are consonant sounds divided? 18. What are mutes? 19. What are spirants? 20. Mention the flat mutes? 21. Mention the sharp mutes. 22. Mention the flat spirants. 23. Mention the sharp spirants. 24. What are trills? 25. What are liquids? 26. Classify the consonant sounds according to the organs of speech by which they are produced. 27. What are nasals? 28. What law is followed in combining consonant sounds? 29. In what respects is the English alphabet imperfect? 30. Mention the original vowel sounds. 31. What is a diphthong? 32. What is a triphthong? 33. Mention the diphthongs. 34. What is an improper diphthong? 35. What is a syllable? 36. What letters can form syllables by themselves? 37. What is a monosyllable? 38. What is a dissyllable? 39. What is a trisyllable? 40. What is a polysyllable? 41. What are the chief rules for spelling? 42. What are the rules commonly given for dividing words into syllables? 43. Why are these rules not satisfactory? 44. What is the best general rule for dividing words into syllables? 45. What words must begin with capital letters?

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

A. Classification and Inflexion.

15. **Etymology** treats of the classification, inflexion, and derivation of words.

16. The words of the English language are divided into eight classes, called **Parts of Speech** :—

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Noun. | 3. Pronoun. | 5. Adverb. | 7. Conjunction. |
| 2. Adjective. | 4. Verb. | 6. Preposition. | 8. Interjection. |

CHAPTER I.—DEFINITIONS.

I. The Noun.

17. A noun is the name of anything: as, *Henry, hare, London, table, sweetness.*

EXPLANATION.—The word *Henry* is a noun, because it is the name of a person: the word *hare* is a noun, because it is the name of an animal: the word *London* is a noun, because it is the name of a place: the word *table* is a noun, because it is the name of a thing: the word *sweetness* is a noun, because it is the name of a quality. All words that are the names of persons, animals, places, or things, are called nouns. The word *noun* means “name” (Latin *nomen*, French *nom*, a name).

Obs.—The name of the thing, and not the thing itself, is the noun.

EXERCISE 1.

Mention the names of things:—

1. In the schoolroom. 2. In the house. 3. In the country. 4. In the town. 5. In a joiner’s shop. 6. In a railway station.

EXERCISE 2.

Mention the names of:—

1. Six persons. 2. Six places. 3. Six animals. 4. Six rivers. 5. Six mountains. 6. Six flowers.

EXERCISE 3.

Mention the nouns:—

1. The bird sings on the tree. 2. The bee gathers honey from the flowers. 3. George ate an apple. 4. Mary knits stockings for her brother. 5. The fox looked at the crow. 6. The rats left the ship. 7. The lamb was lost on the mountain. 8. The sparrow flew from the cage to the window. 9. Napoleon was defeated at Waterloo. 10. The children sat round the table. 11. The bells ring merrily.

II. The Verb.

18. A verb is a word which says or asserts something: as, The fire *burns*; The bird *builds* a nest.

EXPLANATION.—The word *burns* is a verb, because it says what the fire does: the word *builds* is a verb, because it says what the bird does. The word *verb* means “word” (Latin *verbum*): it is the word of most importance in a sentence, for no sentence can be formed without a verb.

EXERCISE 4.

Mention the verbs:—

1. The dog barks. 2. The peacock screams. 3. The swallow twitters. 4. The girl sings. 5. The child laughs. 6. The river flows. 7. Birds build nests. 8. The lark soars. 9. James runs. 10. The moon shines. 11. The boy loves his mother. 12. The lion roared in the forest. 13. The steamer brought a box of oranges. 14. The scholar reads his lesson well. 15. The traveller crossed the sands. 16. The shepherd tends his flock.

EXERCISE 5.

Put verbs after these nouns:—

Sun, maiden, dog, knife, printer, weaver, sister, heart, needle, crow, nail, kite, mole, snake, rain, gate, sea, night, plant, farmer, blacksmith, hen, eagle, lamb, wasp, worm, scholar, crowd, butterfly, miller.

EXERCISE 6.

Put nouns before these verbs :—

Floats, skims, creeps, flies, dances, sets, blows, dies, dyes, smiles, trembled, mews, paints, roars, grows, sows, grinds, is praised, was lost, burns, was bought, mourns, nibbles, walks, is blamed, knocks, sounded, builds, watched, cuts, overflows.

III. The Adjective.

19. An **adjective** is a word which qualifies or limits a noun : as, A *ripe* orange ; *Twenty* men.

EXPLANATION.—The word *ripe* is an adjective, because it denotes the quality of the orange : *twenty* is an adjective, because it qualifies or limits the noun *men*. *Ripe* answers the question, "What kind of orange?" *Twenty* answers the question, "How many men?" The word *adjective* means "added to" (Latin *ad*, to ; *jactus*, thrown). It is so called because it is added to nouns to qualify or limit the things which they name.

Obs.—*A* or *an*, and *the* are adjectives, because they limit nouns.

EXERCISE 7.

Mention the adjectives :—

1. The king is powerful. 2. The night is long and cold. 3. It is a frightful scene. 4. Many large orange trees lay on the ground. 5. Great was the throne of France. 6. The streets were empty. 7. Rough shelves hold the books. 8. He wore a suit of black velvet. 9. Drowsy tinklings lull the distant folds. 10. The wild birds told their warbling tale. 11. The winds were soft and low. 12. Noisy groups at the house-doors sat in the cheerful sun.

EXERCISE 8.

Put adjectives before these nouns :—

Oak, sky, honey, bread, eye, desert, ship, sand, surgeon, chain, pencil, window, cherry, hand, herds, wings, current, man, day, colour, dust, fly, hive, village, lake, tail, tortoise, stream, meadow, rainbow.

EXERCISE 9.

Put nouns after these adjectives :—

Huge, open, wonderful, sixty, rosy, lame, low, little, great, busy, poor, glittering, painted, blue, round, snowy, golden, distant, sweet, soft, old, warm, wooden, young, happy, loud, green, wild, withered, yellow.

EXERCISE 10.

Mention the nouns, verbs, and adjectives :—

1. Over the joyous feast the sudden darkness descended. 2. The old man lay down on the bare ground. 3. Philip saw the bright loving smile. 4. The dark walls of the castle frowned against the soft blue sky. 5. She reached the narrow porch and the tall door. 6. The leafless tree waves in the raging storm. 7. Rank weeds and grasses, careless and nodding, grew where Romans trembled. 8. I hear the merry sound of tinkling bells. 9. A few dry sticks gave us a cheerful blaze in the open air. 10. With a small knife the traveller cut off a large cluster of ripe grapes.

IV. The Pronoun.

20. A **pronoun** is a word used instead of a noun : as, The cottage has two rooms ; *they* are small.

EXPLANATION.—The chief use of the pronoun is to prevent the too frequent repetition of the same noun. In the example, *they* is used instead of the noun *rooms*, and prevents its repetition. The word *pronoun* means "for a noun" (Latin *pro* and *nomen*).

EXERCISE 11.

Mention the pronouns :—

1. He views the ships. 2. We entered it in the month of January. 3. Listen to me, you that are timid. 4. I would not have a slave to till my ground. 5. The dogs boldly flew in between us and the lion. 6. The lion was near : we fired upon him :—one of the balls went through his side. 7. When the blossom dies, the fruit appears in its place. 8. When dew freezes, it forms hoar-frost. 9. The horsemen halted ; then they dismounted. 10. She rushed into the street and clasped her child to her breast.

EXERCISE 12.

Put pronouns instead of the nouns in italics :—

1. Hedgehogs rob orchards and carry away apples sticking to *the hedgehogs'* spines in order that *the hedgehogs* may hoard *the apples* up for the winter. 2. The cowslips hold up *the cowslips'* heads. 3. The hen sits upon *the hen's* nest. 4. The king sat on *the king's* throne : *the throne* was made of gold. 5. The lark builds *the lark's* nest amongst the grass, and *the lark* feeds *the lark's* young ones daily.

EXERCISE 13.

Mention the nouns, verbs, adjectives, and pronouns :—

1. I once stopped a deaf and dumb boy. 2. He wages perpetual war on the seal and walrus. 3. They say it stirs the sluggish blood. 4. They are shooting the poor birds. 5. We gather ripe apples. 6. I saw many flowering limes and weeping willows. 7. He has given him a large penknife. 8. She opened her door to the weary woman.

V. The Adverb.

21. An **adverb** is a word which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb : as, The bird sings *sweetly* ; Come *hither* ; The battle *soon* ceased ; The lion is a *very* strong animal ; She reads *exceedingly well*.

EXPLANATION.—Adverbs answer such questions as How ? When ? Where ? *Sweetly* is an adverb, because it modifies the verb *sings* : *hither* is an adverb, because it modifies the verb *come* : *soon* is an adverb, because it modifies the verb *ceased* : *very* is an adverb, because it modifies the adjective *strong* : *exceedingly* is an adverb, because it modifies the adverb *well* : *well* modifies the verb *reads*. The word *adverb* means "to a word" (Latin *ad*, *verbum*).

EXERCISE 14.

Mention the adverbs :—

1. The sun shone brightly. 2. He slept softly. 3. Amyas went silently and sadly back again. 4. He will write his exercise to-morrow. 5. Step softly ! speak low ! 6. Morn came again. 7. The mother will arrive here

to-day. 8. The fruit-cake is too rich. 9. The boy reads very badly. 10. The deer runs extremely fast. 11. The thunder roars very loudly. 12. The well is exceedingly deep.

EXERCISE 15.

I. Join adverbs to the verbs :—

1. The horse trots. 2. The dog barks. 3. The moon shines. 4. The serpent hisses. 5. The lightning flashes. 6. The bird flies.

II. Join adverbs to the adjectives :—

1. The day is cool. 2. The sea is smooth. 3. The leaves are green. 4. The boy is diligent. 5. The wall is high. 6. The well is deep.

III. Join adverbs to the adverbs :—

1. John writes ill. 2. The gardener works hard. 3. The river runs slowly. 4. He came recently. 5. The swallow flies swiftly. 6. The mother treads softly.

EXERCISE 16.

Mention the nouns, verbs, adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs :—

1. The gardens were usually fringed with nettles. 2. I see my sister there again. 3. He walked cheerfully onward through the green fields. 4. My father always rose at dawn. 5. She drank very weak tea from an extremely large cup. 6. I know it too well. 7. They sleep soundly upon their downy beds. 8. The new servant presently brought the breakfast into the cheerful room.

VI. The Preposition.

22. A **preposition** is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show the relation between it and some other word in the sentence : as, The horse *in* the stable is sold.

EXPLANATION.—The word *in* is a preposition, because it shows the relation between the horse and the stable. The word *preposition* means “a placing before” (Latin *prae*, *positio*).

EXERCISE 17.

Mention the prepositions :—

1. Horsemen and riders on white asses hurry along the river-side. 2. The river flowed at some distance from them. 3. The butterflies flutter from bush to bush. 4. The shepherd careth for his sheep, and bringeth them back to the fold. 5. The curfew tolls the knell of parting day. 6. I walked with a quick pace. 7. The eagle flew over the summit of the mountain. 8. The rain beat against the panes. 9. He was followed by a dog. 10. The road lay along the foot of the hills.

EXERCISE 18.

Tell what part of speech each word is :—

1. Brave Urien sleeps upon his craggy bed. 2. The way to London is long and difficult. 3. Blue wreaths of smoke ascend through the trees. 4. The vessel rose upon its prow. 5. They travelled by land. 6. The road wound at times through dreary woods. 7. He immediately dropped on his knees. 8. We found him in an open place in the wood. 9. In a dream of the night I was wafted away. 10. Afar in the desert I love to ride. 11. They are flashing down from the mountain-brows.

VII. The Conjunction.

23. A conjunction is a word which joins two sentences together: as, The king went away *and* the queen followed him.

EXPLANATION.—The word *and* is a conjunction, because it joins two sentences: thus,

The king went away,
[and] the queen followed him.

The word *conjunction* means “a joining together” (Latin *con, junctio*).

EXERCISE 19.

Mention the conjunctions:—

1. The sun had set, but still the visitor tarried. 2. She bowed her head and departed. 3. You see that he deceives you. 4. He came, yet I saw him not. 5. What is sweeter than honey? 6. Neither music nor painting pleased him. 7. He came because his master required him.

EXERCISE 20.

Tell what part of speech each word is:—

1. Lend thy power, and lend thine ear. 2. He trembled when the crowd gazed upon him. 3. He went to London, but on his return he died. 4. He brings them where the quiet waters glide. 5. They separated before their father arrived. 6. The king either governed badly or his ministers failed in their duty. 7. The simple peasant obeyed his master cheerfully, because he loved him. 8. My heart leaps up when I behold a rainbow in the sky.

VIII. The Interjection.

24. An interjection is a word which expresses sudden feeling: as, *Alas!* the ship is lost.

EXPLANATION.—The word *alas!* is an interjection, because it expresses sudden sorrow. The word *interjection* means “a throwing between” (Latin *interjectio*).

EXERCISE 21.

Mention the interjections:—

1. O brother! say not so. 2. Lo! thy guide is gone. 3. Hark! the lark at heaven's gate sings. 4. Hurrah! the foes are fleeing. 5. Hush! I hear a voice. 6. Bravo! the strain is exquisite. 7. Oh! young Lochinvar is come out of the west. 8. Behold! the rocks are cloven. 9. Warder, ho! let the portcullis fall. 10. Hail! holy Light.

EXERCISE 22.

Tell what part of speech each word is:—

1. Oh! speak again, bright angel. 2. O father! I hear the sound of guns. 3. Hark! what murmurs arise from the heart of those mountainous deserts? 4. Ah, no longer wizard fancy builds its castles in the air. 5. Indeed! you greatly surprise me, for the soldier never mentioned it. 6. Hurrah! the fight begins and the enemy wavers. 7. Merrily, O merrily, chime the bells from the old church tower.

25. **Parsing** is the exercise of telling the part of speech of each word in a sentence (Latin *pars*, a part).

FIRST PARSING MODEL.

The ploughman homeward plods his weary way,
And leaves the world to darkness and to me.

- The— An adjective, because it limits the noun "ploughman."
 ploughman— A noun, because it is the name of a person.
 homeward— An adverb, because it modifies the verb "plods."
 plods— A verb, because it says what the ploughman does.
 his— A pronoun, because it is used instead of the noun "ploughman's."
 weary— An adjective, because it qualifies the noun "way."
 way— A noun, because it is the name of a thing.
 And— A conjunction, because it joins the two sentences "The ploughman homeward plods his weary way" and "*the ploughman* leaves the world to darkness."
 leaves— A verb, because it says what the ploughman does.
 the— An adjective, because it limits the noun "world."
 world— A noun, because it is the name of a place.
 to— A preposition, because it shows the relation between "leaves" and "darkness."
 darkness— A noun, because it is the name of a state.
 and— A conjunction, because it joins the two sentences "the ploughman leaves the world to darkness" and "the ploughman leaves the world to me."
 to— A preposition, because it shows the relation between "leaves" and "me."
 me— A pronoun, because it is used instead of the name of the speaker.

EXERCISE 23.

Parse the words in these sentences :—

1. Suddenly the poor animal uttered a shrill howl and threw himself into the water.
2. It flows with a gentle stream through the flat country.
3. Laziness travels so slowly that poverty soon overtakes it.
4. The young lobsters leave the parent, and immediately seek for refuge in the smallest clefts of rocks and in crevices at the bottom of the sea.
5. The boy stood on the burning deck.
6. We buried him darkly at dead of night.
7. Slowly and sadly we laid him down.
8. His horsemen hard behind us ride.
9. The trumpets sound the charge and the retreat.

10. Then downwards from the steep hill's edge
 They tracked the footmarks small;
 And through the broken hawthorn hedge,
 And by the long stone wall.

EXERCISE 24.

Parse the following :—

1. Her thunders shook the mighty deep.
2. The harpies of the shore shall pluck the eagle of the sea.
3. I wandered far into the bare prairie.
4. He sometimes contemplated the towering height of the oak.
5. Her

tears fell with the dews at even. 6. Day and night to the billow the fountain calls. 7. Mariner, mariner, furl your sails. 8. The wind blows softly round the open wold. 9. The light of candles is dim, unwholesome, hurtful to the eyes, and expensive : the light of the sun is strong, pleasant, wholesome ; and it costs nothing. 10. The proud grandee still lingers in his perfumed saloons or reposes within damask curtains.

11. He springs from the hammock,—he flies to the deck,—
Amazement confronts him with images dire,—
Wild winds and mad waves drive the vessel a wreck,—
The masts fly in splinters,—the shrouds are on fire.
12. I've danced upon the trackless ocean wave,
When wild winds held unfettered revelry.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 15—25.

1. Of what does etymology treat? 2. How many parts of speech are there? 3. Name the parts of speech. 4. What is a noun? 5. What is the word *noun* derived from? 6. What is a verb? 7. Why is a verb so called? 8. What is an adjective? 9. What is the word *adjective* derived from? 10. What is a pronoun? 11. What is the word *pronoun* derived from? 12. What is an adverb? 13. What is the word *adverb* derived from? 14. What is a preposition? 15. What is the word *preposition* derived from? 16. What is a conjunction? 17. What is the word *conjunction* derived from? 18. What is an interjection? 19. What is the word *interjection* derived from? 20. What is parsing?

CHAPTER II.—THE NOUN.

I. Classification.

26. A **Noun** is the name of anything : as, *Henry, hare, London, table, whiteness.*

27. Nouns are of two kinds, *Proper* and *Common*.

28. A **Proper Noun** is the name of any single individual of a class : as, *Charles, France, Thames, London.*

EXPLANATION.—The name *Charles* is a proper noun, because it is the name of a particular person ; for, although there are many persons named *Charles*, yet when we use the word *Charles* it has always reference to some particular person. The name *France* is a proper noun, because it is the name of a particular country. The name *Thames* is a proper noun, because it is the name of a particular river. The name *London* is a proper noun, because it is the name of a particular city. "Proper" is from Latin *proprius*, one's own.

Obs. 1.—A proper noun tends to common (*a*) when it is used as the type of a class and implies the possession of qualities which distinguish or distinguished any particular one of a class : as, *She is a Madonna ; A Daniel* come to judgment !—(*b*) when it denotes a class or group of persons, in which case it is pluralized : as, the *Cesars*, the *Percies*, the *Pharaohs*.

Obs. 2.—When a proper noun tends to common, it takes *a*, *an*, or *the* before it.

29. A **Common Noun** is a name given in common to every-thing of the same class : as, *man, dog, river.*

EXPLANATION.—The name *man* is a common noun, because it is a name that is common to all men. The name *dog* is a common noun, because it is a name that is common to all dogs. The name *river* is a common noun, because it is a name that is common to all rivers. "Common" is from Latin *communis*, belonging to several.

Obs. 1.—A common noun tends to proper when it is made to denote an individual : as, *Queen of England, Earl of Leicester, Queen Elizabeth.*

Obs. 2.—Common nouns tending to proper are written with capitals.

N.B.—A proper noun, as such, is meaningless. It is merely a mark or sign serving

to distinguish an individual from the rest of the class. Thus the noun *London* distinguishes the city so called from *Paris* or any other city. Although a proper noun may originally have had a meaning, as probably almost all proper nouns had, the name is now applied to an individual without any reference to such signification. The name *Deborah*, which means "bee," is given without any intention of suggesting that the person to whom it is applied has the qualities of a bee.

A common noun has a meaning. It not only denotes or points out the object to which it is applied, but it is also significant of the properties or attributes which determine such object as belonging to a particular class.

30. Common nouns are either *simple*, *collective*, or *abstract*.

I. **Simple** common nouns denote an individual as one object : as, *cow*, *sheep*, *soldier*.

II. **Collective** common nouns denote several individuals as one object : as, *herd*, *flock*, *army*.

Obs.—Collective nouns sometimes convey plurality of idea, and thus refer to the individuals making up the group rather than to the group itself : as, The medical faculty have resolved to act in unison ; The public (*i.e.* the persons composing the public) are wavering. Such nouns are then called, by some, Nouns of Multitude. [*Parsing*, p. 13.]

III. **Abstract** common nouns denote qualities or attributes regarded in our minds as having a real and independent existence : as, *goodness*, *strength*, *sweetness*.

Obs. 1.—Every object has certain qualities or attributes. Thus, we say : A *good* man, a *strong* horse, a *sweet* flower. If we abstract or draw off these qualities or attributes and regard them as existing apart from the object, the names given to them are called Abstract Nouns (Latin *abstractus*, drawn off). Abstract nouns are derived from (1) Adjectives : as, *breadth* (from *broad*), *wickedness* (from *wicked*), *sincerity* from *sincere* ; (2) Verbs : as, *punishment* (from *punish*), *imposition* (from *impose*), *pleasure* (from *please*) ; (3) Concrete nouns : as, *kingdom* (from *king*), *friendship* (from *friend*), *widowhood* from *widow*.

Obs. 2.—Abstract nouns are used as proper when the qualities or attributes they denote are personified or particularised : as, For *Winter* came ; the wind was *his* whip ; The Norman *Conquest*. [*Parsing*, p. 10.]

Obs. 3.—Abstract nouns used as proper are written with capitals.

N.B.—The whole class of nouns, when viewed with reference to the way in which the things denoted by them exist, may be divided into *Concrete* and *Abstract*. The name of anything, which is considered in all its properties, and which has an actual or real existence, is called a **Concrete noun** ; the name of an idea or of that which has only a mental existence is called an **Abstract noun**.

An abstract noun becomes concrete when it is used to denote persons or things possessing the quality which it denotes. The *priesthood* is sometimes used to mean the priestly order ; *manhood*, the whole class of men ; *nobility*, the whole body of nobles. When a concrete noun is generalized it is sometimes called abstract : as, *Man* is mortal. When abstract nouns are pluralized they acquire a concrete sense. This is also the case when they are applied in a special or particular manner. *Death* is abstract ; *a death*, *the deaths*, concrete ; *hardship* is abstract ; *a hardship*, *the hardships*, concrete.

31. Abstract nouns are :—

1. Names of qualities : as, *darkness*, *bravery*, *colour*, *beauty*, *goodness*.
2. Names of conditions, states, or periods : as, *warmth*, *disease*, *reign*, *friendship*, *day*, *summer*.
3. Names of actions : as, *journey*, *flight*, *march*, *reading*, *writing*, *punishment*, *dedication*.
4. Names of quantity and degree : as, *excess*, *deficiency*, *overdoing*.
5. Names of feelings and powers of the mind : as, *malice*, *hatred*, *remembrance*, *dislike*.
6. Names of arts and sciences : as, *botany*, *philosophy*, *poetry*, *arithmetic*, *geology*.

32. Under the head of abstract nouns are classed the verbal nouns. **Verbal nouns** are so called because they are derived from verbs : such nouns are—*reading, walking, etc.*

TABLE OF NOUNS.

| | | | |
|------------|---|--|-------------------|
| I. Proper | { | 1. Strictly | <i>Henry.</i> |
| | | 2. Tending to common | <i>A Milton.</i> |
| II. Common | { | 1. Simple | <i>Horse.</i> |
| | | 2. Collective | <i>Crowd.</i> |
| | { | 3. Abstract { <i>a</i> Qualities | <i>Bravery.</i> |
| | | <i>b</i> Conditions, states, or periods... | <i>Eternity.</i> |
| | | <i>c</i> Actions | <i>Writing.</i> |
| | | <i>d</i> Quantity and degree | <i>Excess.</i> |
| | | <i>e</i> Feelings and powers of the mind | <i>Love.</i> |
| | | <i>f</i> Arts and sciences | <i>Zoology.</i> |
| | { | 4. Tending to proper | <i>King John.</i> |

Obs.—In parsing simple common nouns the word *simple* is omitted ; and, in parsing abstract common nouns, the word *common* is omitted and the subdivisions may be entirely disregarded.

EXERCISE 25.

Mention the proper and common nouns, and say which of the latter are abstract :—

1. Cold is Cadwallo's tongue. 2. The protection of the law was suspended. 3. Through the spring and summer the persecution raged with redoubled fury. 4. Oft have I watched the closing buds at eve. 5. Goldsmith was born in Ireland. 6. His cheek was redder than the rose. 7. The glad fish leaps up in the heart of the lake. 8. My uncle Toby laid down his knife and fork. 9. She behaved with composure and resignation when the fatal morning arrived. 10. Columbus discovered America.

EXERCISE 26.

Make abstract nouns from qualities of the following :—

Sun, paper, rose, knife, lion, robber, window, oak, lark, honey, king, water.

N.B.—Mode of doing the exercise. The sun is *bright* : hence we have the abstract noun *brightness*.

EXERCISE 27.

Mention six proper nouns, six common nouns, and six abstract nouns.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 26—32.

1. What is a noun ? 2. How many kinds of nouns are there ? 3. What is a proper noun ? 4. When does a proper noun tend to common ? 5. When a proper noun tends to common, what precedes it ? 6. What is a common noun ? 7. When does a common noun tend to proper ? 8. How are common nouns tending to proper written ? 9. What are simple common nouns ? 10. What are collective common nouns ? 11. When are collective nouns called nouns of multitude ? 12. What is an abstract noun ? 13. What is the meaning of the word *abstract* ? 14. From what words are abstract nouns derived ? 15. When are abstract nouns used as proper ? 16. How do we write abstract nouns used as proper ? 17. What is a concrete noun ? 18. When does an abstract noun become concrete ? 19. When does a concrete noun become abstract ? 20. Name the different kinds of abstract nouns. 21. Why are verbal nouns so called ?

II. Inflexion.

33. Inflexion (Latin *inflectere*, to change) is a change in a word to denote a change in the meaning.

34. Nouns are inflected to express Gender, Number, and Case. To nouns also belongs Person, but there is no inflexion to express this.

1. Gender.

35. Gender is a distinction in words corresponding to the distinction of sex. There are two genders, *Masculine* and *Feminine*.

Obs. 1.—Gender is a grammatical distinction between words only. Sex is a natural distinction between living things. The gender of a word in English is determined by the difference of sex.

Obs. 2.—In English, only names of persons and animals have gender. In most other languages all nouns have gender.

Obs. 3.—The word *genus* means “kind” or “class” (Latin *genus*).

36. The names of males are of **Masculine Gender**: as, *man*.

The names of females are of **Feminine Gender**: as, *woman*.

37. Nouns which denote things without sex are said to be of **Neuter Gender**: as, *wood, hay, mountain*.

Obs. 1.—The word *neuter* (Latin *neuter*) means “neither.” Nouns of neuter gender are neither masculine nor feminine.

Obs. 2.—Collective nouns are neuter when they convey the notion of unity of idea: as, *stock, committee, brotherhood*.

38. Nouns applied to both sexes alike are said to be of **Common Gender**: as, *parent, servant, bird*.

Obs.—These nouns are either masculine or feminine in the singular, and both in the plural. In parsing such a word as *servant*, we call it masculine or feminine as the case may be, provided we know which is meant. If the sex is not known, *servant* is called common, as is also the plural *servants*.

39. There are three ways of indicating difference of gender in nouns:—

i. By a suffix:—

(a) *To indicate the feminine:—*

| <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|
| Abbot. | Abbess. | Baron. | Baroness. |
| Actor. | Actress. | Benefactor. | Benefactress. |
| Adjutor. | Adjutrix. | Canon. | Canoness. |
| Administrator. | Administratrix. | Caterer. | Cateress. |
| Adulterer. | Adulteress. | Chanter. | Chantress. |
| Ambassador. | Ambadress. | Coadjutor. | Coadjutrix. |
| Arbiter. | Arbitress. | Conductor. | Conductress. |
| Auditor. | Auditress. | Count. | Countess. |
| Author. | Authoress. | Czar. | Czarina. |

| <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Dauphin. | Dauphiness. | Monitor. | Monitress. |
| Deacon. | Deaconess. | Murderer. | Murderess. |
| Director. | { Directress. Directrix. | Negro. | Negress. |
| Don. | Donna. | Ogre. | Ogress. |
| Duke. | Duchess. | Patron. | Patroness. |
| Editor. | Editress. | Peer. | Peeress. |
| Elector. | Electress. | Poet. | Poetess. |
| Emperor. | Empress. | Porter. | Portress. |
| Enchanter. | Enchantress. | Preceptor. | Preceptress. |
| Executor. | Executrix. | Priest. | Priestess. |
| Founder. | Foundress. | Prince. | Princess. |
| Fox. | Vixen. | Prior. | Prioress. |
| Giant. | Giantess. | Prophet. | Prophetess. |
| God. | Goddess. | Proprietor. | { Proprietress. Proprietrix. |
| Governor. | Governess. | Protector. | Protectress. |
| Heir. | Heiress. | Seamster. | Seamstress. |
| Heritor. | Heritrix. | Shepherd. | Shepherdess. |
| Hero. | Heroine. | Signor. | Signora. |
| Host. | Hostess. | Songster. | Songstress. |
| Hunter. | Huntress. | Sorcerer. | Sorceress. |
| Idolator. | Idolatress. | Spectator. | Spectatress. |
| Infant. | Infanta. | Spinner. | Spinster. |
| Instructor. | Instructress. | Sultan. | Sultana. |
| Inventor. | Inventress. | Tailor. | Tailoress. |
| Jew. | Jewess. | Testator. | Testatrix. |
| Landgrave. | Landgravine. | Tiger. | Tigress. |
| Lion. | Lioness. | Traitor. | Traitress. |
| Margrave. | Margravine. | Tutor. | Tutoress. |
| Marquis. | Marchioness. | Victor. | Victress. |
| Master. | Mistress. | Viscount. | Viscountess. |
| Mayor. | Mayoress. | Votary. | Votress. |

Obs. 1.—The ending **ess** (French *esse*, M. Latin *issa*) is the ordinary suffix of the feminine in Modern English. It is used for words irrespective of their origin. The suffix *ess* is often added to the feminine without any other modification: as, *baron*, *baroness*; *canon*, *canoness*; *count*, *countess*.

Sometimes the masculine ending is omitted before *ess* is added: as, *abbot*, *abbess*; *caterer*, *cateress*; *governor*, *governess*.

In other cases the masculine ending is modified or shortened before the addition of *ess*: as, *actor*, *actress*; *ambassador*, *ambadressess*; *arbitrator*, *arbitress*.

Duchess is from O. French *duc-esse*, *duch-esse*.

Marchioness is from M. Latin *marchionissa*, the masculine form of which is *marchio*.

Mistress, O.E. *maistresse* (from *maister*, master or mister).

Mister, rather than *master*, is the masculine form of *mistress*.

Emperor is from French *empereur*, Latin *imperatorum*.

Empress is from French *impératrice*, Latin *imperatoricem*: it was first *emperice*, then *emperesse*, and finally *empress*.

Obs. 2.—**-trix**, the feminine form of Latin nouns in *tor*, occurs in some names that come direct from the Latin: as, *administrator*, *administratrix*; *testator*, *testatrix*.

Obs. 3.—**-ine**, **-ina**. The feminine form of *hero* is *heroine*. Both *-ine* and *-ina* are frequent in proper names: as, *Landgravine*, *Margravine*, *Caroline*, *Josephine*, *Pauline*, *Czarina*, *Alexandrina*.

Obs. 4.—**-a**. The feminine suffix *-a* is found in some Romance words: as, *Donna*, *Sultana*, *Infanta*, *Signora*.

Obs. 5.—**-en**, **-ster**, are Teutonic suffixes. *-en* in *vixen*, the feminine of *fox*, is the only instance which we have remaining of this Old English suffix being used to

denote the feminine form of a noun. *-ster* was originally a feminine suffix, and remains in the word *spinster*. "Spinster" now means an unmarried woman, but formerly it meant a female spinner. The suffix *-ster* still exists in many words. The French suffix *-ess* began to take the place of *-ster* as a feminine termination in the fourteenth century, and the *-ster* came gradually to be used either as a masculine or to denote the agent. It now merely denotes the agent: as, *punster*, *whipster*, *throwster*, *gamster*, *rhym-ster*, *trickster*, *youngster*, *huckster* (properly the feminine of *hawker*). *-ster* is frequently found in proper names: as, *Baxter* (from *baker*), *Kempster* (a comber), *Webster* (from *webber*, a weaver), *Whitster* (a bleacher).

The following words have double feminine endings—the O.E. *-ster*, and the French *-ess*, viz., *songstress*, *scamstress*, *huckstress*, *spinstress*, *tapstress*.

(b) To indicate the masculine:—

| Mas. | Fem. | Mas. | Fem. |
|--------------|--------|-----------|--------|
| Bride-groom. | Bride. | Widow-er. | Widow. |

Obs. 1.—*-groom*. In *bridegroom* (bride's man), "groom" is from *grōm*, O.E. *guma*, a man. The old form was *brydgumr*.

Obs. 2.—*-er*. In O.E. the forms for *widower* and *widow* were *widuwa* and *widuwe*. The masculine "widuwa" became obsolete, and for "widuwe" (widow) a new masculine had to be formed.

ii. By a prefix:—

| Mas. | Fem. | Mas. | Fem. |
|----------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| He-ass. | She-ass. | Dog-fox. | Bitch-fox. |
| He-bear. | She-bear. | He-goat. | She-goat. |
| Cock-bird. | Hen-bird. | Man-kind. | Woman-kind. |
| Male-bird. | Female-bird. | Boar-pig. | Sow-pig. |
| Bull-calf. | Cow-calf. | Buck-rabbit. | Doe-rabbit. |
| Male-child. | Female-child. | Man-servant. | Maid-servant. |
| Bull-elephant. | Cow-elephant. | Male-servant. | Female-servant. |
| Male-elephant. | Female-elephant. | Cock-sparrow. | Hen-sparrow. |

iii. By a different word:—

| Mas. | Fem. | Mas. | Fem. |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Bachelor. | Maid, spinster. | Husband. | Wife. |
| Beau. | Belle. | King. | Queen. |
| Boar. | Sow. | Lad. | Lass. |
| Boy. | Girl. | Lord. | Lady. |
| Brother. | Sister. | Man. | Woman. |
| Buck. | Doe. | Milter. | Spawner. |
| Bull. | Cow. | Monk. | Nun. |
| Bullock. | Heifer. | Nephew. | Niece. |
| Cock. | Hen. | Papa. | Mamma. |
| Colt. | Filly. | Ram. | Ewe. |
| Dog. | Bitch. | Sir. | Madam. |
| Drake. | Duck. | Sire (a horse). | Dam. |
| Drone. | Bee. | Sloven. | Slut, slattern. |
| Earl. | Countess. | Son. | Daughter. |
| Father. | Mother. | Stag. | Hind. |
| Friar. | Nun. | Stallion. | Mare. |
| Gaffer. | Gammer. | Steer. | Heifer. |
| Gander. | Goose. | Swain. | Nymph. |
| Gentleman. | Lady. | Uncle. | Aunt. |
| Hart. | Roe. | Wizard. | Witch. |
| Horse. | Mare. | | |

Obs. 1.—Though some of the correlative names in iii. are distinct in appearance, they are etymologically connected.

- Obs. 2.—Colt, foal, filly.* "Foal" is O.E. *folu*. "Filly" is the diminutive of "foal."
- Obs. 3.—Drake, duck.* "Drake" is a compound form, being a contraction of *end-rake* (duck-king), from *end*, a duck, and *rake*, a king. "Duck" O.E. *doke*, a diver.
- Obs. 4.—Drone.* This is so named from the noise it makes: O.E. *dran*.
- Obs. 5.—Earl, countess.* "Earl" is a contraction of O.E. *ealdor-man*, elder-man. "Countess" is properly the feminine of the word "count."
- Obs. 6.—Father, mother.* "Father" is akin to Latin *pater*, and means "one who feeds." "Mother" is akin to Latin *mater*; the root is *ma*, to produce, bring forth.
- Obs. 7.—Friar, nun.* "Friar" is from French *frère*, Latin *frater*, a brother. "Nun" is O.E. *nonnu*.
- Obs. 8.—Gaffer, gammer.* "Gaffer" is a corruption of "grandfather," and "gammer" of "grandmother."
- Obs. 9.—Gander, goose.* "Gander" is from *gans*, the old form of *goose*. In the O.E. *gandra* (= *ganr-a* = *gans-a*), the *a* is the sign of the masculine, *r* is substituted for an older *s*, and *d* is merely euphonic.
- Obs. 10.—King, queen.* Dr. Morris says: "King is from the root *kin*. The primitive meaning of *king* is father, *queen*, mother." "King" is also said to be from O.E. *cynig*, son of the tribe, and "queen" from root *gan*, to produce.
- Obs. 11.—Lad, lass.* "Lass" is most probably a contraction of *lad-ess* (Welsh *llawd*, a lad; *llodes*, a girl).
- Obs. 12.—Lord, lady.* O.E. *hlāford*, from *hlafweard*; *hlāf*, a loaf, and *weard*, a keeper. "Lady;" O.E. *hlāf-dige*; *hlāf*, a loaf, and *daeger*, a kneader.
- Obs. 13.—Man, woman.* "Man" in O.E. was of both masculine and feminine gender. "Woman," in O.E., is *wif-man* (wife-man).
- Obs. 14.—Monk*; Greek *monachos*, solitary.
- Obs. 15.—Nephew, niece.* These words come from Latin *nepos* and *neptis* through the French.
- Obs. 16.—Sir, madam.* "Sir" is from Latin *senior*, elder; French *sire*. "Madam" is from French *madame*, my lady (Latin *mea domina*).
- Obs. 17.—Dam.* "Dam" is from Latin *domina*, a lady.
- Obs. 18.—Son, daughter.* "Son," O.E. *sunu*, means one brought forth. "Daughter," from root *duh*, to milk, means a milker, milkmaid (compare "dug," a pap).
- Obs. 19.—Uncle, aunt.* "Uncle" is from O. French *uncle*, Latin *avunculus*. "Aunt" is from O. French *ante*, Latin *amita*.
- Obs. 20.—Wizard, witch.* "Wizard" is not etymologically connected with "witch." It is from O. French *guiscart*, a wise man. "Witch" was formerly of common gender.
- Obs. 21.—*Some masculine nouns have no corresponding feminine nouns: *e.g.*; captain, champion, fisherman, judge, knight, magistrate, parson, policeman, sheriff, soldier, squire.
- Obs. 22.—*Some feminine nouns have no corresponding masculine forms: *e.g.*, Amazon, dryad, muse, naiad, shrew, siren.

40. Personification is a figure of speech by means of which inanimate objects and qualities are regarded as living persons. Words denoting objects or qualities thus personified are said to be of masculine or feminine gender by personification: *e.g.* *Sun, Time, Death, Love, Winter, Fear, Anger, Despair, Heaven*, etc., are often masculine gender by personification; and *Moon, Ship, Nature, Spring, May, Hope, Faith, Melancholy, Mirth, Freedom, Poetry*, etc., are often feminine gender by personification.

*Obs.—*Children and inferior animals are often spoken of as neuter. This is the case when it is not necessary to distinguish the sex, or when the sex is not known.

EXERCISE 28.

Mention the gender of these nouns:—

John, Mary, witness, parent, vixen, boar, lass, pig, witch, colt, cow, regiment, sultana, Joseph, donna, victor, peacock, moorhen, guardian, cousin, beech, neighbour, queen, hero, scholar, child, stone, flower, teacher, governess, ass, slut, actor, porter, friend, duck, hunter, shepherd, bride,

EXERCISE 29.

Give the feminine of each noun :—

Horse, husband, sultan, czar, uncle, bull, monk, tiger, landgrave, son, giant, brother, heir, stag, Jew, lad, earl, friar, peer, shepherd, lord, marquis, duke, beau, host, buck, hart, priest, margrave, bachelor, spinner, don, administrator, fox, emperor, father, nephew, gander, votary, wizard, he-ass, bridegroom, viscount, widower, gentleman.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 33—40.

1. What is inflexion? 2. What inflexions do nouns undergo? 3. What is gender? 4. What names are masculine? 5. What names are feminine? 6. What does the neuter denote? 7. From what is *neuter* derived? 8. What is the gender of collective nouns? 9. What is meant by common gender? 10. In what ways is difference of gender in nouns indicated? 11. Which is the ordinary feminine suffix? 12. From what is *duchess* derived? 13. From what is *marchioness* derived? 14. From what is *mistress* derived? 15. From what is *emperor* derived? 16. From what is *empress* derived? 17. What words form the feminine in *-trix*? 18. What words have the feminine ending *-ine* or *-ina*? 19. In what words is the feminine suffix *a* found? 20. What is the origin of the feminine suffixes *-en* and *-ster*? 21. When did *-ess* begin to take the place of *-ster*? 22. What does *-ster* now denote? 23. Mention words which have a double feminine ending. 24. What does *bridegroom* mean? 25. What is the origin of the form *widower*? 26. What is the diminutive of *foal*? 27. Explain the forms *drake* and *duck*. 28. Explain the word *drone*. 29. Explain the forms *earl* and *countess*. 30. Explain the words *father* and *mother*. 31. Explain the words *friar* and *nun*. 32. Explain the words *gaffer* and *gammer*. 33. Explain the words *gander* and *goose*. 34. From what are *king* and *queen* derived? 35. From what is *lass* derived? 36. What is the meaning of the words *lord* and *lady*? 37. Of what gender was *man* originally? 38. What does *woman* mean? 39. From what is *monk* derived? 40. From what are *nephew* and *niece* derived? 41. From what is *sir* derived? 42. What does *madam* mean? 43. From what is *dam* derived? 44. From what is *son* derived? 45. What does *daughter* mean? 46. From what is *uncle* derived? 47. From what is *aunt* derived? 48. From what is *wizard* derived? 49. Of what gender was *witch* originally? 50. Mention masculine nouns which have no corresponding feminine. 51. Mention feminine nouns which have no corresponding masculine. 52. What is personification? 53. When are names of living beings regarded as neuter?

2. Number.

41. Number is the distinction in the form of a word to show whether reference is made to one object, or to more than one.

42. There are two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

The **Singular** denotes one thing: as, *girl*, *tree*.

The **Plural** denotes more than one: as, *girls*, *trees*.

43. The plural is formed by adding *s* to the singular: as, *horse*, *horses*; *week*, *weeks*.

Obs.—In Old English, a class of masculine nouns formed the plural by adding *-as* to the singular: as, *smith*, *smith-as*. After the Conquest the *-as* was modified into *-es*. This termination being somewhat similar to the *s* or *x* of the Norman French, it gradually became the plural suffix of English nouns generally. About the fourteenth century *-as* ceased to be pronounced as a distinct syllable, the *e* was dropped and the suffix *-s* was adopted as the ordinary plural ending: as, *smith*, *smiths*. As the letter *-s* thus became a part of the same syllable to which the final letter of the singular belonged, certain phonetic modifications were rendered necessary. The *-s* has its own proper sound when the singular noun ends in a sharp consonant: as, *drops*, *mats*, etc. When the singular noun ends in a flat consonant, a liquid or a vowel, *-s* has the sound of the flat sibilant *z*: as, *stags*, *rubs*, *bays*, *bills*, etc. [See § 8, *Obs.* 3.]

44. The following are exceptions :—

Exc. 1. Nouns ending in *s*, *sh*, *ch* (soft), *x*, *z*, form their plural by adding *es* : as, *gas*, *gases* ; *grass*, *grasses* ; *bush*, *bushes* ; *birch*, *birches* ; *fox*, *foxes* ; *topaz*, *topazes*.

Obs.—Nouns ending in *ch* (hard) add *s* : as, *monarch*, *monarchs*.

Exc. 2. Some nouns ending in *o*, especially if the *o* is preceded by a consonant, form their plural by adding *es*. Such are :—*Buffulo*, *calico*, *cargo*, *domino*, *echo*, *flamingo*, *hero*, *innuendo*, *magnifico*, *manifesto*, *mosquito*, *motto*, *mulatto*, *negro*, *no*, *potato*, *tomato*, *tornado*, *volcano*.

Obs. 1.—Many nouns in *o* take *s* only. Such are :—*Bamboo*, *bravo*, *cameo*, *canto*, *cento*, *duodecimo*, *embryo*, *grotto*, *halo*, *junto*, *memento*, *octavo*, *portico*, *quarto*, *rondo*, *solo*, *stiletto*, *teo*, *tyro*, *virtuoso*, *zero*, *folio*, *nuncio*, *oratorio*, *portfolio*, and others in *io*.

Obs. 2.—Proper nouns in *o* tending to common form their plural by adding *s* : as, *Cato*, *Catos* ; *Cicero*, *Ciceros* ; *Scipio*, *Scipios*.

Obs. 3.—*Alkali* has plural *alkalies* ; *hour*, *houries* ; *salmagundi*, *salmagundies*.

Exc. 3. Certain nouns ending in *f* or *fe* form their plural by changing *f* or *fe* into *ves* : as, *calf*, *calves* ; *life*, *lives*. So also :—*elf*, *half*, *leaf*, *loaf*, *self*, *sheaf*, *shelf*, *thief*, *wolf* ; *knife*, *wife* ; and the Norman word *beef*.

Obs. 1.—Nouns in *ief*, *oof*, *ff*, and *rf* usually add *s* only : as, *brief*, *briefs* ; *hoof*, *hoofs* ; *cliff*, *cliffs* ; *turf*, *turfs*. So also *gulf*, *gulfs*.

Obs. 2.—But *thief* makes *thieves*, and *staff*, *staves*.

Obs. 3.—*Wharf*, *scarf*, and *turf* have both forms : as, *wharfs*, *wharves* ; *scarfs*, *scarves* ; *turfs*, *turves*.

Obs. 4.—Some nouns in *fe* add *s* only ; as, *strife*, *strifes* ; *fife*, *fifes* ; *safe*, *safes*.

Exc. 4. Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant form their plural by changing *y* into *ies* : as. *lady*, *ladies* ; *glory*, *glories*.

Obs. 1.—Formerly the singular ended in *ie* : as, *ladie*, *glorie*. The older spelling of the singular, therefore, has been changed, while that of the plural has been retained.

Obs. 2.—Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a vowel form their plural by adding *s* : as, *day*, *days* ; *chimney*, *chimneys*.

Obs. 3.—Nouns ending in *quy* change *y* into *ies* ; as, *soliloquy*, *soliloquies*. In such words *qu* is treated as a single consonant.

Obs. 4.—Proper names in *y* tending to common usually add *s* : as, *the Marys*. *Guy* (originally a proper name) makes *guys*.

Exc. 5. Seven nouns form their plural by a change in the body of the word.

| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| Man. | Men. | Tooth. | Teeth. |
| Woman. | Women. | Louse. | Lice. |
| Foot. | Feet. | Mouse. | Mice. |
| Goose. | Geese. | | |

Exc. 6. Three nouns form their plural in *en* : viz., *ox*, *oxen* ; *child*, *children* ; *brother*, *brethren*.

Obs. 1.—The plural ending *en* or *n* was formerly very common : thus we have *shoe*, *shoon* ; *eye*, *eyne*, *eyrn*, *een* ; *hose*, *hosen* ; *house*, *housen* ; *cow*, *kine*.

Obs. 2.—*Children* (child-er-en) is a double plural.

Obs. 3.—*Kine* is a double plural. The plural of O.E. *cū* (cow) was *cȳ* or *kȳ*. Then by the addition of the plural ending *-en*, *cȳ* became *kin*, *ken*, *kine* (*ki-ne*).

Obs. 4.—In early English writers we find such words as *treē* (trees), *fone* (foes), *been* (bees), *pesen* (peas), *fleen* (fleas), *pullen* (fowls), *calcen* (calves), *lambren* (lambs).

Exc. 7. Some nouns have the singular and plural alike: as, *apparatus*, *cannon*, *deer*, *fish*, *fowl*, *grouse*, *heathen*, *mackerel*, *perch*, *pike*, *salmon*, *series*, *sheep*, *species*, *swine*, *teal*, *trout*.

Obs. 1.—The singular of such words is indicated by prefixing *a* or *an*; as, *a heathen*, *an apparatus*.

Obs. 2.—*Fish*, *fowl*, and some others have a plural ending in *s* when number is implied.

Obs. 3.—Other nouns which, in certain significations, have the singular and plural alike are: *pound*, *head* (of eatable), *cannon*, *shot*, *shilling*, *fathom*, *pair*, *brace*, *couple*, *dozen*, *score*, *gross*, *quire*, *stone*, *hundredweight*, *foot* (soldiers), *horse* (soldiers).

45. Compound nouns generally form the plural by adding *s* to the principal word of the compound: as,

| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Aide-de-camp. | Aides-de-camp. |
| Attorney-general. | Attorneys-general. |
| Court-martial. | Courts-martial. |
| Cousin-german. | Cousins-german. |
| Father-in-law. | Fathers-in-law. |
| Going-out. | Goings-out. |
| Hanger-on. | Hangers-on. |
| Knight-errant. | Knights-errant. |
| Looker-on. | Lookers-on. |
| Maid-servant. | Maid-servants. |
| Man-stealer. | Man-stealers. |
| Son-in-law. | Sons-in-law. |

Obs. 1.—When the words are so closely combined that the meaning requires them to be regarded as one word, the *s* is added to the end: as, *painfuls*, the *five-per-cents*, *spoonfuls*.

Obs. 2.—In some titles the *s* is added to the last noun: as, *lord-lieutenants*, *major-generals*. In other titles the plural sign is, in accordance with the French idiom, attached to both nouns: as, *knights-templars*, *lords-justices*, *lords-commissioners*, *lords-wardens*, *lords-appellants*, *lords bishops*.

Obs. 3.—Both words in each of the compound nouns *men-servants* and *women-servants* have the plural form.

Obs. 4.—All the three forms, "The Miss Smiths," "The Misses Smith," "The Misses Smiths" are used. "The Miss Smiths" has, in some degree, reference to the separate action of the individuals, while "The Misses Smith" is regarded more as a collective unity.

Obs. 5.—"Messrs. Smith" is the ordinary form in commercial life.

46. Some nouns have two plurals differing in meaning:—

| | |
|---------|---|
| Brother | { <i>brothers</i> , sons of the same parents. <i>brethren</i> , members of the same society or church. |
| Cloth | { <i>cloths</i> , pieces or kinds of cloth. <i>clothes</i> , garments. |
| Die | { <i>dies</i> , stamp for coining. <i>dice</i> , small cubes used in games. |
| Fish | { <i>fishes</i> , when number is meant. <i>fish</i> , when quantity is meant. |
| Genius | { <i>geniuses</i> , men of talent. <i>genii</i> , fabulous spirits. |
| Index | { <i>inderes</i> , tables of contents. <i>indices</i> , algebraic exponents. |

| | |
|-------|--|
| Pea | { <i>peas</i> , when number is meant. { <i>pease</i> , when quantity is meant. |
| Penny | { <i>pennies</i> , separate coins. { <i>pence</i> , a sum. |
| Shot | { <i>shots</i> , the number of times fired. { <i>shot</i> , the number of balls (collective). |

Obs. 1.—**Pea** is formed from *pease*, O.E. *pisa* (plural *pisen*, *pise-s*). The distinctive plural ending being dropped, the same form served for both numbers. Eventually it was restricted to the plural use, and *pea*, formed from *pease*, was used as the singular, taking a new plural *peas*. In coining the word *pea*, *s* in *pease*, which forms part of the root, was altogether ignored.

Obs. 2.—**Pennies**, O.E. *penegas*, later *pennyces*, *pans*, *pens*, the meaning being the same. "Pence" is sometimes compounded with a definite numeral adjective, as the name of a coin or a piece of money. It then has a singular signification and takes a plural: as, one *sixpence*, three *sixpences*.

47 (i). Some nouns, from the nature of the things they express, cannot have a plural. The nouns that have no plural are:—

(1) Proper nouns: as, *London*, *Henry*.

(2) Abstract nouns: as, *hardness*, *prudence*, *negligence*, *chemistry*.

(3) Names of materials that are weighed or measured: as, *water*, *tea*, *wheat*, *wool*, *milk*, etc.

Obs. 1.—When proper nouns are pluralised, even if they are not expressive of some quality or property (as, the twelve *Cæsars*, the two *Scipios*), they cannot, strictly speaking, be considered as proper nouns, but are proper nouns tending to common.

Obs. 2.—Abstract nouns have a plural when different instances of any particular quality or attribute are denoted: as, *beauties*, *ignorances*. Some grammarians consider that, when abstract nouns are pluralised, they are converted into simple common nouns, inasmuch as they do not then denote an abstract quality, but particular varieties of the quality or particular actions.

Obs. 3.—Names of materials admit a plural when we wish to distinguish different kinds of the material: as, *wines*, *wools*, *clays*. The noun, in such cases, can be used in the singular with *a* before it; as, *a wine*, *a clay*, *a wool*.

47 (ii). Some nouns have no singular:—

| | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Aborigines. | Downs. | Lights. | *Reins. |
| Amends. | Draughts. | Literati. | Seissors. |
| Annals. | Drawers. | *Lungs. | Sessions (of magistrates). |
| Antipodes. | Dregs. | Mallows. | Shambles. |
| Archives. | Dumps. | Manners. | Shears. |
| Arms (weapons). | *Embers. | Matins. | Snuffers. |
| *Assets. | *Entrails. | Measles. | Spectacles. |
| *Assizes. | Espousals. | Minutiae. | Staggers. |
| Banns. | *Fetters. | Molasses. | Statistics. |
| Bellows. | *Filings. | Morals. | Suds. |
| Betters. | Fives. | Mumps. | Summons. |
| Billiards. | Forceps. | Nippers. | Sweepstakes. |
| Bitters. | Goods. | Nones. | Tactics. |
| Blues. | Hatches. | Nuptials. | Thanks. |
| *Bowels. | Hose. | Nut-crackers. | Tongs. |
| Breeches. | Hustings. | Oats. | Trappings. |
| Calends. | Hysterics. | Obsequies. | Trowsers. |
| Cattle. | Ides. | Odds. | Tweezers. |
| Clothes. | Illuminati. | <u>Pantaloons.</u> | Vespers. |
| Commons (House of). | *Intestines. | Pincers. | Victuals. |
| Compasses. | <u>Jinks</u> (high) | Pliers. | Vitals. |
| Credentials. | Lees. | Premises. | Yellows. |
| Customs (taxes). | Letters (learning). | Proceeds (of a sale). | |

Obs. 1.—Some of these nouns are the names of things which have more parts than one :

- (a) Instruments, tools, etc. : as, *forceps, shears, snuffers.*
- (b) Articles of clothing : as, *trousers, drawers, breeches.*
- (c) Diseases : as, *measles, staggers, mumps.*
- (d) Parts of the body : as, *lungs, lights, intestines.*

Other nouns are the names of things taken in the mass or aggregate : as, *ashes, embers, filings.*

Obs. 2.—“All which nature, or art, or habit has made plural have no singular.”—*Cobbett.*

Obs. 3.—The nouns marked * in the above list are sometimes found in the singular, but the meaning is usually somewhat different.

48 (i.). Some false or apparent plurals are true singulars, though now used generally as plurals : as,

(1) **Alms**, a true singular, is now used both as singular and plural. O.E. *aelmesse*, plural *aelmesen* ; M.E. *almesse, almes*, plural *almessen, almesses.*

“Who asked *an alms.*”—*Acts.*

“None was heard to ask *an alms.*”—*Macaulay.*

“Angels desire *an alms.*”—*Massinger.*

(2) **Eaves**, a true singular, is now chiefly used as plural. O.E. *yfes, efese*, margin, brim or edge, plural, *efesen, eveses.*

(3) **Riches**, a true singular, is now used as plural. M.E. *richesse*, plural *richesses* (from the French).

“*Richesse that cometh litel and litel.*”—*Chaucer.*

“Yet is not *this riches* of thy getting.”—*Old English Plays.*

“And for *that riches* where is my deserving.”—*Shakespeare.*

“In one hour *is so great riches* come to naught.”—*Revelation.*

“*Riches* fineless (endless) *is* as poor as winter.”—*Shakespeare.*

“*Riches are* not for ever.”—*English Bible (Proverbs).*

(4) **Summons**, an apparent plural, is really singular, and is still used as such (plural *summonses*). O.E. *somons* ; O. French *semonse*.

Obs.—It is obvious that the *s* in the above words is part of the singular, and not the sign of the plural.

48 (ii.). Some nouns really plural are used as singular or plural.

(1) **Amends** (French *amende*) is a true plural, but it is frequently used as singular.

“A little *amends.*”—*Spectator.*

“To make *an amends.*”—*Percy Anecdotes.*

(2) **Means**, a true plural, is used both as singular and plural.

“*A means* to do the prince my master good.”—*Winter's Tale.*

“I will embrace *them* (i.e., the *means*).”—*Ivanhoe.*

Obs.—The singular *mean* is also used by writers of the present century (as *Hamilton and Carlyle*).

(3) **News** is a true plural. We find it formerly used both as plural and singular, but chiefly as plural. It is now always used as singular.

“*These were news* indeed.”—*Shakespeare.*

“Ten days ago I drowned *these news* in tears.”—*Shakespeare.*

“*This news* hath made thee a most ugly man.”—*Shakespeare.*

“*Ill news runs* apace.”—*Proverb.*

(4) **Pains** is a true plural, but it is used both as singular and plural. When preceded by "much," "great," it should have a singular verb.

"Your *pains* are registered."—*Shakespeare*.

(5) **Tidings** is a true plural. It is used both in the singular and plural, but is generally plural.

"That *tidings* came."—*Shakespeare*.

"To bring *this tidings*."—*Shakespeare*.

"These *tidings* will well comfort Cassius."—*Shakespeare*.

(6) **Wages**, really plural, is used both as singular and plural.

"He earneth *wages* to put it into a bag with holes."—*Eng. Bible*.

(7) **Small-pox** (small pocks), a disease, is singular. The word is really a plural disguised by a new spelling.

(8) **Odds** is used both in the singular and plural.

"A fearful *odds*."—*Shakespeare*.

(9) **Gallows** is really plural, but is commonly used as singular.

"A *gallows*."—*Goldsmith*.

"The *gallows itself*."—*Cooper*.

Bel lows, thanks, barracks, shambles, innings (at cricket) are also nouns of this class.

Obs.—The singular forms *amend, gallow, mean, pain, tiding, thank, wage*, are found in old writers.

N.B.—The names of sciences ending in *ics* are plural in form, but singular in meaning: as, *acoustics, dynamics, economics, ethics, hydraulics, hydrostatics, mathematics, mechanics, metaphysics, optics, physics, pneumatics, politics, statics*. Some of these, especially *mathematics, metaphysics, and physics*, are also used as plurals.

48 (iii). The meaning of some nouns is changed in the plural: as, *beef, beeves; compass, compasses; copper, coppers; corn, corns; domino, dominoes; draught, draughts; good, goods; grain, grains; ground, grounds; scale, scales; spectacle, spectacles; vesper, vespers*, etc.

49. Some nouns have one meaning in the singular, and two or more in the plural:—

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|--|
| Custom, habit. | Customs { 1, habits. 2, revenues, duties. 3, department which manages the customs. |
| Letter, of alphabet. | Letters { 1, of alphabet. 2, literature. 3, epistles. |
| Number, in counting. | Numbers { 1, in counting. 2, in poetry. |
| Pain, suffering. | Pains { 1, sufferings. 2, trouble. |
| Part, a division. | Parts { 1, divisions. 2, abilities. |

50. Most foreign nouns retain their foreign plurals: as,

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Addendum (L.). | Addenda. | Animaculum (L.). | Animacula. |
| Alumnus (L.). | Alumni. | Antithesis (Gr.). | Antitheses. |
| Amanuensis (L.). | Amanuenses. | Apex (L.). | Apices. |
| Analysis (Gr.). | Analyses. | Aphelion (Gr.). | Aphelia. |

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| Aphis (Gr.). | Aphides. | Iris (L.). | Irides. |
| Appendix (L.). | { Appendixes. | Lamina (L.). | Laminæ. |
| | { Appendices. | Larva (L.). | Larvæ. |
| Arcanum (L.). | Areana. | Locus (L.). | Locci. |
| As (L.). | Asses. | Macula (L.). | Maculæ. |
| Automaton (Gr.). | Automata. | Madame (Fr.). | Mesdames. |
| Axis (L.). | Axes. | Magus (L.). | Magi. |
| Bandit (It.). | Banditti. | Mausoleum (L.). | Mausolea. |
| Basis (Gr.). | Bases. | Medium (L.). | Media. |
| Beau (Fr.). | Beaux. | Memorandum (L.). | Memoranda. |
| Bureau (Fr.). | Bureaux. | Menstruum (L.). | Menstrua. |
| Calculus (L.). | Calculi. | Metamorphosis (Gr.). | Metamorphoses. |
| Calix (L.). | Calices. | Miasma (Gr.). | Miasmata. |
| Calyx (L.). | Calees. | Momentum (L.). | Momenta. |
| Cherub (Heb.). | Cherubim. | Monsieur (Fr.). | Messieurs. |
| Chrysalis (Gr.). | Chrysalides. | Nebula (L.). | Nebulæ. |
| Cognoscente (It.). | Cognoscenti. | Nucleus (L.). | Nuclei. |
| Conversazione (It.). | Conversazioni. | Oasis (Gr.). | Oases. |
| Corrigendum (L.). | Corrigenda. | Parenthesis (Gr.). | Parentheses. |
| Criterion (Gr.). | Criteria. | Parhelion (Gr.). | Parhelias. |
| Crisis (Gr.). | Crises. | Perihelion (Gr.). | Perihelias. |
| Datum (L.). | Data. | Phasis (Gr.). | Phases. |
| Desideratum (L.). | Desiderata. | Phenomenon (Gr.). | Phenomena. |
| Dieresis (Gr.). | Diereses. | Polypus (L.). | Polypi. |
| Dietum (L.). | Dieta. | Postulatum (L.). | Postulata. |
| Dilettante (It.). | Dilettanti. | Radius (L.). | Radii. |
| Dogma (Gr.). | Dogmata. | Radix (L.). | Radices. |
| Echinus (L.). | Echini. | Ranunculus (L.). | Ranunculi. |
| Effluviun (L.). | Effluvia. | Sarcophagus (L.). | Sarcophagi. |
| Ellipsis (Gr.). | Ellipses. | Savant (Fr.). | Savants. |
| Emphasis (Gr.). | Emphases. | Scholium (L.). | Scholia. |
| Emporium (L.). | Emporia. | Scoria (L.). | Scoriæ. |
| Encomium (L.). | Encomia. | Seraph (Heb.). | Seraphim. |
| Ephemeris (Gr.). | Ephemerides. | Series (L.). | Series. |
| Ephemeron (Gr.). | Ephemera. | Species (L.). | Species. |
| Erratum (L.). | Errata. | Spectrum (L.). | Spectra. |
| Fascis (L.). | Fasces. | Speculum (L.). | Specula. |
| Flambeau (Fr.). | Flambeaux. | Sphinx (Gr.). | Sphinges. |
| Focus (L.). | Foci. | Stamen (L.). | Stamina. |
| Formula (L.). | Formulae. | Stimulus (L.). | Stimuli. |
| Frustum (L.). | Frusta. | Stratum (L.). | Strata. |
| Fungus (L.). | Fungi. | Succedaneum (L.). | Succedanea. |
| Genius (L.). | Genii (§ 46). | Terminus (L.). | Termini. |
| Genus (L.). | Genera. | Thesis (Gr.). | Theses. |
| Gymnasium (L.). | Gymnasia. | Tumulus (L.). | Tumuli. |
| Hiatus (L.). | Hiatus. | Vertex (L.). | Vertices. |
| Hypothesis (Gr.). | Hypotheses. | Virtuoso (It.). | Virtuosi. |
| Ignis-fatuus (L.). | Ignes-fatui. | Vortex (L.). | Vortices. |
| Index (L.). | Indices (§ 46). | | |

Obs. 1.—There is a general tendency to adopt the English plural when a foreign noun comes into common use: as, *bandits, cherubs, seraphs, geniuses, crocuses, vivariums, memorandums, encomiums, dogmas, formulas, automations, focuses, beaus.*

Obs. 2.—*Aborigines, agenda, antipodes, arcana, dilettanti, ephemera, and errata* are used chiefly in the plural.

N.B.—Particles treated as nouns have plural forms: as, “*ups and downs*,” “*pros and cons*,” “*ages and noes*.” ‘S’ is sometimes used instead of *s* to mark the plural of a word seldom used as a noun.

“For once the *O’s* and *Mac’s* were in the right.”—*Macaulay.*

EXERCISE 30.

Give the plurals of these nouns:—

Analysis, church, fish, loaf, hoof, hiss, donkey, knife, grotto, lady, fife, penny, brother, boy, potato, knight-errant, man, staff, tooth, cloth, ox, genius, bandit, index, hat, goose, desk, alkali, glory, chimney, cow, half,

mason, colloquy, brush, deer, fox, apparatus, suffix, pea, crutch, beau, kiss, cherub, oasis, apex, day, mouse, beauty, focus, story, topaz, cargo, die, datum, seraph, life, genus, animalculum.

EXERCISE 31.

Give the singular of these nouns :—

Wharfs, phenomena, monkeys, footmen, calves, mice, classes, men, skiffs, appendices, tyros, hypotheses, leaves, stories, bases, dicta, storeys, teeth, woes, radii, beaux, horses, halves, cherubim, nebulae, chimneys, gipsies, automata, houses, genera, foxes, genii, grasses, oxen, axes, women, media, nuncios, knives, staves, kine, mottoes.

EXERCISE 32.

Mention the number of each noun :—

1. The waves rush in on every side. 2. The agitation of lakes, rivers, and springs in Great Britain was remarkable. 3. At Loch Lomond, in Scotland, the water rose against its banks. 4. The chairs were covered with a coarse green cloth. 5. The people gazed with wonder and admiration at the trains. 6. He had sent for the captains and other great officers of the fleet. 7. My mother milked thirty kine. 8. The bowmen altered the direction of their shafts. 9. The field was covered with separate bands of foemen. 10. The victorious cavaliers now rushed towards the sanctuaries.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 41—50.

1. What is number? 2. How many numbers are there? 3. What does the singular denote? 4. What does the plural denote? 5. How is the plural generally formed? 6. What is the origin of this mode of forming the plural? 7. How do nouns ending in *s*, *sh*, *ch* (soft), *x* or *z* form the plural? 8. What is the plural of *monarch*? 9. How do nouns ending in *o* form the plural? 10. When proper nouns ending in *o* tend to common, how do they form the plural? 11. What is the plural of *alkali*? 12. What nouns change *i* or *je* into *ies*? 13. What nouns ending in *f* add *s* for the plural? 14. How do nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant form the plural? 15. How do nouns ending in *y* preceded by a vowel form the plural? 16. When proper nouns tending to common end in *y*, how do they form the plural? 17. Name seven nouns that make their plural by a change in the body of the word. 18. Name three nouns whose plurals end in *en*. 19. Give examples of old plurals in *en*. 20. Give examples of nouns having the singular and plural alike. 21. How is the singular of such words indicated? 22. How is the plural of compound nouns generally formed? 23. Mention some double titles with double plurals. 24. What is the plural of *man-servant*? 25. What is the plural of *Miss Smith*? 26. What nouns have two plurals differing in meaning? 27. From what is *pea* derived? 28. From what is *pennies* derived? 29. When has *pence* a singular signification? 30. What nouns have no plural? 31. When do proper nouns become plural? 32. When have abstract nouns a plural? 33. When have names of materials or substances a plural? 34. What nouns have no singular? 35. What is said of the words *alms*, *eaves*, *riches*, *summons*? 36. What is said of the words *amends*, *means*, *news*, *pains*, *tidings*, *wages*, *small-pox*, *odds*, *gallows*? 37. What names of sciences are singular number, plural form? 38. Mention some nouns which have a different meaning in the plural. 39. Mention nouns which have one meaning in the singular and two or more in the plural. 40. What is the plural of foreign nouns? 41. Give examples of foreign nouns with foreign plurals. 42. When a foreign noun comes into common use, how is the plural often formed? 43. When have particles plural forms? 44. When is *'s* used instead of *s* to mark the plural?

3. Person.

51. Person is the relation which limits the meaning of a noun, a pronoun, or a verb, to some person speaking, some person spoken to, or some person or thing spoken of.

52. There are three persons, the *First*, the *Second*, and the *Third*.

The **First Person** denotes the person speaking : as, I, *John*, say so.

The **Second Person** denotes the person spoken to : as, *Boys*, be silent.

The **Third Person** denotes the person or thing spoken of : as, The *fox* is cunning ; The *sailor* wounded the *bear*.

53. Nouns are nearly always of the third person.

EXERCISE 33.

Mention the person of the nouns :—

1. The snow covered the ground. 2. We petty men walk under his huge legs. 3. Soldiers ! make ready your arms. 4. I, Henry Thompson, solemnly declare that I have told the truth. 5. The sun shines brightly in this secluded valley. 6. The pine grows on this mountain. 7. O father, stay ! 8. The boy rides on a pony. 9. The man fell from the ladder. 10. Hail ! blithesome stranger of the grove !

QUESTIONS ON §§ 51—53.

1. What is person ? 2. How many persons are there ? 3. What is the first person ? 4. What is the second person ? 5. What is the third person ? 6. Of what person are nouns usually ?

4. Case.

54. **Case** is the form given to a noun or pronoun to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence.

Obs.—*Case* (Lat. *cadere*, *casus*) means “a falling.” The old grammarians represented that form the noun takes when it is the subject of a sentence, by an upright line, and likened the other forms to lines falling away from the perpendicular at various angles. The nominative was called the upright case (*casus rectus*), and the others (except the vocative) oblique cases (*casus obliqui*). Hence the enumeration of the cases of a noun or pronoun is called *Declension* (Lat. *de*, down ; *clino*, I bend).

55. There are in English three cases, the *Nominative*, the *Possessive*, and the *Objective*.

Obs. 1.—In the oldest English, nouns were inflected or had case-endings to show their relation to other words. There were six cases, *Nominative*, *Vocative*, *Accusative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Instrumental* or *Ablative*. The purpose for which case-endings were used is to a great extent now served by prepositions. In Modern English the possessive, which corresponds to the older genitive, is the only case where nouns are inflected.

Obs. 2.—Some grammarians make five cases in English, viz, *Nominative*, *Accusative*, *Genitive* (or possessive), *Dative*, and *Vocative*.

56. The **Nominative** is the case which denotes the person or thing about which we are speaking : as, The *moon* shines.

Obs. 1.—That about which we are speaking is called the *subject* (§§ 402-4). The nominative, therefore, is the case of the subject, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* Thus, in the sentence “James runs,” if we ask the question *Who* runs? the answer, *James*, is in the nominative.

Obs. 2.—The *Nominative Absolute*, *Nominative of Address*, and *Nominative Exclamatory* are explained in §§ 298-300.

57. The Possessive is the case which denotes possession : as, *David's* harp.

Obs. 1.—The possessive answers the question *whose?* or *of what?* In the sentence, "He watched his father's sheep," if we ask "*Whose* sheep did he watch?" the answer, *father's*, is in the possessive case. In the sentence, "A primrose grew on the river's brink," if we ask "On the brink *of what* did a primrose grow?" the answer, *river's*, is in the possessive case.

Obs. 2.—The possessive is said to be governed by the name of the thing possessed (§ 302).

58. The Objective is the case which denotes the object of an action or which comes after a preposition : as, The horse kicked the *groom* ; The troops marched from *London*.

Obs. 1.—The objective answers the question *whom?* or *what?* In the sentence, "The miller grinds corn," if we ask "*What* does the miller grind?" the answer, *corn*, is in the objective case. In the sentence, "Jael smote Sisera," if we ask "*Whom* did Jael smite?" the answer, *Sisera*, is in the objective case.

Obs. 2.—When the objective case denotes the object of an action, it is said to be governed by the verb, which is then called transitive (§ 110) ; and when it comes after a preposition, it is said to be governed by the preposition.

Obs. 3.—The *direct object* of a transitive verb is known as the *Accusative*, and the *indirect object*, or the name of the person to *whom* something is given or told, or *for whom* something is done, is known as the *Dative*. The Dative case is seen in such constructions as : Give *me* (i.e., *to me*) the dagger ; He told *him* (i.e., *to him*) the truth ; They built *him* (i.e., *for him*) a house. The infinitive of purpose is a dative : as, I came *to bury* Cæsar. The preposition *to* or *for* may always be put before a Dative case. See §§ 307, 416.

59. In nouns the nominative and objective cases have the same form. They are both without case-endings, and are only distinguished by their position and use in a sentence.

60. The possessive case is formed by adding *s* preceded by an apostrophe to the nominative : as, *man*, *man's* ; *men*, *men's*.

Exc. 1. When the plural ends in *s* already, the apostrophe only is added : as, *ladies*, *ladies'* ; *kings*, *kings'*.

Exc. 2. When singular nouns end in *ss* or *ce*, and when foreign proper nouns of two or more syllables end in *s* or *x*, the *s* is omitted, and the apostrophe only is placed after the word : as, for *righteousness'* sake ; for *conscience'* sake ; *Brutus'* statue ; *Thetis'* wrath ; *Felix'* room ; *Pericles'* acts ; *Euripides'* dramas.

Obs. 1.—When ordinary English names end in *s*, the *s* with preceding apostrophe is generally appended : as, *Burns's*, *James's*, *Bass's*.

Obs. 2.—Although it is usual to drop the *s* when too many sibilant or hissing sounds would come together, there is a growing tendency to adhere to the general rule of adding *s* preceded by an apostrophe to the noun.

Obs. 3.—In compound nouns the mark of the possessive is added to the last word : as, *father-in-law's* house ; the *Queen of England's* daughter ; the *Duke of Saxony's* nephew. Even when there are two names the mark of the possessive is generally attached to the last : as, *Emmerson and Wood's* factory ; *thy wife and children's* blood.

Obs. 4.—The ending (*'s*) of the possessive is an abbreviation of *es*. In Old English *-es* was the genitive suffix of a certain class of nouns. It was gradually extended to nouns in general. In later English *-is*, a modification of *-es*, came into use, but was not always joined to the noun. This, most probably, accounts for the erroneous impression formerly prevalent that (*'s*) was a contraction of *his* in such phrases as,

"Thomas his book," "Christ his sake." The absurdity of such a supposition is made apparent by attempting to apply it to feminine and plural nouns. In the phrases, "The Queen's crown," "The men's hospital," the possessive sign 's cannot possibly be equivalent to *his*. Moreover the word *his* is itself the possessive case of *he* or *hit* (*it*). The substitution of *his* or *-is* and *-es* originated about the fourteenth century; and by an imitative process *her* and *their* came to be used in a similar way. In the English Bible (ed. 1611) we find: "By Naomi *her* instruction Ruth lieth at Boaz *his* feet"; "Mordecai *his* matters"; "Asa *his* heart."

The (') which, in the singular number, denotes the omission of the letter *e*, was adopted, either to mark the distinction between the possessive case and plural number, or to signify the omission of the vowel in *-es* when that suffix was no longer pronounced and written as a separate syllable. The use of the apostrophe did not become general before the latter part of the seventeenth century. An instance of the old form *-es* still exists in our word *Wednesday* (O.E. *Woden-es-dæg*).

61. Nouns are thus declined :—

| | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Boy | Boys. | Man | Men. | Horse | Horses. |
| <i>Poss.</i> | Boy's | Boys'. | Man's | Men's. | Horse's | Horses'. |
| <i>Obj.</i> | Boy | Boys. | Man | Men. | Horse | Horses. |

62. SECOND PARSING MODEL.

The maiden placed her hand on Gertrude's head.

The— An adjective.

maiden— A common noun, feminine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb "placed."

placed— A verb.

her— A pronoun.

hand— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb "placed."

on— A preposition.

Gertrude's—A proper noun, feminine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, governed by the noun "head."

head— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition "on."

[*Parsing*, pp. 10—15.]

EXERCISE 34.

Decline these nouns :—

Lady, breeze, father, conscience, forest, woman, Cadmus, tooth.

EXERCISE 35.

Give the possessive case singular of these nouns :—

Goodness, oak, doctor, thrush, Socrates, James, convenience, butler, church, knight, guide, queen, cherub, gentleman.

EXERCISE 36.

Give the possessive case plural of these nouns :—

Child, father, clown, goose, beauty, servant, corporal, nuncio, stair, sheep, penny, hunter, rose, candle.

EXERCISE 37.

Mention the case of each noun :—

1. The dews of summer night did fall. 2. The sounds of busy life were still. 3. The maids brought flowers to Sarah's grave. 4. My lord's son

grew up. 5. The master heard the robber's footsteps. 6. A poor widow, in a small town in the north of England, kept a stall of apples and sweet-meats. 7. After dinner, Stephen's father left the room. 8. Her husband's eyes sparkled with pleasure at the cheerfulness of her countenance. 9. The report sent Tom's heart into his mouth again. 10. My breakfast of tea has been cooked by a Tartar woman, with water of the Amur.

EXERCISE 38.

Parse :—

1. Fortunatus had a wishing hat. 2. Man's unhappiness comes of his greatness. 3. The spell was broken by a sound of carriage-wheels. 4. I have roasted wild eggs in the sand of Sahara. 5. The little woman shook her head. 6. John's heavy tramp was heard upon the staircase. 7. The surgeons dressed his wounds. 8. The news of Hampden's death produced great consternation in his party. 9. The mute herd snuff the shivering gale. 10. Lead was fetching a high price in Antwerp. 11. The people rang the bells for joy.

12. I bind the sun's throne with a burning zone,
And the moon's with a girdle of pearl ;
The volcanoes are dim, and the stars reel and swim,
When the whirlwinds my banner unfurl.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 54—62.

1. What is case? 2. What is declension? 3. How many cases are there? 4. What cases were there in Old English? 5. What is the nominative case? 6. What is the subject of a sentence? 7. What is the possessive case? 8. What is the objective case? 9. In nouns, what cases have the same form? 10. How is the possessive singular formed? 11. How is the possessive plural formed? 12. What singular nouns form the possessive by adding an apostrophe only? 13. How do compound nouns form the possessive? 14. Of what is 's an abbreviation? 15. How are the nouns *boy*, *man*, and *horse* declined?

CHAPTER III.—THE ADJECTIVE.

I. Classification.

63. An **Adjective** is a word which qualifies or limits a noun : as, A *ripe* orange ; *twenty* men.

Obs. 1.—An adjective does not denote the quality of the noun, but of the thing for which the noun stands. In the phrase, "A *ripe* orange," the adjective *ripe* describes the sort of orange and not the sort of noun the word "orange" is. In the phrase, "*Twenty* men," *twenty* limits the application of the noun "men" to twenty of the individuals which form the class denoted by the word "men."

Obs. 2.—An adjective limits the meaning of the noun it qualifies. "Orange," in the example above, is the name given to all the individuals. The addition of the adjective *ripe*, by indicating the quality of ripeness in the thing denoted by the noun, limits or restricts the application of the name to a portion of the whole class represented by the noun "orange." The adjective "ripe" and the noun "orange" taken together may be regarded as a kind of compound descriptive name, denoting a smaller class chosen from a larger class designated by the noun "orange."

64. Adjectives are of three kinds, *Adjectives of Quality*, *Adjectives of Quantity*, and *Distinguishing Adjectives*.

65. Adjectives of Quality express the quality of a thing : as, *A dark night* ; *a stormy sea*. They answer the question *what sort?*

Obs. 1.—Most of the adjectives in the English language belong to this class.

Obs. 2.—Adjectives derived from proper names are called *Proper Adjectives of Quality* : as, *English language*, *Norman warrior*, *Norwegian river*.

Obs. 3.—Participles (§ 122) are often used as adjectives of quality : as, *Dwindling income* ; *folded arms*.

Obs. 4.—Nouns are often used as adjectives of quality : as, *Gold ring* ; *iron bar* ; *glass door*.

Obs. 5.—Adjectives are sometimes used as Abstract nouns and sometimes as Concrete nouns : e.g.,

Abstract : “The *sublime* and the *ridiculous* are often so nearly related, that it is difficult to class them separately” ; “The *evil* that men do lives after them” ; “He did much *good*.”

Concrete : “Thy songs were made for the *pure* and *free*” ; “The *poor* ye always have with you” ; “The *wise* are happy.”

66. Adjectives of Quantity express how much of a thing or how many things of a class are referred to : as, *Much silver* ; *some rivers* ; *ten houses*. They answer the question *How much?* or *How many?*

Adjectives of Quantity are of four kinds :—

i. Adjectives denoting Quantity in Bulk or Mass : as, *Any bread*. The adjectives which denote quantity in bulk or mass are : *All*, *any*, *enough*, *little*, *much*, *no*, *none*, *some*, *whole*.

Obs. 1.—*All*, *any*, *enough*, *no*, *none*, *some*, and *whole* are adjectives of number when they answer the question *How many?*

Obs. 2.—*Little* is an adjective of quality when it denotes size : as, *A little boat*.

Obs. 3.—Many of the adjectives of quantity in bulk or mass may be used as nouns : as, *All* is silence ; *Enough* has been done ; *Little* has been heard ; *Much* has been seen ; *A little* is better than *none*. Whenever possible, a noun should be supplied : as, *Little* (news) has been heard.

Obs. 4.—*All*, *any*, *enough*, *no*, and *some* are also used as adverbs : as, He is *all* powerful ; He could not walk *any* faster ; He is old *enough* ; I could come *no* sooner ; He lived *some* fifty years ago.

ii. Definite Numeral Adjectives, which denote an exact number. They are of two kinds :—

(a) **Cardinal Numerals**, which denote how many : as, *One*, *two*, *twenty* ; *no*, *none*, *both*.

(b) **Ordinal Numerals**, which denote the order in which objects are placed : as, *The first man* ; *the sixth house*.

Obs. 1.—*No* and *none* are adjectives of quantity in bulk or mass when they answer the question *How much?*

Obs. 2.—In *Multiplicatives* the greater numeral follows the less : as, *four hundred*. Multiplicatives may be formed in various ways :

(a) By the English suffix *-fold* : as, *threefold*.

(b) By the Latin or Romance suffix *-ple* or *-ble* : as, *duple* or *double* ; *triple* or *treble* ; *quadruple*. The suffix *-ble* or *-ple* has the same meaning as *fold*.

(c) By *twice* and *thrice* placed before a numeral : as, *twice six*, *thrice two*.

(d) By the word *times* put between numerals : as, *seven times six*.

Obs. 3.—*Quarter*, *half*, *third*, *fourth*, *fifth*, etc., are termed *fractional numerals*. Cardinal and fractional numerals are frequently used as nouns or pronouns : as, *All my pretty ones* ; *Two-thirds* of the tree were decayed ; *The half* is less than the *whole*.

iii. Indefinite Numeral Adjectives, which denote number indefinitely : as, *Some* men. The indefinite numeral adjectives are : *All, another, any, certain, divers, enough, few, many, other, several, some, sundry, and whole.*

Obs.—*All, any, enough, some, and whole* are adjectives of quantity in bulk or mass when they answer the question *How much?*

iv. Distributive Numeral Adjectives, which denote a number of objects taken separately : as, *Every* hour. The distributive numeral adjectives are : *Each, every, either, neither.*

Obs.—*Many* is often used with *an* or *a* as a distributive numeral adjective : as, *Many a* flower.

67. Distinguishing Adjectives point out or distinguish a thing from its class : as, *This* horse. The distinguishing adjectives are *a* or *an, the, this, that, these, those* ; also *yon, yonder, identical, such, same* and *self-same.*

Obs. 1.—*These* is the plural of *this* ; *those* is the plural of *that*.

Obs. 2.—*A, an, and the* cannot stand alone. They always qualify a noun expressed. They are often called *Articles* (Latin *articulus*, a little joint). *A* or *an* is called the indefinite article, *the* the definite article.

Obs. 3.—*A* or *an* is only used before singular nouns ; *the* before nouns of both numbers. *A* is used before a consonant or the vowel *u* (pronounced as in *union*) : as, *A* farmer, *a* horse, *a* unit. *An* is used before a vowel (except long *u*) and silent *h* : as, *An* object, *an* heir. When a word beginning with *h* aspirated has the accent on the second syllable, *an* is more usual than *a*, but both usages are found : as, *An* historical account, *an* hypothesis ; but also, *A* historical account, *a* hypothesis.

Obs. 4.—*The, this, that, yon, yonder, same, self-same, such*, as well as the third personal pronouns, are often called demonstrative pronouns. *The* was formerly declined, like other adjectives, for gender, number and case. *This* (O.E. *mas. thes*, *fem. theós*, *neu. this*). The plural of all genders was *thás*. Later we have *thes*=*these* and *thisc*=*this*. *That* was originally the neuter of *the* (*mas. se*, *fem. seo*, *neu. that*). The plural of *that* is *those* (O.E. *thás*). *Such* (O.E. *swíle*) is a compound of O.E. *swá*, *so*, and O.E. *lic*, *like*. *Same* (Middle E. *same*). *Yon, yond, yonder* (O.E. *gon*).

TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

| | | |
|---------------------|--|-----------------|
| I. Of Quality | ..... | <i>Yellow.</i> |
| II. Of Quantity | Quantity in Bulk or Mass | <i>Much.</i> |
| | Definite Numeral Adjectives { Cardinal | <i>Seven.</i> |
| | Ordinal | <i>Serenth.</i> |
| | Indefinite Numeral Adjectives | <i>Many.</i> |
| III. Distinguishing | Distributive Numeral Adjectives | <i>Each.</i> |
|  | ..... | <i>This.</i> |

EXERCISE 39.

Mention the adjectives, and say to which class they belong :—

1. Few things in this world strike me with more surprise. 2. Always there is a black spot in our sunshine. 3. A transient pleasure sparkles in his eyes. 4. I see the golden helmet. 5. All those ships have families on board. 6. I have received four shillings. 7. She sings the wild songs of her dear native plains. 8. The little red spark in the bowl of the pipe had flickered up and died. 9. His high black plume floats abroad over the throng. 10. More golden coin fell into the little parlour till. 11. Each

father had lost two sons. 12. Every settler carried arms for several days. 13. The morning was windy and wet. 14. The low damp ground was hard. 15. The sun withdraws his last cold feeble ray.

16. Amidst the flashing and feathery foam
The stormy petrel finds a home.

EXERCISE 40.

Mention the adjectives of quantity, and say to which subdivision each belongs :—

1. They found many passengers in the inn. 2. Have you discovered any gold? 3. He took some linen from a cupboard. 4. He supped with some gentlemen. 5. They obtained no shelter. 6. Her husband took all those materials with him. 7. They must pass through all Wiltshire. 8. Every dog has his day. 9. The brothers adopted neither course. 10. The soldiers were arranged in two lines. 11. Several men rushed upon the thief. 12. He came on the second day.

EXERCISE 41.

Put the indefinite article (*a* or *an*) before each noun :—

Stranger, house, honour, harp, ostrich, mountain, eagle, palace, hour, hill, sunbeam, egg, bush, queen, bird, ox, ounce, glass, tree, apple, orange, temple, blossom, apricot, voice, owl, metal, oven, tomb, home.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 63—67.

1. What is an adjective? 2. How many kinds of adjectives are there? 3. What are adjectives of quality? 4. What are proper adjectives? 5. What words are often used as adjectives of quality? 6. What are adjectives of quantity? 7. How many kinds of adjectives of quantity are there? 8. What adjectives denote quantity in bulk or mass? 9. What adjectives denote both quantity (in bulk or mass) and number? 10. When is *little* an adjective of quality? 11. What adjectives of quantity may be used as nouns? 12. What adjectives of quantity may be used as adverbs? 13. What are definite numeral adjectives? 14. Of how many kinds are definite numeral adjectives? 15. What are cardinal numerals? 16. What are ordinal numerals? 17. What part of speech is *no*? 18. What part of speech is *none*? 19. How are multiplicatives formed? 20. What are fractional numerals? 21. What are indefinite numeral adjectives? 22. Name the indefinite numeral adjectives. 23. What are distributive numeral adjectives? 24. Name the distributive numeral adjectives. 25. What are distinguishing adjectives? 26. Name the distinguishing adjectives. 27. What is *a* or *an* called? 28. What is *the* called? 29. Before what nouns is *a* used? 30. Before what nouns is *an* used? 31. Give the derivation of *the*, *this*, *that*, *such*, *same*, and *yon*.

II. Inflexion.

68. The adjectives which are inflected are (1) those which denote quality, and (2) a few adjectives of quantity and number, viz., *Few*, *little*, *many*, *much*.

Obs.—*This* and *that* are inflected to express number, their plurals being *these* and *those*. *Others*, a plural form of *other*, is to be regarded as an adjective used as a noun. So with the possessive forms *other's*, *another's*. [*Parsing*, pp. 29, 117.]

69. Adjectives are inflected to express comparison. There are three degrees of comparison, *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

Comparison is the change of form which the adjective undergoes to mark the different degrees of quality, quantity, or number.

70. The **Positive Degree** is the adjective in its simple form : as, *rich, wise*.

71. The **Comparative Degree** denotes that one of two things, or of two sets of things, possesses a certain quality in a greater degree than the other : as, *richer, wiser*.

72. The **Superlative Degree** denotes that one of more than two things, or sets of things, possesses a certain quality in a greater degree than all the others : as, *richest, wisest*.

73. The Comparative is formed by adding *er* to the positive, and the Superlative is formed by adding *est* to the positive : as,—

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Strong, | Stronger, | Strongest. |

Obs. 1.—When the positive ends in *e, r* and *st* only are added : as, *large, larger, largest*.

Obs. 2.—When the positive ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, the consonant is doubled : as, *red, redder, reddest*.

Obs. 3.—When the positive ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, the *y* is changed into *i* : as, *happy, happier, happiest*.

Obs. 4.—When the positive consists of two or more syllables, the comparative is generally formed by prefixing *more*, and the superlative by prefixing *most* : as, *active, more active, most active*. Dissyllables ending in *y, ble, er* and *ow*, and those accented on the last syllable, are compared by adding *er* and *est* : as, *merry, merrier, merriest* ; *feeble, feebler, feeblest* ; *slender, slenderer, slenderest* ; *shallow, shallower, shallowest* ; *polite, politer, politest*.

Obs. 5.—A few English adjectives and also a few adjectives of Latin origin, which have the comparative form, are now regarded as positives : as, (English) *elder, former, hinder, inner, latter, nether, outer, under, upper* ; (Latin) *anterior, exterior, inferior, junior, major, minor, posterior, prior, senior, superior*.

Obs. 6.—The affix *ish* is sometimes added to lessen the signification of the positive. This forms what is termed the Imperfect or Sub-positive degree : as, *red, reddish*.

Obs. 7.—Terminational comparison, as well as that denoted by *more* and *most*, always increases the signification. *Less* and *least* decrease it, and must, therefore, be parsed as adverbs when modifying adjectives, but need not be said to indicate degree. Some grammarians, however, consider that *less* indicates the comparative and *least* the superlative degree of diminution.

74. Many adjectives of quality, on account of their absolute signification, do not admit of comparison. Such are :—

(1) Those denoting perfect and invariable qualities : as, *Almighty, perfect, supreme, eternal, dead, right, wrong, square, full, chief, circular, conscious, earthly, empty, everlasting, external, extreme, false, filial, fluid, free, godly, heavenly, human, impossible, infinite, living, natural, omnipotent*, etc.

(2) Those denoting material : as, *brazen, golden, wooden*.

(3) Such adjectives as the following denoting qualifications of time and place : as, *perpetual, weekly, daily, annual, French, African*.

Obs.—Some adjectives which, strictly speaking, cannot be compared, are, when used in a relative sense, allowed to take the comparative and superlative degrees : as, *independent, more independent, most independent*,

75. The following adjectives are compared irregularly :—

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Bad, | worse, | worst. |
| Evil, | worse, | worst. |
| Far, | farther, | farthest. |
| Fore, | former, | { foremost. |
| | | { first. |
| Good, | better, | best. |
| Hind, | hinder, | hindmost. |
| Ill, | worse, | worst. |
| Late, | { later, | { latest. |
| | { latter, | { last. |
| Little, | less, | least. |
| Many, | more, | most. |
| Much, | more, | most. |
| Nigh, | nigher, | { highest. |
| | | { next. |
| Old, | { older, | { oldest. |
| | { elder, | { eldest. |
| [Forth, <i>adv.</i>] | further, | furthest. |
| [In, <i>prep.</i>] | inner, | { inmost. |
| | | { innermost. |
| [Out, <i>adv.</i>] | { outer, | { outmost. |
| | { utter, | { utmost. |
| | | { uttermost. |
| [Neath, <i>prep.</i>] | nether, | nethermost. |
| Up, <i>prep.</i>] | upper, | { upmost. |
| | | { uppermost. |
| [Top, <i>noun</i>] | ..... | topmost. |

Obs. 1.—The forms in *most* are double superlatives, the old superlative endings being *-ema* and *-ost* (= *-est*). These forms also occur: *Aftmost*, *downmost* (Scottish), *eastmost*, *eastermost*, *frontmost*, *hithermost*, *midmost*, *middlemost*, *nethermost*, *northmost*, *northernmost*, *rearmost*, *southmost*, *southernmost*, *undermost*, *westmost*, *westernmost*.

Obs. 2.—**Bad, evil, ill—worse, worst.** O.E. *yfel*, *wyrsa*, *wyrrest*, *wyrst*. *Bad* does not occur in Old English. It was first used in the thirteenth century. *Evil* and *ill* are not inflected. *Evil* is from *yfel*, and *ill* is a cognate form, of Scandinavian origin. *Worse* and *worst* are formed from the root or lost positive *weor*, bad.

Obs. 3.—**Far, farther, farthest.** O.E. *feor*, *fyrra*, *fyrrrest*; later, *fer*, *ferre* (*ferrer*), and *ferrest*. *Farrer* is the true comparative of *far*. The *th* has been inserted from a mistaken analogy with *further*.

Further, O.E. *furthor*, is the comparative of the adverb *forth*. *Forthmost* is the Old English superlative. *Farther* means "more distant"; *further*, "more advanced" or "additional."

Obs. 4.—**First** is the superlative of *fore*. The old superlative was *forma*, from which we obtain *former*.

Obs. 5.—**Good, better, best.** O.E. *gôd*, *betera*, *betest*—*bet(a)st*. *Gôd* has neither comparative nor superlative. *Bad* (= good) is the positive of *betera*. The same root is found in *boot* (= to boot)

Obs. 6.—**Late, later or latter, latest or last.** O.E. *laet*, *lator*, *latost*, or *laetemest*; Middle English, *late*, *latter*, *lattst*, *latst*. There is now a distinction between the meanings of *latter* and *later*, *last* and *latest*. *Latter* and *last* refer to order, while *later* and *latest* refer to time.

Obs. 7.—**Little, less, least.** O.E. *lytel*, *laessa*, *laesest*, *laest*. The root of *little* is *lite*. *Less* and *least* are from the root of *las*, infirm. A double comparative, *lesser*, is used: e.g., *Lesser Asia*.

Obs. 8.—**Much, more, most.** O.E. *micel*, *mâra*, *maest*. The root is *mah*, or *magh*, great. The later forms of *micel* are *michel*, *muchel*, *mochel*, Scotch *muckle*.

Many, O.E. *maneg*. The root *many* is a form of *mug* or *mah*. *More*, O.E. *mara*

(=*māh-ra*) is used as the comparative of both *much* and *many*. *More* is now used both as an adjective and adverb. *Most*, O.E. *moest* (= *māh-st*). In O.E. *muchel*, and in Middle English *muchel*, *mūche*, *moche*=great, large.

Obs. 9.—*Nigh*, *nigher*, *highest* (*next*); *near*, *nearer*, *nearest*. O.E. *neāgh*, *neh*; *nyra*, *nearra*; *neāht*, *neht*. The O.E. forms are properly represented by *nigh*, *near*, *next*. *Near* is from O.E. *nyra* or *nearra*, and is in reality a comparative form. *Nearer* is a double comparative. In *nearest*, the old comparative form has the modern superlative suffix added to it. *Next* is a contraction of *nighest*.

Obs. 10.—*Old*, O.E. *eald*, *ald*; *elder*, O.E. *yltra*, *eltra*; *eldest*, O.E. *yldest*, *eldest*. The more recent forms *older* and *oldest*, formed directly from *old*, are now commonly used. *Elder* and *eldest* are now applied only to living beings.

Obs. 11.—*Over* is the comparative of O.E. *ufan*, above.

76. THIRD PARSING MODEL.

Just retribution overtook those guilty men.

- Just*— An adjective of quality, positive degree, qualifying the noun “retribution.”
- retribution*—An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb “overtook.”
- overtook*— A verb.
- those*— A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun “men.”
- guilty*— An adjective of quality, positive degree, qualifying the noun “men.”
- men*— A common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “overtook.”

[*Parsing*, pp. 16—21.]

EXERCISE 42.

Compare these adjectives :—

Hollow, melancholy, distant, costly, wild, busy, weary, yellow, dim, coarse, rich, calm, little, dry, clean, harmless, old, wonderful, good, lovely, sweet, dangerous, far, beautiful, glad, brave, gallant, horrible, fair, fragrant, pure, pretty, agreeable, great, giddy, nigh, bad, fierce, clear, marvellous, observant.

EXERCISE 43.

Parse :—

1. Adown the glen rode armed men. 2. Martin had dealt a heavier stroke than he intended. 3. Caius !* of all the Romans thou hast the keenest sight. 4 His steady hand made the straightest furrow. 5. Towards evening they reached a little secluded village amid the Surrey hills, ivy-clad and topped by a golden spire. 6. The boat has left a stormy land. 7. More good was everywhere. 8. I received no other hurt, and the dwarf was pardoned at my desire. 9. He gently took me up in both his hands. 10. I took a thick cudgel and threw it with all my strength. 11. He bowed to several well-dressed persons. 12. A most wonderful event occurred. 13. London is larger than Paris. 14. The letter was written in the simplest language.

15. Soft and pale is the moony beam,
Moveless still the glassy stream ;
The wave is clear, the beach is bright
With snowy shell and sparkling stones ;
The shore-surge comes in ripples light,
In murmurings faint and distant moans.

* When a noun is second person, it is called the nominative case of address.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 68—76.

1. What adjectives are inflected? 2. What inflexions have adjectives? 3. How many degrees are there? 4. What is the positive degree? 5. What is the comparative degree? 6. What is the superlative degree? 7. How is the comparative formed? 8. How is the superlative formed? 9. How are adjectives ending in *e* compared? 10. How are adjectives ending in *y* compared? 11. What adjectives are compared by *more* and *most*? 12. What dissyllables are compared by adding *er* and *est*? 13. How is the imperfect degree formed? 14. How are the comparative and superlative of diminution formed? 15. What adjectives do not admit of comparison? 16. When may adjectives, which do not properly admit of comparison, be compared? 17. What adjectives are compared irregularly? 18. Explain the ending *most*. 19. Which adjectives comparative in form are regarded as positives? 20. Give the derivation of *better* and *best*. 21. Give the derivation of *worse* and *worst*. 22. Explain the forms *little*, *less*, *least*, *lesser*. 23. What is *near* the comparative of? 24. Distinguish between *older* and *elder*, *oldest* and *eldest*. 25. Distinguish between *further* and *farther*. 26. Explain the forms *much*, *more*, *most*. 27. Give the derivation of *many*. 28. Explain the forms *nigh*, *nigher*, *nighest*, *near*, *nearer*, *nearest*, *next*. 29. Give the derivation of *over*.

CHAPTER IV.—THE PRONOUN.

I. Classification.

77. A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun : as, 'The cottage has two rooms ; *they* are small.

78. Pronouns are of three kinds, *Personal*, *Relative*, and *Interrogative*.

79. A Personal Pronoun is the simple substitute for a noun : as, The master spoke and the boys obeyed *him*.

The personal pronouns are : *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*. *I* is called the pronoun of the first person ; *thou* is called the pronoun of the second person ; *he*, *she*, and *it* are called pronouns of the third person.

Obs. 1.—*I* and *thou*, with their plurals *we*, *ye*, or *you*, are the original personal pronouns. They are inflected for number and case, but not for gender. The personal pronouns of the third person are, by many grammarians, regarded as demonstrative pronouns. They, like the old demonstratives, are inflected for gender as well as for number and case.

Obs. 2.—*One*, in such phrases as "*One* is quite perplexed," is an indefinite personal pronoun, and is derived from the French *on*. It is distinct from the adjective *one*, which corresponds to French *un*, Latin *unus*.

80. Compound Personal Pronouns are formed

i. By adding the noun *self* : thus, *Myself*, *thymself*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *oneself*.

Obs.—*Self* (O.E. *silf*, plural *sylfe*), which is now a noun, was originally an adjective (meaning "same") and declined as such. It is used

(1) To mark emphasis : as, He *himself* was hurt. When the pronouns are so used they are called **Emphatic Pronouns**.

(2) To show that the doer of an action and the object acted on are the same : as, He hurt *himself*. Compound personal pronouns used in this way are also called **Reflexive Pronouns**. The simple personal pronouns, *me*, *thee*, *you*, *him*, etc., are sometimes used reflexively : as, I repent *me*, He *thee* to that city, He sat *him* down. *My*, *thy*, etc., in the compounds *myself*, *thymself*, etc., are thought by some to be corruptions of *me* and *thee*.

ii. By adding the intensive adjective of quality *own* : as, *My own, thy own, his own, her own, its own, one's own.*

Obs. 1.—The compound personal pronouns *myself, thyself, etc.*, are generally joined either to the simple pronoun or to any ordinary noun to make it more emphatic. These pronouns are usually in the same case as the noun or pronoun to which they are joined : as, *I myself* told him.

Obs. 2.—*Oneself* and *one's own* are called compound indefinite personal pronouns. *Oneself* or *one's self* is modern. In Shakespeare's time we have a *man's self*, which is equivalent to *one's self*.

Obs. 3.—*Own* is, by origin, the past participle of *owe*.

81. A Relative Pronoun is one which, besides being used instead of a noun, also joins two sentences together : as, The surgeon *who* performed the operation is dead.

EXPLANATION.—The word *who* refers to the preceding noun *surgeon*, and it also joins the sentence of which it forms a part ("who performed the operation") to the sentence "The surgeon is dead." A relative pronoun has, therefore, the force both of a pronoun and a conjunction.

Obs.—Relative pronouns are so called because they *relate* to a preceding noun or pronoun. The word to which they relate is called the *Antecedent*.

82. The relative pronouns are *who, which, and that*. *Who* relates to persons, *which* to the lower animals and things without life, *that* either to persons or things. *That* is often used for *who* and *which* to prevent their too frequent repetition.

Obs. 1.—When *as* follows such words as *such, the same, so, or as*, it is often called a relative ; it is, however, merely a conjunction, as can be shown by supplying the ellipsis : as, We are such stuff *as* dreams are made of = we are such stuff as [the stuff is which] dreams are made of. Such phrases as "The man *as* rides to market" are simply vulgarisms. [*Parsing*, pp. 35, 162.]

Obs. 2.—*But* is sometimes called a negative relative (= *who + not*), when it corresponds to the Latin *quin* : as, "There is no vice so simple, *but* assumes some mark of virtue on its outward parts." Here "but assumes" is equivalent to "which assumes not." It is better, however, to parse *but* as a conjunction and supply *it* or *which* as nominative to *assumes*.

83. The Compound Relatives include both the relative and the antecedent. They are :—

i. *What*, which is equivalent to *the thing which* or *the things which*.

Obs.—In parsing, *what* must be resolved into its component parts. *What* was originally only the neuter of the interrogative pronoun *who*.

ii. *Whoso*, formed by adding *so* to the simple relative.

iii. Those ending in *ever*, viz., *whoever, whichever, whatever*.

iv. Those ending in *soever*, viz., *whosoever, whichever, whatsoever*.

Obs. 1.—The endings *so, ever, and soever* render the signification more wide and universal. *Soever* is an older form than *ever*. The forms in *so* and *soever* are now rarely used.

Obs. 2.—These compounds, as well as the simple relatives *which* and *that*, may be used as adjectives.

Obs. 3.—*That* is sometimes used as a compound relative : e.g., "We speak *that* we do know and testify *that* we have seen"; "To do always *that* is righteous in Thy sight"; "There is *that* scattereth and yet increaseth"; "Take *that* thine is and go thy way."

Obs. 4.—The compound relative is equivalent to :—

- (1) Two nominatives : as, The man is not *what* he was.
- (2) Two objectives : as, I told *what* you said.
- (3) Nominative and objective : as, This sword is *what* I want.
- (4) Objective and nominative : as, They knew *what* it was.

84. An Interrogative Pronoun is one which is used in asking questions : as, *Who* planted this tree ? *What* have you done ? *Which* of the men do you mean ?

EXPLANATION.—The above expressions are elliptical, being respectively equivalent to “Mention the person *who* planted this tree,” “Mention the thing *which* you have done,” “Mention the particular man *which* you mean.” This explains why the interrogatives have the same form as the relatives.

85. The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *what*, and *which*. The interrogative *who* is used of persons only, *what* (the neuter of *who*) is used of things only, and *which* is used of both persons and things, and requires one or more to be selected from some class or group.

Obs.—*Whether* (=which of two?) was formerly much used as an interrogative : as, *Whether* of them twain did the will of his father ? *Whether* is now mostly used as a conjunction : as, I cannot tell *whether* he will go or not. *Whether* is the pronoun *who* with the old comparative suffix *ther*.

86. The Compound Interrogative Pronouns are *whoever*, *whatever*, *whichever* : as, *Whoever* will give it to him ? *Whatever* will he say ? *Whichever* did you mean ?

Obs.—The interrogatives *what* and *which* and their compounds *whatsoever* and *whichever* are often used as adjectives : as, *What* conquest brings he home ? *Which* king will ye serve ?

TABLE OF PRONOUNS.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----|---------------------|-----------|
| I. Personal | ... | { 1. Simple | I. |
| | | { 2. Compound..... | Myself. |
| II. Relative | ... | { 1. Simple | Who. |
| | | { 2. Compound..... | Whoever. |
| III. Interrogative | | { 1. Simple | Who ? |
| | | { 2. Compound... .. | Whoever ? |

N.B.—In parsing, the word *simple* is omitted.

Obs. 1.—The term *Indefinite Pronoun* is by some applied to the words *All*, *another*, *any*, *both*, *certain*, *others*, *enough*, *few*, *many*, *none*, *other*, *several*, *some*, *such*, *sundry*, and *whole*, especially when the noun is not expressed.

Obs. 2.—The term *Distributive Pronoun* is, by some, applied to the words *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*.

Obs. 3.—The term *Demonstrative Pronoun* is, by some, applied to the words *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*.

Obs. 4.—*Each other* and *one another* are called *Reciprocal Pronouns*.

Obs. 5.—*Myself*, *thysself*, etc., are called *Reflexive Pronouns* when, along with the verb, they show that the action comes back upon the doer.

EXERCISE 44.

Mention the pronouns, and say whether they are personal, relative, or interrogative :—

1. I visited Westminster Abbey. 2. He has lived for himself. 3. She followed the boy. 4. It was a huge, high, airy room. 5. Then the thought of his own mother came across him. 6. What doest thou here, Elijah ? 7. Ye are brothers ! we are men ! 8. The widow herself was

blamed. 9. He rushes to the field. 10. He left the name at which the world grew pale. 11. I conquered myself. 12. The man who bought the ivory carried it to Europe. 13. The days that are gone return not. 14. Whoever lives must die. 15. I come to speak to you of what he wished.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 77—86.

1. What is a pronoun? 2. How many kinds of pronouns are there? 3. What is a personal pronoun? 4. Name the personal pronouns. 5. Which is the pronoun of the first person? 6. Which is the pronoun of the second person? 7. Which are the pronouns of the third person? 8. When is *one* a pronoun? 9. How are compound personal pronouns formed? 10. What does the affix *self* denote? 11. What is *own*? 12. What is a relative pronoun? 13. Why are relative pronouns so called? 14. What is meant by the antecedent? 15. Name the relative pronouns. 16. To what does *who* relate? 17. To what does *which* relate? 18. How is *that* used? 19. When is *as* considered a relative? 20. What is *as* really? 21. When is *but* considered a relative? 22. What is *but* really? 23. Name the compound relatives. 24. To what is the compound relative *what* equivalent? 25. What is the effect of the affixes *so*, *ever*, and *soever*? 26. What is an interrogative pronoun? 27. Name the interrogative pronouns. 28. When is the interrogative *who* used? 29. When is the interrogative *what* used? 30. When is the interrogative *which* used? 31. What is said about the word *whether*? 32. Name the compound interrogative pronouns. 33. Which interrogatives may be used as adjectives?

II. Inflexion.

87. Pronouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

1. Gender.

88. Only pronouns of the third person have any distinction of gender: as, Masculine, *he*; feminine, *she*; neuter, *it*. Pronouns of the first and second persons have no inflexion for gender, because the sex of the person speaking and the person spoken to is always regarded as obvious.

Obs.—Pronouns of the first and second persons are said to be of common gender unless the gender of the noun for which they are used is apparent, and then they are called masculine or feminine as the case may be.

89. Of the relative pronouns, *who* is of common gender, *which* is of neuter gender, and *that* is of all genders.

90. Of the interrogative pronouns, *who* is of common gender, *what* is of neuter gender, and *which* is of all genders.

Obs.—Compound pronouns are of the same gender as their corresponding simple pronouns.

2. Number.

91. The personal pronouns have different words for the plural: as, *I, we*; *thou, ye* or *you*; *he, they*; *she, they*; *it, they*.

Obs.—The affix *self* in compound personal pronouns makes the plural *selves*.

92. The relative pronouns have the same form for both numbers: as, The horse *which*; the horses *which*.

93. The interrogative pronouns have the same form for both numbers: as, *Which* of the dogs is loose? *Which* of the dogs are loose?

3. Person.

94. The personal pronouns have different words for the separate persons (§ 79).

95. The relative pronouns have the same form for all persons: as, I *who*; thou *who*; he *who*.

96. The interrogative pronouns have the same form for all persons.

4. Case.

97. The personal pronouns are inflected for the possessive and objective cases.

98. The personal pronouns *I, thou, she, we, you, and they* have two forms of the possessive case, viz., *my, mine; thy, thine; her, hers; our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs*. The former of each pair is used when the noun follows it, the latter when the noun is omitted.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---|--|---|-------|--------------|---|--|---|--------------------|
| This is | { | my thy her our your their | } | boat. | This boat is | { | mine. thine. hers. ours. yours. theirs. | } | [boat] understood. |
|---------|---|--|---|-------|--------------|---|--|---|--------------------|

Obs. 1.—The apostrophe is never used with the possessive case of pronouns.

Obs. 2.—The compound personal pronouns in *self* have no possessive case.

Obs. 3.—In old writers, *mine* and *thine* were used before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h*: as, Wipe thou *thine* eyes.

99. The relative pronoun *who* is inflected for the possessive and objective cases. *Which* and *that* have no possessive case, and the objective is the same as the nominative.

Obs. 1.—The compound relative pronoun *whosoever* is inflected for the possessive and objective cases. The compound relative pronouns *what, whichever, whatever, whichsoever, whatsoever* have no possessive case, and the objective is the same as the nominative. *Whoso* and *whoever* are used only in the nominative case.

Obs. 2.—*Whose*, now used as the possessive of *who*, was originally an interrogative of all genders. It is now very rare in the neuter, except in poetry, and even then it is chiefly used when objects are personified. Some grammarians, however, give it as the possessive of *which* as well as of *who*.

100. The interrogative pronoun *who* is inflected for the possessive and objective cases.

101. The interrogative pronouns *what* and *which* have no possessive case, and the objective is the same as the nominative.

Obs.—The compound interrogative pronouns *whatever* and *whichever* have no possessive case, and the objective is the same as the nominative. *Whoever* is only used in the nominative case.

102. The personal pronouns are thus declined :—

| Person. | Gender. | | Singular. | Plural. |
|---------|--------------|-------|------------|----------------|
| First | Mas. or Fem. | Nom. | I | We. |
| | | Poss. | My, mine | Our, ours. |
| | | Obj. | Me | Us. |
| Second | Mas. or Fem. | Nom. | Thou | Ye or you. |
| | | Poss. | Thy, thine | Your, yours. |
| | | Obj. | Thee | You. |
| Third | Mas. | Nom. | He | They. |
| | | Poss. | His | Their, theirs. |
| | | Obj. | Him | Them. |
| Third | Fem. | Nom. | She | They. |
| | | Poss. | Her, hers | Their, theirs. |
| | | Obj. | Her | Them. |
| Third | Neut. | Nom. | It | They. |
| | | Poss. | Its | Their, theirs. |
| | | Obj. | It | Them. |

Sing. Nom. *One* ; Poss. *one's* ; Obj. *one*.

Obs. 1.—*My, thy, etc.*, as also their compounds *my own, thy own, etc.*, are parsed by some grammarians as possessive adjective pronouns.

Obs. 2.—When *you, your, yours, our, and ours* are used of one individual they are parsed as “singular number, plural form.”

Obs. 3.—I originally ended in *c* or *ch*. **Me** (O.E. *mē*) is used as a Direct Object, as, “He hurt *me*,” and also as an Indirect or Dative Object, when it is used before the impersonal verbs, *methinks, etc.*, or after interjections in such expressions as, *Ah me!*

My (O.E. *min*), **thy** (O.E. *thin*), **her** (O.E. *hire*), **our** (O.E. *eūre*), **your** (O.E. *cower*), **their** (O.E. *thāra*) are used attributively : as, *My horse is dead. Mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs* are used predicatively : as, *The house is mine. Mine and thine* are sometimes used attributively in poetry when placed before *h* or before a noun beginning with a vowel : as, *Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice. Mine and thine* are the older forms of the possessive case. **Thou** (O.E. *thu*) was formerly used to express familiarity, superiority, or contempt. “We maintain that *thou* from superiors to inferiors is proper, as a sign of command ; from equals to equals is passable as a note of familiarity ; but from inferiors to superiors, if proceeding from ignorance, hath a smack of clownishness ; if from affectation, a tone of contempt.”—*Fuller*. **Thee** (O.E. *thē*) was used both as accusative and dative, and is now used both as direct and indirect object. **Ye** (O.E. *ge*) was originally used as the nominative. It is now used only in poetical or elevated language, the dative or objective *you* having superseded it. In the English Bible *ye* is always used as a nominative, and *you* as objective : e.g., *Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you. Ye* is sometimes used in the objective case instead of *you* even by the best writers : e.g., *I do beseech ye if you bear me hard ; Vain pomp and glory of the world, I hate ye ; His wrath which one day will destroy ye both. You* (O.E. *cow*), which in Old English was an accusative, is now used as a nominative plural, a direct object and an indirect or dative object : as, *You came early ; I saw you ; He gave you the money. He* (O.E. *he*) was in Middle English corrupted into *ha* and *a* : e.g., *A was a merry man ; Again would a come. His* (O.E. *his*, later *hise*) is a true possessive formed from *he*.

Him (O.E. *him*) contains the dative suffix *m*. (Compare *who-m*.) It was originally the dative of *he*. It is now also used as accusative, having replaced the old accusative *hine*. **She** is the Old English definite article in an altered form. *She* supplanted an older form *heo*, which still survives as *hoo* in the Lancashire dialect. **Her** contains the dative feminine suffix *-r* (*-re*). *Hi* or *heo*, the old accusative feminine, has given place to *her*, which was formerly a dative. *Her* now represents (1) O.E. *hire* (possessive) : as, *We saw her dog ; (2) O.E. hire* (dative) : as, *I gave her a dog ; (3) O.E. hi* or *heo* (accusative) : as, *You praised her. It* (O.E. *hit*) : the *t* was originally a suffix of the neuter gender. (Compare *wha-t, tha-t*.) **Its** is modern. *His* and not *its* is the form always used in the authorised translation of the Bible (1611).

They (O.E. *thā*) is the nominative and accusative plural of the old definite article. **Their** (O.E. *thāra*) is the genitive plural, and **them** (O.E. *thām*) is the dative plural, but is now used as the accusative.

103. The compound personal pronouns are thus declined :—

| Person. | Gender. | | Singular. | Plural. |
|---------|--------------|-------|---------------------|-------------|
| First | Mas. or Fem. | Nom. | Myself | Ourselves. |
| | | Poss. | ..... | ..... |
| | | Obj. | Myself | Ourselves. |
| Second | Mas. or Fem. | Nom. | Thyself or yourself | Yourselves. |
| | | Poss. | ..... | ..... |
| | | Obj. | Thyself or yourself | Yourselves. |
| Third | Mas. | Nom. | Himself | Themselves. |
| | | Poss. | ..... | ..... |
| | | Obj. | Himself | Themselves. |
| Third | Fem. | Nom. | Herself | Themselves. |
| | | Poss. | ..... | ..... |
| | | Obj. | Herself | Themselves. |
| Third | Neut. | Nom. | Itself | Themselves. |
| | | Poss. | ..... | ..... |
| | | Obj. | Itself | Themselves. |

Sing. Nom. *Oneself* ; Poss. wanting ; Obj. *oneself*.

Obs.—The compounds *my own*, *thy own*, etc., are possessive case.

104. The relative pronoun *who* is thus declined :—

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|-------|-----------|---------|
| Nom. | Who | Who. |
| Poss. | Whose | Whose. |
| Obj. | Whom | Whom. |

105. The compound relative pronoun *whosoever* is thus declined :—

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|-------|------------|-------------|
| Nom. | Whosoever | Whosoever. |
| Poss. | Whosoever | Whosoever. |
| Obj. | Whomsoever | Whomsoever. |

106. The interrogative pronoun *who* is declined in the same way as the relative *who* (§ 104).

Obs.—**Who** (O.E. *hwa*), **which** (O.E. *hwilc*), and **what** (O.E. *hwæt*) were originally interrogative pronouns. The ordinary relative was *that* (O.E. *thæt*). **Whose** (O.E. *hwæs*) and **whom** (O.E. *hwæm*) came into use as a relative as early as the thirteenth century ; but *who* was not used as a relative until the end of the sixteenth century. In the authorised version of the Bible *that* is more commonly used as a relative than *who*. Formerly *whose* was of all genders, but its use now, with regard to inanimate objects, is limited to poetry. It is sometimes used absolutely ; as, *Whose* is this scheme ? The *s* in *whose* is a genitive suffix. *Which* was once used for all genders and both numbers. It is now applied only to things that are inanimate and to beings that are irrational. *Whom*, originally dative, is now used both as a direct and indirect object. **That** was originally a demonstrative, but in Old English was used as a neuter singular relative. It is now employed of all genders and both numbers. *That*, like *what*, is now sometimes used in the sense of *that which*. **What** (O.E. *hwæt*) was in Old English only used interrogatively and in the singular number. It may now be used with a noun of any gender and either number. When used without a noun, it is singular number and neuter gender.

107. FOURTH PARSING MODEL.

Nelson received his death-wound from the ship which he had twice spared.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Nelson— | A proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb “received.” |
| received— | A verb. |
| his— | A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, governed by the noun “death-wound.” |
| death-wound— | A compound common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “received.” |
| from— | A preposition. |
| the— | A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun “ship.” |
| ship— | A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition “from.” |
| which— | A relative pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent “ship,” objective case, governed by the transitive verb “had spared.” |
| he— | A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb “had spared.” |
| had spared— | A verb. |
| twice— | An adverb. |

[*Parsing*, pp. 22—36.]

EXERCISE 45.

Give the gender, number, person, and case of each pronoun :—

1. Slowly he falls amidst triumphant cries. 2. Let us think of them that sleep by thy wild and stormy deep. 3. His hour-glass trembled while he spoke. 4. I can recover damages. 5. Your years have run to a great length. 6. To what can I liken her smile? 7. She had been with us. 8. A troop of wandering angels stole my little daughter away. 9. They left in her stead a changeling. 10. I saw clearly the doom which had been prepared for me, and congratulated myself upon the timely accident by which I had escaped. 11. The odour of the sharp steel forced itself into my nostrils. 12. It had a very different effect upon Olivia, who mistook it for humour.

EXERCISE 46.

Parse :—

1. You still keep your eyes. 2. Who clothed you? 3. I owe all this to your goodness, madam; for it you have my prayers. 4. We ran directly to my colleague's house and left our own house open. 5. At Malsio's house we found many people who had fled to him in great perplexity. 6. What are you doing? 7. My companion laid himself down with his head upon the precious portmanteau. 8. The redbreast sings from the tall larch that stands beside our door. 9. Thou art a welcome month to me.

10. I had a little daughter,
And she was given to me,
To lead me gently backward
To the Heavenly Father's knee.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 87—107.

1. Which personal pronouns have distinction of gender? 2. Why have pronouns of the first and second persons no distinction of gender? 3. What is the gender of the relative pronouns? 4. How do personal pronouns form the plural? 5. Give the plurals of *I, thou, he, she, it*. 6. What is the plural of *self*? 7. Which classes of pronouns have the same form in both numbers? 8. Which class of pronouns has different words for the three persons? 9. Which classes have the same form? 10. For which cases are personal pronouns inflected? 11. Which personal pronouns have two forms of the possessive? 12. How are these forms used? 13. Which relative pronoun is inflected? 14. Which relative pronouns are not inflected? 15. Which interrogative pronoun is inflected? 16. Which interrogative pronouns are not inflected? 17. Decline the personal pronouns. 18. What was the original form of *I*? 19. How is *me* used? 20. Give the old forms of *my, thy, her, our, your, and their*. 21. How was *thou* formerly used? 22. What changes have taken place in the use of *thee, ye, you, he, him, she, her*? 23. Give the derivation of *it, his, they, their, them*. 24. Decline the compound personal pronouns. 25. Decline the relative *who*. 26. Decline *whosoever*. 27. How is the interrogative *who* declined? 28. Give the derivation of *who, which, what*. 29. When did *who* come into use as a relative? 30. What changes have taken place in the use of *whose, which, whom, that, and what*?

CHAPTER V.—THE VERB

I. Classification.

108. A Verb is a word which says or asserts something: as, The fire *burns*; The bird *builds* a nest.

Obs.—The essential office of the verb is to assert, and hence it expresses with regard to the thing spoken of—

- i. What it is, seems, or becomes;
- ii. What it does;
- or iii. What is done to it.

When a question is asked or a command given, the verb still asserts, although it may seem not to do so; and such expressions as “Will you come?” “Go away!” are merely abbreviations of “I ask whether you will come;” “I request that you will go away.” The verb *to be* (called the *Verb Substantive*) is the only verb which asserts what a thing is; it never asserts what a thing does, nor what is done to it. In logic, it is called the *copula*, because it joins together two notions: as, The sky *is* clear. Here *is* joins the two notions expressed by the words *sky* and *clear*.

109. Verbs are of two kinds, *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

110. Transitive Verbs express action passing from an agent to an object: as, The ship *carries* a flag.

Obs. 1.—*Transitive* is from Latin *transire*, “to pass over.” The doer of an action is called the *Agent*: the person or thing affected by the action is called the *Object*.

Obs. 2.—Transitive verbs include (1) *Reflexive Verbs*, which denote actions that have the same agent and object: as, “He praises himself;” and (2) *Reciprocal Verbs*, which denote actions that pass from the object to the agent as well as from the agent to the object: as, “They love one another.” Many transitive verbs, although not reflexive in form, are so in meaning: as, He kept out of the way = He kept [himself] out of the way.

111. Intransitive Verbs express being, state of being, or action confined to the agent and not passing over to an object: as, The stars *twinkle*.

Obs. 1.—Intransitive verbs are used transitively when they have a causative meaning: as, He *walked* the prisoner about the yard; He *ran* a needle into his hand. *Fell, lay, raise, and set* are distinctive causative forms of the verbs, *fall, lie, rise, and sit* respectively.

Obs. 2.—Transitive verbs are used intransitively: as, The ships *have struck*.

Obs. 3.—Many intransitive verbs are made transitive by an appended preposition: as, He *swerved from* the line; We *despaired of* success; They *laughed at* us. Such verbs are called *Preposition-verbs*. [*Parsing*, pp. 69, 148.]

TABLE OF VERBS.

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| I. Transitive..... | I <i>write</i> (a letter). |
| II. Intransitive | I <i>sleep</i> . |

EXERCISE 47.

Mention the verbs, and say whether they are transitive or intransitive:—

1. He served his country. 2. He loved England. 3. He fell upon his face. 4. They shook hands in silence. 5. Then Nelson spoke of himself. 6. He expired at thirty minutes after four. 7. Men started at the intelligence. 8. The stream rushed downward to the clamouring mill. 9. After dinner I began with my usual toast. 10. The squire talked with ease. 11. Sleep went from my eyes. 12. I crossed the road. 13. I found a footpath over the fields. 14. He reaps the bearded grain at a breath. 15. The skirmish ended. 16. The wild flowers bloom. 17. She loved reading. 18. His light scrip contained a scanty store. 19. The wild winds drowned the name.

20. He gazed at the flowers with tearful eyes,
He kissed their drooping leaves,
It was for the Lord of Paradise
He bound them in his sheaves.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 108—111.

1. What is a verb? 2. What does a verb assert? 3. What is the copula? 4. How many kinds of verbs are there? 5. What are transitive verbs? 6. What is the word *transitive* derived from? 7. What are reflexive verbs? 8. What are reciprocal verbs? 9. What are intransitive verbs? 10. When are intransitive verbs used transitively? 11. Give an instance of a transitive verb used intransitively. 12. What are preposition-verbs?

II. Inflexion.

112. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*.

These are expressed partly by inflexions, and partly by the aid of auxiliary verbs. An *Auxiliary Verb* is one which assists other verbs in forming their voice, mood, or tense.

1. Voice.

113. **Voice** is a change in the form of a verb by which we show whether the subject is the name of the doer of the action or the name of the person or thing acted upon.

114. Transitive verbs have two voices, the *Active* and the *Passive*.

i. The **Active Voice** is that form of a verb in which the subject denotes the doer of the action: as, Cain *killed* Abel.

ii. The **Passive Voice** is that form of a verb in which the subject denotes the person or thing acted upon: as, Abel *was killed* by Cain.

Obs. 1.—The passive voice of a verb is formed by prefixing the different parts of the verb *to be* to the perfect participle of the verb.

Obs. 2.—When the active voice is changed into the passive, the object is changed into the nominative: as, The slave *gathered* the figs = the figs *were gathered* by the slave.

Obs. 3.—Only transitive verbs have voice. Reflexive and reciprocal verbs have no passive.

Obs. 4.—Transitive verbs, active voice, are used intransitively: as, The cakes *ate* short; The ground *ploughs* well; The table *moves*. Some writers apply the term *Middle Voice* to this usage.

Obs. 5.—The agent in the passive voice is usually indicated by the preposition *by*.

Obs. 6.—A preposition-verb may be used in the passive voice: as, They *despaired of* his recovery = His recovery *was despaired of*.

Obs. 7.—Either the direct or indirect object of a verb in the active voice may be the subject of the verb in the passive voice: as,

Active voice: I *taught* him geography.

Passive voice: (1) Geography *was taught* him by me.

(2) He *was taught* geography by me.

Obs. 8.—The verbs *is come*, *is arrived*, etc., in the sentences "He *is come*," "He *is arrived*," etc., must not be confounded with verbs in the passive voice.

EXERCISE 48.

Mention the transitive verbs active voice, and the transitive verbs passive voice:—

1. The cockpit was crowded with wounded and dying men. 2. The fleets of the enemy were destroyed by the English. 3. I was thanked by the chaplain. 4. He attacked the sea-horses on the ice. 5. During the second act Partridge made very few remarks. 6. She watched the gardener at his work. 7. Beneath the rushes was thy cradle swung. 8. The midnight brought the signal-sound of strife. 9. These friends were first sketched by Steele. 10. Our revels now are ended.

EXERCISE 49.

Express the following by the passive voice:—

1. The earl demanded his name. 2. He calls the servants by their names. 3. You see the goodness of the master even in his old house-dog. 4. The king directed his warrant to Sir James Tyrrel. 5. No man sues a beggar. 6. I fixed my eyes on a thousand different objects. 7. Our streams proclaim a welcoming. 8. He hath thrown aside his crook. 9. Swallows follow the flies and gnats. 10. The little petrel enjoys the heaviest gale.

EXERCISE 50.

Express the following by the active voice:—

1. Perkin was brought into the king's court. 2. The streets were thronged with spectators. 3. Swords were drawn by the nobles. 4. In the winter he was left without a fire. 5. Benches were placed below the platform. 6. The road was lined with people. 7. The greensward is torn up and trampled down. 8. A general peace was established. 9. Our little life is rounded with a sleep. 10. For a time the young are fed on the wing by their parents.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 112—114.

1. Classify the inflexions of verbs. 2. What is an auxiliary verb? 3. What is voice? 4. How many voices are there? 5. What is the active voice? 6. What is the passive voice? 7. How is the active voice changed into the passive? 8. Which verbs have voice? 9. Which kinds of transitive verbs have no passive voice? 10. Give examples

of transitive verbs, active voice, used intransitively. 11. How is the agent in the passive voice usually expressed? 12. How is the passive voice formed? 13. Show, by an example, that a preposition-verb may be used in the passive voice. 14. Show that either the direct or indirect object in the active voice may become the subject in the passive voice.

2. Mood.

N.B.—Students who adopt the four-mood system in the conjugation of the verbs are to omit the sections which are bracketed.

115. Mood (Latin *modus*) is a change in the form of a verb to show the manner in which an assertion is made.

116*. Verbs have four moods, *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative* and *Infinitive*.

[116. Verbs have five moods, *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, *Infinitive*, and *Potential*.]

117. The **Indicative Mood** makes a direct assertion: as, The sun *is* bright; Cæsar *received* the roll; The horse *was struck*.

Obs.—The indicative is used in asking questions: as, *Saw* ye Count Albert? Why *shrieks* the owllet grey?

118. The **Subjunctive Mood** expresses a condition or supposition: as, If you *had studied*, you would have been successful.

Obs. 1.—The subjunctive mood is so called because it is always subjoined to some other statement to express a condition or supposition. The subjunctive is generally introduced by one of the following words: *Albeit*, *although*, *before*, *ere*, *except*, *how*, *if*, *lest*, *provided*, *provided that*, *so*, *that*, *though*, *till*, *unless*, *until*, *whether*, *whoever*, *however*, *whatever*. Many of these words are used with the indicative as well as with the subjunctive.

Obs. 2.—When the words “as may be the case” can be inserted after the conjunction, the verb is in the subjunctive mood. When the words “as is the case” can be inserted after the conjunction, the verb is in the indicative mood.

(a) *Subjunctive*: If (as may be the case) he *have* anything, he will give it.

(b) *Indicative*: If (as is the case) he *has* anything, he gives it.

Obs. 3.—When the verb in the present tense is in the subjunctive mood, the auxiliary *should* can be inserted before it. Thus, for “If I *go*” we can substitute “If I *should go*.”

Obs. 4.—The indicative is always used when an actual fact is represented. The subjunctive is used with reference to what is future, contingent, and doubtful in result.

(a) *Indicative*: (1) If he *is* not guilty, why do you not employ him?

(2) Though it *is* long since I wrote to you, I have not yet received a reply.

(b) *Subjunctive*: (1) If he *be* guilty, by all means let him be punished.

(2) If the king-wolf *lose* the scent, how will the pack hold it?

Obs. 5.—If a statement which really implies doubt is in argument regarded as true, the indicative should be used: as, If to drink so many hogsheads *is* to be hospitable we do not contend for the fame of that virtue.

“In the following passages the indicative mood would be more suitable than the subjunctive: ‘If thou *be* the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread’; ‘If thou *be* the Son of God, come down from the cross.’ For, although the address was not sincere on the part of the speakers, they really meant to make the supposition or to grant that he was the Son of God; ‘seeing that thou art the Son of

* This section is to be omitted by those who recognise five moods.

God.' Likewise in the following: 'Now if Christ *be* preached, that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection from the dead?' The meaning is, 'Seeing now that Christ is preached.' In the continuation the conditional clauses are of a different character, and *be* is appropriate: 'But if there *be* no resurrection from the dead, then he is not risen. And if Christ *be* not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain.' Again, 'If thou *bring* thy gift to the altar, and there *rememberest*,' etc., consistency and correctness require *remember*.'—Harrison.

Obs. 6.—It is always better to err by using the indicative for the subjunctive than the subjunctive for the indicative.

Obs. 7.—"If I *were*" is the only subjunctive form that differs from the indicative form in the past tense.

Obs. 8.—The subjunctive preceded by *if* is sometimes called the *conditional mood*,

119. The Imperative Mood expresses a command, desire, or entreaty: as, *Open* the window; *Go* with us.

Obs. 1.—The subject of a verb in the imperative mood is generally omitted: as *Come* = *Come thou*.

Obs. 2.—Entreaties and desires or requests are commands of a weaker kind.

Obs. 3.—Strictly speaking, the imperative mood is always in the second person singular or plural. When we, so to speak, entreat or command ourselves, as, "Let me go," or when we appear to command a third person, as, "Let him go," *let* (=suffer) is an imperative addressed to a person not named and *go* is an infinitive, the *to* being omitted. *Let*, in Old English, was used in the sense of *cause*.

120. The Infinitive Mood makes no assertion, but merely names the action: as, They were forced *to retire*.

Obs. 1.—In O.E. the infinitive was partially inflected. The nominative and accusative ended in *-an*: as, *writan*, to write; *etan*, to eat. The dative ended in *-anne* or *-enne*, and had *to* before it: as, *to writanne*, or *to writenne*; *to etanne*, or *to etenne*. It was used to express purpose, and is called the gerundial infinitive, both to distinguish it from the simple infinitive, and to show its similarity of function to the Latin gerund. About the twelfth century *-en* or *-e* began to be substituted for the *-an* of the simple infinitive, and the *-anne* or *-enne* of the dative became *-ene*, *-en* or *-e*. Later the terminational *-e* of the infinitive became silent or was dropped, and the *to* of the dative or gerundial infinitive was applied also to the simple infinitive.

Obs. 2.—The infinitive mood is really a verbal noun, and may be the subject or object of a verb: as, *To err* is human; The scholar loves *to learn*.

Obs. 3.—The forms in *-ing*, as in "*Seeing is believing*," "*Tilling the ground* was his employment," "He loves *rowing*," generally called gerunds or verbal nouns, are by many considered to be infinitives of the verb, and to have originated from the old infinitive ending *-an* being changed, first to *en* or *in*, and afterwards to *-ing*. These forms in *-ing* do the work of nouns in exactly the same manner as infinitives: thus, *Seeing is believing* = *to see is to believe*; *Tilling the ground* = *to till the ground*; He loves *rowing* = he loves *to row*. The *-ing* in the above forms is, however, most probably from the O.E. *-ung*, which later became *ing*. This was the ending of verbal nouns.

Obs. 4.—The infinitive, though really a noun, may as a verb be modified by adverbs: as, He learned to speak *fluently*; and, if transitive, it may have an object after it: as, He learned to speak *German*.

Obs. 5.—The particle *to* which usually precedes the infinitive is no part of the mood itself, and is omitted after certain verbs. (See § 360.) Infinitives used without the particle *to* are sometimes called **Pure Infinitives**: as, I saw him *bat* the surgeon.

[121. The Potential Mood expresses possibility, liberty, power, will, obligation, or necessity: as, The bank *may fail*; He *may depart*; A prince *can make* a belted knight; You *would not obey* your king; They *should keep* the truce; I *must leave* thee.]

Obs. 1.—The potential mood is used in asking questions: as, *Canst* thou not minister to a mind diseased?

[Obs. 2.—The potential mood is formed by aid of the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, *must*, *would*, and *should*.]

[Obs. 3.—In such cases as “If he *should* come, I shall see him,” the verb *should* come is parsed as potential mood conditional form, since it combines the functions of both subjunctive and potential mood.]

122. Besides the moods, verbs have certain forms called *Participles*.

A **Participle** is a verbal adjective. There are two participles properly so called, the *Present, Incomplete, or Imperfect*, and the *Past, Complete, or Perfect*.

i. The **Present, Incomplete, or Imperfect Participle** ends in *ing*, and expresses an incomplete action or state : as, *singing, writing, loving*.

ii. The **Past, Complete, or Perfect Participle** has various endings, and expresses a completed action or state : as, *sung, written, loved*.

Obs. 1.—The word *participle* is from Latin *pars*, “a part,” and *capere*, “to take.” Participles are so called because they participate in the nature both of the verb and the adjective. The incomplete participle of a transitive verb may take an object after it : as, The watchman, rousing the *sleepers*, asked his name.

Obs. 2.—Strictly speaking, participles have no reference to time : *incomplete* and *complete* are, therefore, more accurate terms than *present* and *past*, but the latter are more generally used.

Obs. 3.—The complete participle of transitive verbs is always passive.

Obs. 4.—The most common endings of the complete participle are *d, ed, n, en*, and *t* : as, *heard, asked, sown, spoken, taught*.

Obs. 5.—Participles sometimes become simple adjectives : as, A *winning* smile ; a *broken* glass. They then precede the noun, and may be compared. When used as participles, they usually follow the noun to which they refer : as, The soldiers, *marching* steadily, soon reached their destination ; The son, *struck* with the resemblance, questioned the stranger.

Obs. 6.—The participle may be modified by an adverb : as, The fire, *blazing* *cheerfully*, diffused a grateful warmth.

123. There are four **Compound Participles** :—

1. **Perfect Participle Active**, compounded of the word *having* and the complete participle : as, *having struck*.

2. **Perfect Participle Active Progressive**, compounded of the words *having been* and the incomplete participle : as, *having been striking*.

3. **Present or Incomplete Participle Passive**, compounded of the word *being* and the complete participle : as, *being struck*.

4. **Perfect Participle Passive**, compounded of the words *having been* and the complete participle : as, *having been struck*.

Obs.—The phrases *about to* and *going to* are used to form certain compounds conveying a future sense : as, *going to strike, about to strike*. Such compounds are, by some, called *future participles*. [But see *Parsing*, pp. 58, 59.]

124. The verbal form in *ing* is often used as a noun : as, He is fond of *learning* his lesson. When so used it is called a **Gerund**.

Obs. 1.—The termination *ing* in modern English represents four different terminations in the earlier forms of the language:—

- (1) *an*, the ending of the indefinite infinitive: as, *writan*, to write.
- (2) *enne* or *anne*, the ending of the gerundial infinitive: as, *to writenne*. This is used to denote purpose or fitness.
- (3) *ende* or *ande*, the ending of the incomplete participle: as, *writende*.
- (4) *ung*, the ending of a verbal noun, formed from many verbs.

It is often difficult to say which of these the ending *ing* represents.

Obs. 2.—Of the forms in *ing* used as nouns, it may be observed:—

- (a) When the form in *ing* is preceded by an adjective (especially if also followed by the preposition *of*), or has the plural form, it is a verbal or abstract noun: as, *A turning of keys* was heard; *blessings* follow the good.
- (b) When the form in *ing* is not qualified by an adjective, has the singular form, and is the subject or object of a verb, it is either a verbal noun or an infinitive; but many call it a gerund.
- (c) When the form in *ing* is not qualified by an adjective, has the singular form, and is governed by a preposition, it corresponds to the Latin gerund: as, *born for acting*; *tired of gathering* apples.

Obs. 3.—The gerund may govern an objective case. It would be better to call the gerunds verbal nouns.

Obs. 4.—In the sentence “He was accused of *stealing* a knife,” the word *stealing* is usually parsed thus:—A gerund from the transitive verb *to steal*, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition *of*. Or thus:—A verbal or abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition *of*. *Knife* is objective case, governed by *stealing*, but some would understand *of* after *stealing*. *Stealing* is sometimes also parsed thus:—A present participle from the transitive verb *to steal*, referring to *he*; used as a verbal or abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition *of*.

EXERCISE 51.

Tell the mood of each verb:—

1. Fly then, false shadows of Hope. 2. Can I choose my own king?
3. We watch for the light of the morn to break. 4. No human care could avail.
5. The officer could not leave the deck. 6. Come nearer to me.
7. We entered into a debate upon the merits of our young landlord. 8. The Scots marched along the mountain-side.
9. He was afraid to drink too much. 10. May I beg leave to ask your name?
11. “Renounce the world!” the preacher cries. 12. Toll for the brave!
13. Fly, ere evil intercept thy flight. 14. My hopes no more must change their name.
15. Britannia needs no bulwarks. 16. These raging fires will slacken, if his breath stir not their flames.
17. If thou consider rightly of the matter, Caesar had great wrong. 18. The boatman may repose upon his oars.
19. What though the field be lost!
20. Either to disenthroned the king of heaven
We war, if war be best, or to regain
Our own right lost.

EXERCISE 52.

Mention the participles, and say to what noun each refers:—

1. I heard the skylark in the bright cloud singing. 2. I came away in despair, crying and roaring like a little boy that had been whipped.
3. A certain Spaniard, being injured by another inhabitant of the same town, resolved to destroy him. 4. A stone, impelled by the power of the arm, will produce a greater effect than the arm itself.
5. He saw at Lyons a saw-mill driven with an upright wheel. 6. We feel regret mingled with admiration.
7. Unsheathing his broad-sword, he advanced on me. 8.

The landlady presently appeared, with a lighted piece of split fir blazing in her hand.

9. All alone, by the side of the pool,
A tall man sate on a three-legged stool,
Kicking his heels on the dewy sod,
And putting in order his reel and rod.

EXERCISE 53.

Tell when the verbal forms in *ing* are participles and when they are verbal nouns* :—

1. On entering the house, we discovered the family, eleven in number, at dinner. 2. The Phoenix soars aloft, hovers with outstretched wings, filling earth with her music. 3. Captain Hardy congratulated him on having gained a complete victory. 4. The moment of finishing his plans in deliberation, and commencing them in action, was the same. 5. I returned with a sad heart to my house, blessing and adoring the mercy of God to me and mine. 6. I heard one of the country fellows muttering to his companion. 7. I did not choose to shrink back after having declared my resolution. 8. After narrowly escaping breaking my shins, I found a crazy half-decayed door, constructed of wicker. 9. He rushed into the field and, foremost fighting, fell. 10. Advancing three steps before his family, he reclaimed his sword. 11. The coachman begged pardon for setting me right. 12. The poor chevalier won my pity, and he finished the scene with winning my esteem too.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 115—124.

1. What is mood? 2. How many moods are there? 3. What is the indicative mood? 4. What is the subjunctive mood? 5. Mention words which precede the subjunctive mood. 6. How do you ascertain whether a verb is indicative or subjunctive? [7. What is the potential mood?] 8. Which moods are used in asking questions? [9. By what auxiliaries is the potential mood formed?] 10. What is the imperative mood? 11. What is the infinitive mood? 12. How is the infinitive like a noun? 13. How is the infinitive different from a mere noun? 14. What is the usual sign of the infinitive? 15. What is the infinitive of purpose sometimes called? 16. What is a participle? 17. What is the present participle? 18. What is the past participle? 19. What is the word *participle* derived from? 20. How does the complete participle usually end? 21. Give instances of participles used as simple adjectives. 22. Name the four compound participles. 23. What is the gerund? 24. What terminations are now represented by *ing*? 25. When does the form in *ing* correspond to the Latin gerund?

3. Tense.

125. Tense is a change in the form of a verb to express time (Latin, *tempus*).

126. There are three principal tenses, *Present*, *Past*, and *Future*; and three secondary tenses, *Perfect* (or *Present Perfect*), *Pluperfect* (or *Past Perfect*), and *Future Perfect*.

Obs.—Only two tenses (the present and the past) are formed by inflexion; all the others are formed by the aid of auxiliary verbs. The tenses formed by inflexion are called *Simple Tenses*; the others are called *Compound Tenses*.

127. The Present Tense shows that an action is going on at the present time: as, John *writes*.

* Or gerunds

Obs. 1.—The present tense has three forms, (a) Indefinite : as, *John writes* ; (b) Progressive : as, *John is writing* ; (c) Emphatic : as, *John does write*. To these may be added the Complete form, *John has written*, which is called the Perfect (or Present Perfect) Tense.

Obs. 2.—The present tense has many uses :—

- (1) It denotes what is actually taking place : as, *The finches carol* ; *Now I steal along a woody lane*.
- (2) It expresses a repeated act : as, *In this state she gallops night by night*.
- (3) It expresses habit : as, *He writes a good hand* ; *Birds sing*.
- (4) It expresses general truths : as, *Age is full of care* ; *Men's evil manners live in brass*.
- (5) It expresses a permanent condition : as, *The castle looks over the downs*.
- (6) It expresses the possession of some faculty : as, *My wife sings, plays, and dances well*.
- (7) It describes past acts as present : as, *The Russian line brings forward each wing as our cavalry advance*. This occurs in poetic descriptions, and in animated narrative generally, and is called the *Historic Present*.
- (8) It is used for a future : as, *Duncan comes here to-night*.
- (9) It is used as a future perfect : as, *Till thou speak, thou shalt not pass from hence = till thou shalt have spoken, etc.* ; *I cannot decide till the steamer arrives (= shall have arrived)*.
- (10) It is used of a writer saying anything in his works (if the works be extant) : as, *Shakespeare says, "All the world's a stage."*

128. The Past Tense shows that an action is past : as, *He heard it, but he heeded not*.

Obs. 1.—The past tense has three forms, (a) Indefinite : as, *He heard it* ; (b) Progressive : as, *He was hearing it* ; (c) Emphatic : as, *He did hear it*. To these may be added the Complete form, *He had heard it*, which is called the Pluperfect (or Past Perfect) Tense.

Obs. 2.—The past tense has many uses :—

- (1) It expresses generally that something took place in past time : as, *Then rose from sea to sky the wild farewell*.
- (2) It expresses repeated acts in past time : as,
The albatross did follow ;
And every day for food or play
Came to the mariners' hallo.
- (3) It expresses habit in past time : as, *He delivered himself so entirely to study, that he was seldom seen by his neighbours*.
- (4) It expresses a permanent condition in past time : as, *A silver stream glided by the hermitage*.
- (5) It expresses the possession of some faculty in past time : as, *He had great conversational powers*.
- (6) It is used for the past progressive : as, *While he raved, his enemies acted = while he was raving, his enemies were acting*.

129. The Future Tense shows that an action is to take place at some future time : as, *I shall write*.

Obs. 1.—The future tense has three forms, (a) Indefinite : as, *I shall write* ; (b) Progressive : as, *I shall be writing* ; (c) Emphatic : as, *I will write*. To these may be added the Complete form, *I shall have written*, which is called the Future Perfect Tense.

Obs. 2.—The future tense is formed by aid of the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*.

130. The Perfect Tense shows that an action has been completed in time still present : as, *John has written*.

Obs. 1.—The perfect tense has two forms, (a) Ordinary : as, *I have written* ; (b) Progressive : as, *I have been writing*.

Obs. 2.—The perfect tense is sometimes used for a future : as, *When I have finished the work, I will bring it to you = when I shall have finished, etc.*

Obs. 3.—The perfect tense is formed by aid of the auxiliary verb *have*.

131. The Pluperfect Tense shows that an action was completed before another action took place : as, *He had heard the news before you came*.

Obs. 1.—The pluperfect tense has two forms, (a) Ordinary : as, He *had heard* the news ; (b) Progressive : as, He *had been hearing* the news.

Obs. 2.—The pluperfect tense is formed by the aid of *had*, the past tense of the auxiliary verb *have*.

132. The Future Perfect Tense shows that an action will be completed at a certain future time : as, I *shall have written* the letter before the mail closes.

Obs. 1.—The future perfect tense has two forms, (a) Ordinary : as, I *shall have written* the letter ; (b) Progressive : as, I *shall have been writing* the letter.

Obs. 2.—The future perfect tense is formed by aid of the words *shall have, will have*.

EXERCISE 54.

Give the tense of each verb :—

1. England has had many heroes. 2. I will carry this token of your prowess with me to Scotland. 3. He shut the ponderous tome. 4. The honeysuckle round the porch has wov'n its wavy bowers. 5. Earthward he boweth the heavy stalks of the mouldering flowers. 6. But lo ! the ruthless storm its force hath spent. 7. A heavier gloom pervades the chilly air. 8. The flowers will have faded ere you come. 9. Thou shalt seek the beach of sand. 10. Rushes shall be strewed on the stair. 11. An armed knight stood by the lonely flame. 12. I had not opened my eyes. 13. His letters are lost, but hers have been preserved.

14. Hark ! he has passed the gloomy wood ;
He crosses now the ice-bound flood.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 125—132.

1. What is tense ? 2. Name the tenses. 3. Which tenses are formed by inflexion ? 4. How are the rest formed ? 5. What is the present tense ? 6. Name the three forms of the present. 7. What are the uses of the present tense ? 8. What is the past tense ? 9. Name the three forms of the past tense. 10. What are the uses of the past tense ? 11. What is the future tense ? 12. Name the three forms of the future tense. 13. How is the future tense formed ? 14. What is the perfect tense ? 15. Name the two forms of the perfect. 16. For what is the perfect sometimes used ? 17. How is the perfect tense formed ? 18. What is the pluperfect tense ? 19. Name the two forms of the pluperfect. 20. What is the future perfect tense ? 21. How is the future perfect tense formed ?

4. Number.

133. Number as applied to verbs is a change in the form of the verb to show whether the assertion is made about one or about more than one.

134. Verbs have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

Obs. 1.—The verb is of the same number as the subject or nominative.

Obs. 2.—The verb *to be* is the only verb in which inflexions for number remain.

EXERCISE 55.

Tell the number of each verb :—

1. They were disappointed. 2. The trumpet sounded. 3. Come thou hither, my little footpage. 4. His helmet was laced. 5. They are exceedingly poor. 6. Adam gratefully replied. 7. The hungry sheep look up, and are not fed. 8. Tower'd cities please us then. 9. Her face was veiled. 10. In the ground the bended twigs take root. 11. The cataracts blow their trumpets from the steep. 12. My heart is at your festival.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 133, 134.

1. What is meant by number as applied to verbs? 2. How many numbers have verbs? 3. Which word has the same number as the verb? 4. Which verb has distinct plural inflexions?

5. Person.

135. Person as applied to verbs is a change in the form of the verb to show whether the speaker speaks of himself, of the person addressed, or of some other person or thing.

136. Verbs have three persons, *First*, *Second*, and *Third*: as, I *love*; thou *lovest*; he *loves*.

Obs. 1.—The verb is of the same person as the subject or nominative..

Obs. 2.—Person-inflexions are now only found in the singular. The personal suffixes were originally pronominal elements joined to the verbal root. The suffix of the first person singular *-m*, which remains in the word *a-m*, was previously *-mi*, a weakened form of *-ma* (=I). The suffix of the second person singular *-st* was originally *-t*. This *-t* is from *-ti*, which has the same origin as the root of "thou," *twa*, *tva*, *ta*. The suffix of the third person singular *-th* is the root of *thv*, *tha-t* (=he that), and is derived from the demonstrative root *ta* (=he). *S* is a softened form of *-th*, and occurs as early as the tenth century.

EXERCISE 56.

Tell the person of each verb:—

1. I waked; she fled; and day brought back my night. 2. What supports me, dost thou ask? 3. In such spots insects most abound. 4. To the ocean now I fly. 5. Comfort thyself. 6. She can teach thee. 7. We shall catch them. 8. Shall I go on? Or have I said enough? 9. We lost her as we came. 10. The tops of the hills appear.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 135, 136.

1. What is meant by person as applied to verbs? 2. How many persons have verbs? 3. Which word is of the same person as the verb? 4. In what number only are person-inflexions found? 5. Name the person-endings. 6. Which verb has a person-ending for the first person? 7. What were the person-endings originally?

6. Conjugation.

137. Conjugation of a verb is its proper arrangement in all its voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

138. To conjugate a verb fully, *Auxiliaries* must be employed.

139. An Auxiliary Verb is one which assists other verbs in forming their voice, mood, or tense. The auxiliary verbs are *be*, *may*, *can*, *must*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, and *do*.

Obs.—Auxiliary verbs are always placed before an infinitive or a participle.

140. The Auxiliary of Voice is *be*.

1. When the verb *to be* is united to the complete participle of any transitive verb, it forms the passive voice: as, I *love*, Active voice; I *am loved*, Passive voice

2. When the verb *to be* is united to the incomplete participle, it forms the progressive form : as, *I am loving*.

141. The auxiliary verb *be* is thus conjugated :—

Be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I am.
2. Thou art.
3. He is.

Plural.

1. We are.
2. You are.
3. They are.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I was.
2. Thou wast.
3. He was.

Plural.

1. We were.
2. You were.
3. They were.

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. I shall be.
2. Thou wilt be.
3. He will be.

Plural.

1. We shall be.
2. You will be.
3. They will be.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I have been.
2. Thou hast been.
3. He has been.

Plural.

1. We have been.
2. You have been.
3. They have been.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I had been.
2. Thou hadst been.
3. He had been.

Plural.

1. We had been.
2. You had been.
3. They had been.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I shall have been.
2. Thou wilt have been.
3. He will have been.

Plural.

1. We shall have been.
2. You will have been.
3. They will have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. If I be.
2. If thou be.
3. If he be.

Plural.

1. If we be.
2. If you be.
3. If they be.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I were.
2. If thou wert.
3. If he were.

Plural.

1. If we were.
2. If you were.
3. If they were.

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I shall or will be.
2. If thou shalt or wilt be.
3. If he shall or will be.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will be.
2. If you shall or will be.
3. If they shall or will be.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I have been.
2. If thou have been.
3. If he have been.

Plural.

1. If we have been.
2. If you have been.
3. If they have been.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I had been.
2. If thou hadst been.
3. If he had been.

Plural.

1. If we had been.
2. If you had been.
3. If they had been.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I shall or will have been.
2. If thou shalt or wilt have been.
3. If he shall or will have been.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will have been.
2. If you shall or will have been.
3. If they shall or will have been.

Obs. 1.—The person-endings are sometimes omitted in the Subjunctive Mood.

Obs. 2.—The future and future perfect subjunctive may also have the following forms :—

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I should be.
2. If thou shouldst be.
3. If he should be.

Plural.

1. If we should be.
2. If you should be.
3. If they should be.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I should have been.
2. If thou shouldst have been.
3. If he should have been.

Plural.

1. If we should have been.
2. If you should have been.
3. If they should have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

2. Be, or be thou.

Plural.

2. Be, or be you.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

To be.

Perfect.

To have been.

PARTICIPLES.

Present or Incomplete.

Being.

Past or Complete.

Been.

Perfect.

Having been.

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I may, can, or must be. | 1. We may, can, or must be. |
| 2. Thou mayst, canst, or must be. | 2. You may, can, or must be. |
| 3. He may, can, or must be. | 3. They may, can, or must be. |

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should be. | 1. We might, could, would, or should be. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be. | 2. You might, could, would, or should be. |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should be. | 3. They might, could, would, or should be. |

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I may, can, or must have been. | 1. We may, can, or must have been. |
| 2. Thou mayst, canst, or must have been. | 2. You may, can, or must have been. |
| 3. He may, can, or must have been. | 3. They may, can, or must have been. |

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have been. | 1. We might, could, would, or should have been. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been. | 2. You might, could, would, or should have been. |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should have been. | 3. They might, could, would, or should have been. |

PROGRESSIVE FORM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I am being. | 1. We are being. |
| 2. Thou art being. | 2. You are being. |
| 3. He is being. | 3. They are being. |

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I was being. | 1. We were being. |
| 2. Thou wast being. | 2. You were being. |
| 3. He was being. | 3. They were being. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. If I were being. | 1. If we were being. |
| 2. If thou wert being. | 2. If you were being. |
| 3. If he were being. | 3. If they were being. |

Obs. 1.—There are eleven forms of the verb *be*. These forms are derived from the three distinct roots, *as*, *was*, and *be*. They may be thus arranged :—

- i. Am, art, is, are.
- ii. Was, wast, were, wert.
- iii. Be, being, been.

Obs. 2.—*Am*=*as-m*, *as* being the root, and *m* the first personal pronoun ; *ar-t*=*as-t*, *t* being the second personal pronoun ; *is* is a weakened form of *as* ; *are*=*as-e*.

Obs. 3.—The forms *wast* and *wert* are late forms. The second person singular used to be *were*=*wese*. *Was* is from Old English *wesan*, to be.

Obs. 4.—*Be* was formerly conjugated in the present tense, singular and plural, indicative : as, If thou *best* Stephano, touch me ; We *be* twelve brethren.

[142. The **Auxiliaries of Mood** are *may*, *can*, and *must* ; also *should* and *would*.]

143. *May* is used to express (1) permission or liberty : as, I *may* walk ; (2) possibility or concession : as, It *may* be true, but I have very grave doubts ; (3) wish or desire : as, *May* he be happy !

May.

Present Tense.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. I may. | 1. We may. |
| 2. Thou mayst. | 2. You may. |
| 3. He may. | 3. They may. |

Past Tense.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. I might. | 1. We might. |
| 2. Thou mightst. | 2. You might. |
| 3. He might. | 3. They might. |

144. *Can* is used to express power : as, I *can* swim.

Can.

Present Tense.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. I can. | 1. We can. |
| 2. Thou canst. | 2. You can. |
| 3. He can. | 3. They can. |

Past Tense.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. I could. | 1. We could. |
| 2. Thou couldst. | 2. You could. |
| 3. He could. | 3. They could. |

Obs.—The *l* in *could* is redundant, and does not occur in the early forms of the language. It was probably inserted to make the past tense resemble *should* and *would*.

145. *Must* denotes necessity : as, I *must* wait. It has no inflexions, and is only used in the present tense.

Must.

Singular.

1. I must.
2. Thou must.
3. He must.

Plural.

1. We must.
2. You must.
3. They must.

N.B.—For conjugation of *should* and *would* see § 148.

146. The **Auxiliaries of Tense** are *have*, *shall*, and *will*.

147. *Have* as an auxiliary is used to make the perfect and pluperfect tenses, and (with *shall* or *will*) the future perfect tense. As an auxiliary it is thus conjugated:—

Have.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I have.
2. Thou hast.
3. He has.

Plural.

1. We have.
2. You have.
3. They have.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I had.
2. Thou hadst.
3. He had.

Plural.

1. We had.
2. You had.
3. They had.

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. I shall have.
2. Thou wilt have.
3. He will have.

Plural.

1. We shall have.
2. You will have.
3. They will have.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. If I have.
2. If thou have.
3. If he have.

Plural.

1. If we have.
2. If you have.
3. If they have.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. If I had.
2. If thou hadst.
3. If he had.

Plural.

1. If we had.
2. If you had.
3. If they had.

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. If I shall have.
2. If thou shalt or wilt have.
3. If he shall or will have.

Plural.

1. If we shall have.
2. If you shall or will have.
3. If they shall or will have.

Obs.—The future subjunctive may also have the following form :—

Singular.

1. If I should have.
2. If thou shouldst have.
3. If he should have.

Plural.

1. If we should have.
2. If you should have.
3. If they should have.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

To have.

PARTICIPLE.

Present or Incomplete.

Having.

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I may, can, or must have.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must have.
3. He may, can, or must have.

Plural.

1. We may, can, or must have.
2. You may, can, or must have.
3. They may, can, or must have.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I might, could, would, or should have.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have.
3. He might, could, would, or should have.

Plural.

1. We might, could, would, or should have.
2. You might, could, would, or should have.
3. They might, could, would, or should have.

Obs.—When the verb *have* is not an auxiliary, but has the sense of *to keep* or *to hold*, it has the full conjugation of a transitive verb.

148. *Shall* and *Will* denote future time : as, I *shall* go ; He *will* go.

Shall.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I shall.
2. Thou shalt.
3. He shall.

Plural.

1. We shall.
2. You shall.
3. They shall.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I should.
2. Thou shouldst.
3. He should.

Plural.

1. We should.
2. You should.
3. They should.

Will.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I will.
2. Thou wilt.
3. He will.

Plural.

1. We will.
2. You will.
3. They will.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I would.
2. Thou wouldst.
3. He would.

Plural.

1. We would.
2. You would.
3. They would.

[Obs. 1.—The past tenses *should* and *would* are used as auxiliaries of mood.]

Obs. 2.—(a) To denote simple futurity, *shall* is used in the first person and *will* in the second and third : as, I *shall* read, thou *wilt* read, he *will* read. (b) When *will* is used in the first person and *shall* in the second and third, something else besides futurity is denoted, viz.,

- (1) Determination, or Emphatic Form : as, I *will* not go.
- (2) Promise : as, I *will* assist you.
- (3) Certainty : as, Rome *shall* perish ; The sides *shall* be equal ; Yet forty days and Nineveh *shall* be overthrown.
- (4) Command : as, Thou *shalt* not kill ; Thou *shalt* love the Lord thy God.
- (5) Authority : as, He *shall* see you to-day.

Obs. 3.—*Will* is a principal verb when it means “to be willing,” or “to exercise the will” : as, “He can walk if he *wills* it.”

149. The Auxiliaries of Form are *Be* and *Do*. The auxiliary verb *be* is used to make the progressive form (§ 140). It has been conjugated in § 141. The auxiliary verb *do* is used—

(1) To express the emphatic form of the verb : as, I *do* read, I *did* read.

(2) To complete the interrogative form of the verb : as, *Do* you read ? *Did* he read ?

(3) To complete the negative form of the verb : as, I *do* not read.

(4) As a mere expletive : as, Feeble expletives their aid *do* join.

Do.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I do.
2. Thou dost.
3. He does.

Plural.

1. We do.
2. You do.
3. They do.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I did.
2. Thou didst.
3. He did.

Plural.

1. We did.
2. You did.
3. They did.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. If I do.
2. If thou do.
3. If he do.

Plural.

1. If we do.
2. If you do.
3. If they do.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I did.
2. If thou didst.
3. If he did.

Plural.

1. If we did.
2. If you did.
3. If they did.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

2. Do, or do thou.

Plural.

2. Do, or do ye.

Obs. 1.—When *do* is not an auxiliary verb, it has the full conjugation of a transitive verb.

Obs. 2.—*Shall* and *will* are used as auxiliaries of form (emphatic) in the future and future perfect tenses (§ 152).

TABLE OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

| Auxiliaries of | | Parts used. | Joined to | Signifying |
|---------------------|---------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| I. VOICE. | Be. | All parts. | Complete Participle. | Being or existence. |
| II. MOOD. | May. | Present and Past. | Infinitive. | Permission or liberty. |
| | Can. | Present and Past. | Infinitive. | Possibility or concession. |
| | Must. | Present. | Infinitive. | Wish or desire. |
| | Should. | Past. | Infinitive. | Power. |
| III. TENSE. | Would. | Past. | Infinitive. | Necessity. |
| | | | | Obligation. |
| | | | | Volition. |
| i. Perfect. | Have. | Pres, Past, and Fut. | Complete Participle. | Possession. |
| ii. Future. | Shall. | Present. | Infinitive. | Futurity and Obligation. |
| | Will. | Present. | Infinitive. | Futurity and Obligation. |
| IV. FORM. | | | | |
| i. Progressive. | Be. | All parts. | Incomplete Participle. | Being or existence. |
| ii. Emphatic. | Do. | Present and Past. | Infinitive. | Action. |
| iii. Interrogative. | | | | |
| iv. Negative. | | | | |

EXERCISE 57.

Mention the auxiliary verbs, and say what each indicates:—

1. He was declared incapable of holding any office in the state.
2. You can play no part but Pyramus.
3. Fielding was robbing birds' nests.
4. The plan of the Spectator must be allowed to be both original and

eminently happy. 5. The mourner was sitting upon a stone bench at the door. 6. Do you pity him? 7. I could easily perceive that his heart burned to relieve the five starving children. 8. From cock-crow he had been travelling. 9. To him the mighty Mother did unveil her awful face. 10. Come, tell me all that thou hast seen. 11. On the eve of St. John I must wander alone. 12. A lun was carrying out the order with his usual energy. 13. You may have reason for keeping it a secret, perhaps. 14. Gifted bards have ever loved the calm and quiet shades. 15. I considered what I should do with the money. 16. After that thought I could not sleep a wink more. 17. He might have passed through this village. 18. We shall hear the truth from him. 19. It will not pass away.

20. To thine own self be true ;
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 137—149.

1. What is conjugation? 2. To conjugate a verb fully, what must be employed? 3. What is an auxiliary verb? 4. Name the auxiliary verbs. 5. What are auxiliary verbs placed before? 6. Name the auxiliary of voice. 7. When does the verb *be* indicate passive voice? 8. When does the verb *be* indicate progressive form of active voice? 9. Conjugate the verb *be*. 10. What three distinct roots are used in the conjugation of the verb *be*? 11. Name the eleven forms that occur in the conjugation. 12. Explain the formation of *am*, *art*, *is*, and *are*. 13. Explain the forms *was*, *wast*, *wert*, and *were*. 14. Give an example of the form *be* as an indicative. 15. Name the auxiliaries of mood. 16. What does *may* express? 17. Conjugate *may*. 18. What does *can* express? 19. Conjugate *can*. 20. What does *must* denote? 21. Conjugate *must*. 22. What do *should* and *would* denote? 23. Name the auxiliaries of tense. 24. Which tenses does *have* assist in forming? 25. Conjugate *have* as an auxiliary. 26. When *have* is not an auxiliary, how is it conjugated? 27. What do *shall* and *will* denote? 28. Conjugate *shall*. 29. Conjugate *will*. 30. How are the past tenses of *shall* and *will* employed? 31. When *shall* is used in the first person and *will* in the second and third, what do they imply? 32. When *will* is used in the first person, and *shall* in the second and third, what do they imply? 33. Name the auxiliaries of form. 34. What is the auxiliary of the progressive form? 35. What are the uses of the auxiliary *do*? 36. Conjugate *do* as an auxiliary. 37. When *do* is not an auxiliary, how is it conjugated?

150. Conjugation of the transitive verb *love*.

Love.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I love.
2. Thou lovest.
3. He loves.

Plural.

1. We love.
2. You love.
3. They love.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I loved.
2. Thou lovedst.
3. He loved.

Plural.

1. We loved.
2. You loved.
3. They loved.

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall love.
2. Thou wilt love.
3. He will love.

Plural.

1. We shall love.
2. You will love.
3. They will love.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I have loved.
2. Thou hast loved.
3. He has loved.

Plural.

1. We have loved.
2. You have loved.
3. They have loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I had loved.
2. Thou hadst loved.
3. He had loved.

Plural.

1. We had loved.
2. You had loved.
3. They had loved.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall have loved.
2. Thou wilt have loved.
3. He will have loved.

Plural.

1. We shall have loved.
2. You will have loved.
3. They will have loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I love.
2. If thou love.
3. If he love.

Plural.

1. If we love.
2. If you love.
3. If they love.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I loved.
2. If thou lovedst.
3. If he loved.

Plural.

1. If we loved.
2. If you loved.
3. If they loved.

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I shall or will love.
2. If thou shalt or wilt love.
3. If he shall or will love.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will love.
2. If you shall or will love.
3. If they shall or will love.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I have loved.
2. If thou have loved.
3. If he have loved.

Plural.

1. If we have loved.
2. If you have loved.
3. If they have loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I had loved.
2. If thou hadst loved.
3. If he had loved.

Plural.

1. If we had loved.
2. If you had loved.
3. If they had loved.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I shall or will have loved.
2. If thou shalt or wilt have loved.
3. If he shall or will have loved.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will have loved.
2. If you shall or will have loved.
3. If they shall or will have loved.

Obs.—The future and future perfect subjunctive may also have the following form —

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. If I should love.
2. If thou shouldst love.
3. If he should love.

Plural.

1. If we should love.
2. If you should love.
3. If they should love.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I should have loved.
2. If thou shouldst have loved.
3. If he should have loved.

Plural.

1. If we should have loved.
2. If you should have loved.
3. If they should have loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

2. Love, or love thou.

Plural.

2. Love, or love you.

Obs.—The imperative mood of the third person is usually expressed by a periphrasis : as *Let him love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, To love.

Perfect, To have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present or Incomplete.

Loving.

Perfect.

Having loved.

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I may, can, or must love.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must love.
3. He may, can, or must love.

Plural.

1. We may, can, or must love.
2. You may, can, or must love.
3. They may, can, or must love.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I might, could, would, or should love.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love.
3. He might, could, would, or should love.

Plural.

1. We might, could, would, or should love.
2. You might, could, would, or should love.
3. They might, could, would, or should love.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I may, can, or must have loved.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must have loved.
3. He may, can, or must have loved.

Plural.

1. We may, can, or must have loved.
2. You may, can, or must have loved.
3. They may, can, or must have loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have loved. 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have loved. 3. He might, could, would, or should have loved. | 1. We might, would, could or should have loved. 2. You might, could, would, or should have loved. 3. They might, could, would, or should have loved. |
|---|--|

151. The **Progressive Form** of a verb denotes the continuance of an action. It is also called the *Continuous Form*.

Love.**ACTIVE VOICE.****INDICATIVE MOOD.***Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I am loving.
2. Thou art loving.
3. He is loving.

Plural.

1. We are loving.
2. You are loving.
3. They are loving.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. I was loving.
2. Thou wast loving.
3. He was loving.

Plural.

1. We were loving.
2. You were loving.
3. They were loving.

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall be loving.
2. Thou wilt be loving.
3. He will be loving.

Plural.

1. We shall be loving.
2. You will be loving.
3. They will be loving.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I have been loving.
2. Thou hast been loving.
3. He has been loving.

Plural.

1. We have been loving.
2. You have been loving.
3. They have been loving.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I had been loving.
2. Thou hadst been loving.
3. He had been loving.

Plural.

1. We had been loving.
2. You had been loving.
3. They had been loving.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall have been loving.
2. Thou wilt have been loving.
3. He will have been loving.

Plural.

1. We shall have been loving.
2. You will have been loving.
3. They will have been loving.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I be loving.
2. If thou be loving.
3. If he be loving.

Plural.

1. If we be loving.
2. If you be loving.
3. If they be loving.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I were loving.
2. If thou wert loving.
3. If he were loving.

Plural.

1. If we were loving.
2. If you were loving.
3. If they were loving.

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. If I shall or will be loving.
2. If thou shalt or wilt be loving.
3. If he shall or will be loving.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will be loving.
2. If you shall or will be loving.
3. If they shall or will be loving.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I have been loving.
2. If thou have been loving.
3. If he have been loving.

Plural.

1. If we have been loving.
2. If you have been loving.
3. If they have been loving.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I had been loving.
2. If thou hadst been loving.
3. If he had been loving.

Plural.

1. If we had been loving.
2. If you had been loving.
3. If they had been loving.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I shall or will have been loving.
2. If thou shalt or wilt have been loving.
3. If he shall or will have been loving.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will have been loving.
2. If you shall or will have been loving.
3. If they shall or will have been loving.

Obs.—The future and future perfect subjunctive may also have the following form:—

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. If I should be loving.
2. If thou shouldst be loving.
3. If he should be loving.

Plural.

1. If we should be loving.
2. If you should be loving.
3. If they should be loving.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I should have been loving.
2. If thou shouldst have been loving.
3. If he should have been loving.

Plural.

1. If we should have been loving.
2. If you should have been loving.
3. If they should have been loving.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

2. Be loving, or be thou loving.

Plural.

2. Be loving, or be you loving.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, To be loving

Perfect, To have been loving.

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect, Having been loving.

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I may, can, or must be loving.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must be loving.
3. He may, can, or must be loving.

Plural.

1. We may, can, or must be loving.
2. You may, can, or must be loving.
3. They may, can, or must be loving.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I might, could, would, or should be loving.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be loving.
3. He might, could, would, or should be loving.

Plural.

1. We might, could, would, or should be loving.
2. You might, could, would, or should be loving.
3. They might, could, would, or should be loving.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I may, can, or must have been loving.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must have been loving.
3. He may, can, or must have been loving.

Plural.

1. We may, can, or must have been loving.
2. You may, can, or must have been loving.
3. They may, can, or must have been loving.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I might, could, would, or should have been loving.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been loving.
3. He might, could, would or should have been loving.

Plural.

1. We might, could, would, or should have been loving.
2. You might, could, would, or should have been loving.
3. They might, could, would, or should have been loving.

152. The **Emphatic Form** of a verb expresses an act or state asserted with emphasis. The emphatic form is only used in the present, past, future, and future perfect tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, and in the imperative mood.

Love.**ACTIVE VOICE.****INDICATIVE MOOD.***Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I do love.
2. Thou dost love.
3. He does love.

Plural.

1. We do love.
2. You do love.
3. They do love.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. I did love.
2. Thou didst love.
3. He did love.

Plural.

1. We did love.
2. You did love.
3. They did love.

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I will love.
2. Thou shalt love.
3. He shall love.

Plural.

1. We will love.
2. You shall love.
3. They shall love.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I will have loved.
2. Thou shalt have loved.
3. He shall have loved.

Plural.

1. We will have loved.
2. You shall have loved.
3. They shall have loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I do love.
2. If thou do love.
3. If he do love.

Plural.

1. If we do love.
2. If you do love.
3. If they do love.

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I did love.
2. If thou didst love.
3. If he did love.

Plural.

1. If we did love.
2. If you did love.
3. If they did love.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*Singular.*

2. Do love, or do thou love.

Plural.

2. Do love, or do you love.

153. Love.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I am loved.
2. Thou art loved.
3. He is loved.

Plural.

1. We are loved.
2. You are loved.
3. They are loved.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. I was loved.
2. Thou wast loved.
3. He was loved.

Plural.

1. We were loved.
2. You were loved.
3. They were loved.

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. I shall be loved.
2. Thou wilt be loved.
3. He will be loved.

Plural.

1. We shall be loved.
2. You will be loved.
3. They will be loved.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I have been loved.
2. Thou hast been loved.
3. He has been loved.

Plural.

1. We have been loved.
2. You have been loved.
3. They have been loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I had been loved.
2. Thou hadst been loved.
3. He had been loved.

Plural.

1. We had been loved.
2. You had been loved.
3. They had been loved.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I shall have been loved.
2. Thou wilt have been loved.
3. He will have been loved.

Plural.

1. We shall have been loved.
2. You will have been loved.
3. They will have been loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. If I be loved.
2. If thou be loved.
3. If he be loved.

Plural.

1. If we be loved.
2. If you be loved.
3. If they be loved.

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. If I were loved.
2. If thou wert loved.
3. If he were loved.

Plural.

1. If we were loved.
2. If you were loved.
3. If they were loved.

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I shall or will be loved.
2. If thou shalt or wilt be loved.
3. If he shall or will be loved.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will be loved.
2. If you shall or will be loved.
3. If they shall or will be loved.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I have been loved.
2. If thou have been loved.
3. If he have been loved.

Plural.

1. If we have been loved.
2. If you have been loved.
3. If they have been loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I had been loved.
2. If thou hadst been loved.
3. If he had been loved.

Plural.

1. If we had been loved.
2. If you had been loved.
3. If they have been loved.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I shall or will have been loved.
2. If thou shalt or wilt have been loved.
3. If he shall or will have been loved.

Plural.

1. If we shall or will have been loved.
2. If you shall or will have been loved.
3. If they shall or will have been loved.

Obs.—The future and future perfect subjunctive may also have the following form :—

*Future Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I should be loved.
2. If thou shouldst be loved.
3. If he should be loved.

Plural.

1. If we should be loved.
2. If you should be loved.
3. If they should be loved.

*Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I should have been loved.
2. If thou shouldst have been loved.
3. If he should have been loved.

Plural.

1. If we should have been loved.
2. If you should have been loved.
3. If they should have been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

2. Be loved, or be thou loved.

Plural.

2. Be loved, or be you loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, To be loved.

Perfect, To have been loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present or Incomplete.

Being loved.

Past or Complete.

Loved.

Perfect.

Having been loved.

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I may, can, or must be loved.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must be loved.
3. He may, can, or must be loved.

Plural.

1. We may, can, or must be loved.
2. You may, can, or must be loved.
3. They may, can, or must be loved.

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should be loved. | 1. We might, could, would, or should be loved. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be loved. | 2. You might, could, would, or should be loved. |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should be loved. | 3. They might, could, would, or should be loved. |

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I may, can, or must have been loved. | 1. We may, can, or must have been loved. |
| 2. Thou mayst, canst, or must have been loved. | 2. You may, can, or must have been loved. |
| 3. He may, can, or must have been loved. | 3. They may, can, or must have been loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have been loved. | 1. We might, could, would, or should have been loved. |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been loved. | 2. You might, could, would, or should have been loved. |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should have been loved. | 3. They might, could, would, or should have been loved. |

154. The Progressive Form of the Passive Voice is used only with the present and past tenses of the indicative and with the past tense of the subjunctive.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I am being loved. | 1. We are being loved. |
| 2. Thou art being loved. | 2. You are being loved. |
| 3. He is being loved. | 3. They are being loved. |

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I was being loved. | 1. We were being loved. |
| 2. Thou wast being loved. | 2. You were being loved. |
| 3. He was being loved. | 3. They were being loved. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. If I were being loved. | 1. If we were being loved. |
| 2. If thou wert being loved. | 2. If you were being loved. |
| 3. If he were being loved. | 3. If they were being loved. |

155. The Passive voice has no Emphatic Form.

N.B.—Intransitive verbs are conjugated like transitive verbs, active voice, but their participles are Present or Incomplete, Past or Complete, and Perfect: as, *Present or Incomplete*, Smiling; *Past or Complete*, Smiled; *Perfect*, Having smiled.

EXERCISE 58.

Conjugate (as in §§ 150, 153) the active and passive voice of :—
Save, praise, receive, desire, conquer, defend.

EXERCISE 59.

Conjugate (as in §§ 151, 154) the progressive form of :—
Frighten, want, release, turn, carry, persuade.

EXERCISE 60.

Conjugate (as in § 152) the emphatic form of :—
Puzzle, search, finish, consider, fear, reward.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 150—155.

1. Conjugate *love* in the active voice. 2. How is the imperative mood of the third person usually expressed? 3. What is the progressive form? 4. Conjugate the progressive form of *love* in the active voice. 5. What is the emphatic form? 6. In what moods is it used? 7. Conjugate the emphatic form of *love*. 8. Conjugate *love* in the passive voice. 9. In which moods and tenses is the progressive form of the passive voice used? 10. Conjugate *love* in the progressive form, passive voice. 11. Which form is wanting in the passive voice?

156. The Interrogative Form of a verb is that which is used in asking questions.

(1) If there be no auxiliary, the interrogative form is made :—

(a) By simply putting the verb before its nominative :
as, Lovest thou ?

(b) By putting the present or past tense of the auxiliary
do before the nominative : as, *Dost* thou love ?

(2) If there be one or more auxiliaries, the interrogative form is made by putting the nominative immediately after the first auxiliary : as, Hast thou loved ? Wilt thou love ? Canst thou love ? Hast thou been loved ?

157. The Negative Form of a verb is that which is used in denying.

(1) If there be no auxiliary, the negative form is made :—

(a) By putting *not* after the verb : as, I heard *not* ; He listened *not*.

(b) By putting the present or past tense of the auxiliary
do with *not* after it, between the nominative and the verb :
as, I *do not* hear ; I *did not* hear.

(2) If there be one or more auxiliaries, the negative form is made by putting *not* after the first auxiliary : as, I shall *not* hear ; I may *not* have heard.

158. The Interrogative and Negative Forms are combined by putting *not* immediately after the nominative in the interrogative form : as, Lovest thou *not* ? Dost thou *not* love ? Hast thou *not* loved ? Wilt thou *not* love ? Canst thou *not* love ? Hast thou *not* been loved ?

159. The verb *love* is thus conjugated (1) interrogatively, (2) negatively, (3) interrogatively and negatively.

ACTIVE VOICE. INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Tense.</i> | <i>Interrogative Form.</i> | <i>Negative Form.</i> | <i>Interrogative and Negative Forms combined.</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Do I love? | I do not love. | Do I not love? |
| <i>Past</i> | Did I love? | I did not love. | Did I not love? |
| <i>Fut.</i> | Shall I love? | I shall not love. | Shall I not love? |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Have I loved? | I have not loved. | Have I not loved? |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Had I loved? | I had not loved. | Had I not loved? |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | Shall I have loved? | I shall not have loved. | Shall I not have loved? |
| <i>Progressive Form.</i> | | | |
| <i>Pres.</i> | Am I loving? | I am not loving. | Am I not loving? |
| <i>Past</i> | Was I loving? | I was not loving. | Was I not loving? |
| <i>Fut.</i> | Shall I be loving? | I shall not be loving. | Shall I not be loving? |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Have I been loving? | I have not been loving. | Have I not been loving? |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Had I been loving? | I had not been loving. | Had I not been loving? |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | Shall I have been loving? | I shall not have been loving. | Shall I not have been loving? |

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

| | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | May I love? | I may not love. | May I not love? |
| <i>Past</i> | Might I love? | I might not love. | Might I not love? |
| <i>Perf.</i> | May I have loved? | I may not have loved. | May I not have loved? |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Might I have loved? | I might not have loved. | Might I not have loved? |
| <i>Progressive Form.</i> | | | |
| <i>Pres.</i> | May I be loving? | I may not be loving. | May I not be loving? |
| <i>Past</i> | Might I be loving? | I might not be loving. | Might I not be loving? |
| <i>Perf.</i> | May I have been loving? | I may not have been loving. | May I not have been loving? |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Might I have been loving? | I might not have been loving. | Might I not have been loving? |

PASSIVE VOICE. INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Tense.</i> | <i>Interrogative Form.</i> | <i>Negative Form.</i> | <i>Interrogative and Negative Forms combined.</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Am I loved? | I am not loved. | Am I not loved? |
| <i>Past</i> | Was I loved? | I was not loved. | Was I not loved? |
| <i>Fut.</i> | Shall I be loved? | I shall not be loved. | Shall I not be loved? |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Have I been loved? | I have not been loved. | Have I not been loved? |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Had I been loved? | I had not been loved. | Had I not been loved? |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | Shall I have been loved? | I shall not have been loved. | Shall I not have been loved? |
| <i>Progressive Form.</i> | | | |
| <i>Pres.</i> | Am I being loved? | I am not being loved. | Am I not being loved? |
| <i>Past</i> | Was I being loved? | I was not being loved. | Was I not being loved? |

[POTENTIAL MOOD.]

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | May I be loved? | I may not be loved. | May I not be loved? |
| <i>Past</i> | Might I be loved? | I might not be loved. | Might I not be loved? |
| <i>Perf.</i> | May I have been loved? | I may not have been loved. | May I not have been loved? |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> | Might I have been loved? | I might not have been loved. | Might I not have been loved? |

[Obs. 1.—In the above conjugation, each auxiliary of mood is used in the same way as *may*.]

Obs. 2.—In interrogative and negative sentences the auxiliary *do* does not necessarily make the verb emphatic, but is used to complete the interrogative and negative forms of the verb.

N.B.—It will be a useful exercise for the student to write out the full conjugation of the verb *love*, (1) interrogatively, (2) negatively, (3) interrogatively and negatively.

EXERCISE 61.

Conjugate interrogatively :—

Ask, pray, support, demand, mention, try.

EXERCISE 62.

Conjugate negatively :—

Disturb, save, chase, betray, turn, regard.

EXERCISE 63.

Conjugate interrogatively and negatively :—

Convince, call, visit, raise, pity, frighten.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 156—159.

1. What is the interrogative form of a verb? 2. How is the interrogative form made when there is no auxiliary? 3. How is the interrogative form made when there are auxiliaries? 4. What is the negative form of a verb? 5. How is the negative form made when there is no auxiliary? 6. How is the negative form made when there are auxiliaries? 7. How are the interrogative and negative forms combined? 8. Conjugate *love* interrogatively. 9. Conjugate *love* negatively. 10. Conjugate *love* interrogatively and negatively. 11. What is the use of *do* in interrogative and negative sentences?

7. Irregular, Defective, and Impersonal Verbs.

160. Verbs are divided, according to their mode of inflexion, into two classes, *Regular* and *Irregular*.

I. **Regular Verbs** are those which form the past tense and past or complete participle by adding *ed* (or *d* only, when the verb ends in *e*): as, *jump, jumped, jumped*; *love, loved, loved*.

II. **Irregular Verbs** are those which vary from this rule in either, or in both cases: as, *steal, stole, stolen*.

NOTE.—Some grammarians divide verbs into *Strong* and *Weak*.

Strong Verbs are those which form their past tense from the present tense by a change of the radical or root vowel: as, *bind, bound*. The past or complete participle of all strong verbs once ended in *en*: in some this ending is now lost, in others it is altered into *ne*: as, *done, gone*.

The following is an alphabetical list of strong verbs :—

Abide, arise, awake, bake, bear (to carry), *bear* (to bring forth), *beat, begin, behold, bid, bind, bite, blow, break, burst, chide, choose, cleave, climb, cling, come, crow, do, draw, drink, drive, eat, fall, fight, find, fling, fly, forbear, forget, forsake, freeze, get, give, go, grave, engrave, grind, grow, hang, heave, help, hew, hold, know, lade, lie, lose, melt, mow, ride, ring, rise, rive, run, see, seethe, shake, shave, shear, shine, shoot, shrink, sing, sink, sit, slay, slide, sling, slink, smite, sow, speak, spin, spring, stand, steal, sting, stink, stride, strike, strive, swear, swell, swim, swing, take, tear, thrive, throw, tread, wake, weave, win, wind, wring, write.*

Weak Verbs are those which do not form their past tense by a change of the vowel. These for the most part add *d*, *ed*, or *t*, to the present tense in order to form the past tense and past or complete participle. The weak verbs which are *apparently strong* are: *Bend, bleed, breed, build, burn, cast, clothe, cost, cut, dwell, feed, gild, gird, have, hit, hurt, knit, lay, lead, learn, let, light, make, meet, pay, pen, put, read, rend, rid, say, send, set, shed, shred, shut, slit, speed, spell, spend, spill, spit, split, spread, stay, sweat, thrust, wet, whet.*

The following verbs that are now weak were once strong: *Ache, blind, carve, climb, clothe, crow, delve, dread, drown, fare, fill, fold, fret, fetch, know, grave, hang, heat, heave, help, heur, knit, laugh, melt, pitch, reach, seethe, sew, shape, shear, sleep, snow, starve, spend, squeeze, stretch, sweat, swell, walk, weep, yield.*

The following verbs that are now strong were once weak: *Betide, dig, hide, stick, spit, wear.*

There is also an intermediate kind of verb which, though classed among the strong verbs, partakes of the nature of the weak. The verbs of this class, called **Mixed Verbs**, are: *Bereave, beseech, bring, buy, catch, cleave, creep, deal, dream, feel, flee, hear, keep, kneel, lean, leap, leave, lose, mean, seek, sell, shoe, sleep, stand, sweep, teach, tell, think, weep, work.*

The strong verbs form also what is called the *Ancient Conjugation*; the weak verbs form what is called the *Modern Conjugation*. The latter class is the more numerous.

Verbs of primary origin are *strong*; and derived verbs, or verbs of secondary formation, are *weak*.

161. The following verbs are **Irregular**:—

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Complete Participle.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Complete Participle.</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Abide, | Abode, | Abode. | Bestride, | Bestrode, | Bestriden. |
| Am, | Was, | Been. | Bestrow, | Bestrowed, | { Bestrown, bestrowed. |
| Arise, | Arose, | Arisen. | Bet, | Betted, bet, | Betted, bet. |
| Awake, | { Awaked, awoke, } | { Awaked. | Betake, | Betook, | Betaken. |
| Bake, | Baked, | { Baked, baken. } | Bethink, | Bethought, | Bethought. |
| Bear (to carry), } | Bore, bare, | Borne. | Bid, | Bade, bid, | Bidden, bid. |
| Bear (to bring forth), } | Bore, bare, | Born. | Bind, | Bound, | Bound. |
| Beat, | Beat, | Beaten, beat. | Bite, | Bit, | Bitten, bit. |
| Become, | Became, | Become. | Bleed, | Bled, | Bled. |
| Befall, | Befell, | Befallen. | Blend, | { Blended, } { blent, } | { Blended, blent. } |
| Beget, | { Begat, begot, } | Begotten. | Bless, | { Blessed, } { blest, } | { Blessed, blest. } |
| Begin, | Began, | Begun. | Blow, | Blew, | Blown. |
| Begird, | { Begirded, } { begirt, } | { Begirded, begirt. } | Break, | Broke, | Broken. |
| Behold, | Beheld, | { Beheld, beholden. } | Breed, | Bred, | Bred. |
| Bend, | Bent, | Bent. | Bring, | Brought, | Brought. |
| Bereave, | Bereft, | Bereft. | Build, | Built, | Built. |
| Beseech, | Besought, | Besought. | Burn, | { Burned, } { burnt, } | Burnt. |
| Beset, | Beset, | Beset. | Burst, | Burst, | Burst. |
| Bespeak, | Bespoke, | Bespoken. | Buy, | Bought, | Bought. |
| Bespread, | Bespread, | Bespread. | Cast, | Cast, | Cast. |
| Bestrew, | Bestrewed, | { Bestrewn, bestrewed. } | Catch, | Caught, | Caught. |
| | | | Chide, | Chode, chid, | { Chidden, chid. } |
| | | | Choose, | Chose, | Chosen. |
| | | | Cleave (to stick), } | { Clave, cleaved, } | Cleaved. |

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Com- plete Parti- ciple.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Com- plete Parti- ciple.</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------|---|---------------------------|---------------|---|
| Cleave (to split), } | Cleft, clove, | Cleft, cloven. | Go, | Went, | Gone. |
| Climb, | { Climbed, } | Climbed. | Grave, | Graved, | { Graven, graved. |
| Cling, | Clung, | Clung. | Grind, | Ground, | Ground. |
| Clothe, | Clothed, clad, | { Clothed, clad. | Grow, | Grew, | Grown. |
| Come, | Came, | Come. | Hang† (in- trans.), } | Hung, | Hung. |
| Cost, | Cost, | Cost. | Hear, | Heard, | Heard. |
| Creep, | Crept, | Crept. | Heave, | Heaved, hove, | Heaved. |
| Crow, | Crew, crowed, | Crowed. | Help, | Helped, | { Helped, holpen. |
| Curse, | { Cursed, } | Curst. | Hew, | Hewed, | Hewn. |
| Cut, | Cut, | Cut. | Hide, | Hid, | Hidden, hid. |
| Dare* (to venture), } | Durst, | Dared. | Hit, | Hit, | Hit. |
| Deal, | Dealt, | Dealt. | Hold, | Held, | Held, holden. |
| Dig, | Dug, digged, | Dug, digged. | Hurt, | Hurt, | Hurt. |
| Do, | Did, | Done. | Inlay, | Inlaid, | Inlaid. |
| Draw, | Drew, | Drawn, | Keep, | Kept, | Kept. |
| Dream, | { Dreamed, } | { Dreamed, dreamt. | Kneel, | Knelt, | Knelt. |
| Dress, | { Dressed, } | { Dressed, drest. | Knit, | { Knitted, } | { Knitted, knit. |
| Drink, | Drank, | Drunk. | Know, | Knew, | Known. |
| Drive, | Drove, | Driven. | Lade (load), | Laded, | Laden. |
| Dwell, | Dwelt, | Dwelt. | Lay, | Laid, | Laid. |
| Eat, | Ate, | Eaten. | Lead, | Led, | Led. |
| Engrave, | Engraved, | { Engraved, engraven. | Leap, | { Leaped, } | { Leaped, leapt. |
| Fall, | Fell, | Fallen. | Learn, | { Learned, } | Learnt. |
| Feed, | Fed, | Fed. | Leave, | Left, | Left. |
| Feel, | Felt, | Felt. | Lend, | Lent, | Lent. |
| Fight, | Fought, | Fought. | Let, | Let, | Let. |
| Find, | Found, | Found. | Lie † (to rest), | Lay, | Lain. |
| Flee, | Flel, | Fled. | Lift, | Lifted, lift, | Lifted, lift. |
| Fling, | Flung, | Flung. | Light, | Lighted, lit, | Lighted, lit. |
| Fly, | Flew, | Flown. | Lose, | Lost, | Lost. |
| Forbear, | Forbore, | Forborne. | Make | Made, | Made. |
| Forbid, | Forbade, | Forbidden. | Mean | Meant, | Meant. |
| Foreknow, | Foreknew, | Foreknown. | Meet, | Met, | Met. |
| Forerun, | Foreran, | Forerun. | Melt, | Melted, | { Melted, molten |
| Foresee, | Foresaw, | Foreseen. | Mislay, | Mislaid, | Mislaid. |
| Foreshew, | Foreshewed, | { Foreshewn, foreshewed. | Mislead, | Misled, | Misled. |
| Foreshow, | Foreshowed, | { Foreshown, foreshowed. | Misspell, | Misspelt, | Misspelt. |
| Foretell, | Foretold, | Foretold. | Misspend, | Misspent, | Misspent. |
| Forget, | Forgot, | Forgotten. | Misshape, | Misshaped, | { Misshaped, misshapen |
| Forgive, | Forgave, | Forgiven. | Mistake, | Mistook, | Mistaken. |
| Forsake, | Forsook, | Forsaken. | Mow, | Mowed, | Mown. |
| Forswear, | Forswore, | Forsworn. | Outdo, | Outdid, | Outdone. |
| Freeze, | Froze, | Frozen. | Outgrow, | Outgrew, | Outgrown |
| Freight, | Freighted, | { Freighted, fraught. | Outrun, | Outran, | Outrun. |
| Gainsay, | Gainsaid, | Gainsaid. | Outshine, | Outshone, | Outshone. |
| Get, | Got, | Gotten. | Overcome, | Overcame, | Overcome. |
| Gild, | Gilded, gilt, | Gilded, gilt. | Overdo, | Overdid, | Overdone. |
| Gird, | Girded, girt, | Girded, girt. | Overgrow, | Overgrew, | Overgrown. |
| Give, | Gave, | Given. | Overhang, | Overhung, | Overhung. |
| Glide, | Glided, | { Glided, glidden. | Overhear, | Overheard, | Overheard. |
| | | | Overlade (overload), } | Overladed, | { Overladed, overladen. |
| | | | Overshoot, | Overshot, | Overshot. |
| | | | Overspread, | Overspread, | Overspread, |

* Dare, transitive, is regular.

† Hang, transitive, is regular.

‡ Lie (to utter an untruth) is regular.

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Com- plete Parti- ciple.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Com- plete Parti- ciple.</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|---------------------------|---|
| Overtake, | Overtook, | Overtaken. | Sow, | Sowed, | Sown, sowed. |
| Overthrow, | Overthrew, | Overthrown. | Speak, | Spoke, | Spoken. |
| Partake, | Partook, | Partaken. | Speed, | Sped, | Sped. |
| Pay, | Paid, | Paid. | Spell, | { Spelled, } { Spelled, | { Spelled, } |
| Pen, | Penned, Pent, | Penned, pent. | | { spelt, } { spelt, | { spelt. } |
| Prepay, | Prepaid, | Prepaid. | Spend, | Spent, | Spent. |
| Prove, | Proved, | { Proved, } { proven. | Spill, | Spilled, spilt, | Spilled, spilt. |
| Put, | Put, | Put. | Spin, | Span, | Spun. |
| Quit, | Quitted, quit, | Quitted, quit. | Spit, | Spat, | Spit. |
| Read, | Read, | Read. | Split, | Split, | Split. |
| Rebind, | Rebound. | Rebound. | Spoil, | { Spoiled, } { Spoiled, | { Spoiled, } |
| Rebuild, | Rebuilt, | Rebuilt. | | { spoilt, } { spoilt, | { spoilt. } |
| Recast, | Recast, | Recast. | Spread, | Spread, | Spread. |
| Regild, | { Regilded, } { regilt, | { Regilded, } { regilt. | Spring, | Sprang, | Sprung. |
| Rend, | Rent, | Rent. | Stand, | Stood, | Stood. |
| Repay, | Repaid, | Repaid. | Stave, | Staved, stove, | Staved. |
| Retake, | Retook, | Retaken. | Steal, | Stole, | Stolen. |
| Retread, | Retrod, | Retrodden. | Stick, | Stuck, | Stuck. |
| Rid, | Rid, | Rid. | Sting, | Stung, | Stung. |
| Ride, | Rode, | Ridden. | Stink, | Stank, | Stunk. |
| Ring, | Rang, | Rung. | Straw, | Strawed, | { Strawed, } { strawn. |
| Rise, | Rose, | Risen. | | | { strawn. } |
| Rive, | Rived. | Riven. | Strew, | Strewed, | { Strewed, } { strewn. |
| Run, | Ran, | Run. | | | { strewn. } |
| Saw, | Sawed, | Sawed, sawn. | Stride, | Strode, | Stridden. |
| Say, | Said, | Said. | Strike, | Struck, | { Struck, } { stricken. |
| See, | Saw, | Seen. | | | { stricken. } |
| Seek, | Sought, | Sought. | String, | Strung, | Strung. |
| Seethe, | Seethed, sod, | { Seethed, } { sodden. | Strive, | Strove, | Striven. |
| | | { sodden. } | Strow, | Strowed, | { Strowed, } { Strown. |
| Sell, | Sold, | Sold. | | | { Strown. } |
| Send, | Sent, | Sent. | Swear, | Swore, | Sworn. |
| Set, | Set, | Set. | | { Sweated, } { Sweated, | { Sweated, } |
| Sew, | Sewed, | { Sewed, } { sewn. | Sweat, | { sweat, } { sweat, | { sweat. } |
| Shake, | Shook, | Shaken. | Sweep, | Swept, | Swept. |
| Shape, | Shaped, | { Shaped, } { shapen. | Swell, | Swelled, | { Swelled, } { swollen. |
| | | { shapen. } | | | { swollen. } |
| Shave, | Shaved, | { Shaved, } { shaven. | Swim, | Swam, | Swum. |
| | | { shaven. } | Swing, | Swung, | Swung. |
| Shear, | Sheared, | { Shorn, } { sheared. | Take, | Took, | Taken. |
| | | { sheared. } | Teach, | Taught, | Taught. |
| Shed, | Shed, | Shed. | Tear, | Tore, | Torn. |
| Shew, | Shewed, | Shewn. | Tell, | Told, | Told. |
| Shine, | Shone, | Shone. | Think, | Thought, | Thought. |
| Shoe, | Shod, | Shod. | Thrive, | Throve, | Thriven. |
| Shoot, | Shot, | Shot. | Throw, | Threw, | Thrown. |
| Show, | Showed, | Shown. | Thrust, | Thrust, | Thrust. |
| Shred, | Shred, | Shred. | Toss, | Tossed, tost, | Tossed, tost. |
| Shrink, | Shrank, | Shrunk. | Tread, | Trod, | Trodden. |
| Shut, | Shut, | Shut. | Unbend, | Unbent, | Unbent. |
| Sing, | Sang, | Sung. | Unbind, | Unbound, | Unbound. |
| Sink, | Sank, | Sunk. | Undergo, | Underwent, | Undergone. |
| Sit, | Sat, | Sat. | Understand, | Understood, | Understood. |
| Slay, | Slew, | Slain. | Undertake, | Undertook, | Undertaken. |
| Sleep, | Slept, | Slept. | Undo, | Undid, | Undone. |
| Slide, | Slid, | Slidden, slid. | Ungird, | { Ungirded, } { Ungirded, | { Ungirded, } |
| Sling, | Slung, | Slung. | | { ungirt, } { ungirt, | { ungirt. } |
| Slink, | Slunk, | Slunk. | Unlade | { Unladed, } { Unladed, | { Unladed, } |
| Slit, | Slit, | Slit. | (unload), | { unladen, } { unladen, | { unladen. } |
| Smell, | { Smelled, } { Smelt, } | { Smelled, } { smelt. | Unsay, | Unsaid, | Unsaid. |
| Smite, | Smote, | Smitten. | Unweave, | Unwove, | Unwoven. |
| | | | Unwind, | Unwound, | Unwound. |
| | | | Uphold, | Upheld, | { Upheld, } { upholden. |
| | | | Uprise, | Uprose, | Uprisen. |

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Complete Participle.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Complete Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Upset, | Upset, | Upset. | Win, | Won, | Won. |
| Wake, | Waked, woke, | Waked. | Wind, | Wound, | Wound. |
| Wax, | Waxed, | { Waxed, waxen. | Withdraw, | Withdrew, | Withdrawn. |
| Wear, | Wore, | Worn. | Withhold, | Withheld, | Withholden. |
| Weave, | Wove, | Woven. | Withstand, | Withstood, | Withstood. |
| Wed, | { Wedded, } { wed, } | { Wedded, wed. | Work, | { Worked, wrought, } | { Worked, wrought. |
| Weep, | Wept. | Wept. | Wreathe, | Wreathed, | { Wreathed, wreathen. |
| Wend, | { Wended, } { went, } | Wended. | Wring, | Wrung, | Wrung. |
| Wet, | Wetted, wet, | Wetted, wet. | Write, | Wrote, | Written. |
| Whet, | { Whetted, } { whet, } | { Whetted, whet. | Writhe, | Writhed, | { Writhed, writhen. |

162. The **Chief Parts** of a verb are the present tense, past tense, and past or complete participle.

A **Defective Verb** is one which wants one or more of the chief parts.

163. The defective verbs are :—

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Complete Participle.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past or Complete Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| Beware. | ..... | ..... | Must. | ..... | ..... |
| Can, | Could. | ..... | Ought. | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | Dight. | ..... | Quoth. | ..... |
| Forego, | ..... | Foregone. | Shall, | Should. | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | Hight. | Will, | Would. | ..... |
| May, | Might. | ..... | Wis, wot, | Wist. | ..... |
| Melists, | Melisted. | ..... | Worth. | ..... | ..... |
| Meseems, | Meseemed. | ..... | ..... | ..... | Yclept. |
| Methinks, | Methought. | ..... |  |  |  |

Obs. 1.—**Am**, **be**, and **was** are, strictly, three defective verbs, though usually classed among irregular verbs. **Go** is defective, its past tense *went* being supplied from another verb (*wend*): its own past tense *gode* (= *gode* = *go-ed*) is obsolete. **Do**, in the phrase “This will *do*” (=this will answer the purpose), is a defective verb, being different from the verb *do* (=to act). It is, in Old English, *dugan*.

Obs. 2.—**Beware** is only used in the imperative and infinitive.

Obs. 3.—**Couth**, the obsolete past or complete participle of *can*, occurs in the word *uncouth*, and the present or incomplete participle of *can* has become the adjective *cunning*.

Obs. 4.—**Dight** = decked, adorned, Old English *dihthan*.

Obs. 5.—**Hight** = called, Old English *hatan*.

Obs. 6.—**Melists**, **meseems**, and **methinks** are impersonal verbs (§ 164).

Obs. 7.—**Ought** is, properly, the past tense of *owe*, but it is now used as a present.

Obs. 8.—**Quoth** is only used in the past tense, and always precedes its nominative. It is from Old English *cwethan*, to say: the present tense is found in *be-queth*.

Obs. 9.—**Will**, meaning “to exercise the will,” is regular.

Obs. 10.—The infinitive of the verb *wis* or *wot* is *to wit*.

Obs. 11.—**Worth** is a fragment of *weorthan*, to be or become, and only occurs in the phrase “Woe worth”: as, Woe worth the day = woe be to the day.

Obs. 12.—**Yclept** (=clept, or called) is from *cleopian* or *clypian*. The *y* is a substitute for *ge*.

Obs. 13.—The following verbs are termed **anomalous** because they vary from the rules of conjugation :—*Be*, *can*, *dare*, *shall*, *may*, *owe*, *must*, *wit*, *own* (in “I own I was to blame”) and *do* (in “How do you do?”).

164. An Impersonal Verb is one which can only be used in the third person singular with *it* as nominative : as, *It thunders ; It rains ; It hails ; It snows.*

Obs.—*Meseems* (=it seems to me), *methinks* (=it seems to me), and *me lists* (=it pleases me) are often called true impersonals. It is, however, worthy of remark that the nominative is the succeeding sentence ; thus, *Methinks* [I have heard the name but lately]. The sentence in brackets is the nominative. *Thinks* (in *methinks*) is from O.E. *thincan*, to seem ; the word *think* (to exercise the understanding) is from O.E. *thencan*.

165. FIFTH PARSING MODEL.

The wretch, condemned with life to part,
Still, still on hope relies.

| | |
|------------|--|
| The— | A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun “wretch.” |
| wretch— | A common noun, common gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb “relies.” |
| condemned— | A past participle from the transitive verb “to condemn,” referring to the noun “wretch.” |
| with— | A preposition. |
| life— | An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition “with.” |
| to— | A particle, indicating infinitive mood. |
| to part— | A regular intransitive verb, infinitive mood, present tense, governed by the participle “condemned.” |
| Still— | An adverb. |
| still— | An adverb. |
| on— | A preposition. |
| hope— | An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition “on.” |
| relies— | A regular intransitive verb, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “wretch.” |

[*Parsing*, pp. 37—74.]

EXERCISE 64.

Give the past tense and past or complete participle of each verb :—

Abide, beseech, cast, dare, fall, take, swear, stand, speak, hang, lade, quit, saw, shoe, shoot, say, read, grow, lay, have, get, am, set, catch, deal, feed, show, see, bind, weave, teach, lead, gild, hear, arise, awake, chide, dig, shred, wed, split, keep, hit, shrink, tear, sweat, leap, feel, seek, learn, help, give, speed, tell, work, do, choose, eat, draw, spell.

N.B.—Any of the irregular verbs may be taken as exercises in conjugation.

EXERCISE 65.

Mention the verbs, and say whether they are regular, irregular, or defective :—

1. Go, climb the hills. 2. I rambled abroad in the fields. 3. I began to look about me for a tree. 4. The battle now raged furiously. 5. Bid my lieutenant, Peto, meet me at the town's end. 6. Weigh the vessel up. 7. He foregoes the pleasure. 8. I must not come ; I dare not come to

thee. 9. Look thou tell me true. 10. You ought to go. 11. "But what good came of it at last?" quoth little Peterkin. 12. Woe worth the hour. 13. March on! 14. He advised us not to enter. 15. The ocean eagle soared from his nest. 16. I thank you that you taught me the stern truth. 17. The swallow lays from four to six white eggs. 18. I hear the thunder mutter its curses in the air. 19. The winds come to me from the fields of sleep. 20. The fishers had brought with them the mast of a boat.

EXERCISE 66.

Mention the impersonal verbs :—

1. Oh! methought no note can equal thine, sweet bird! 2. It rained down fortune. 3. Methinketh the running of the foremost is like that of Ahimaaz. 4. It rained all night. 5. It freezes to-day. 6. Was ever day like this? It has rained, hailed, snowed, and thundered. 7. Methought the shrill-tongued thrush mended his song of love. 8. It suddenly thawed.

EXERCISE 67.

Parse :—

1. The rain still continued to fall incessantly. 2. Suddenly a sharp flash of lightning, followed by an instantaneous thunder-peal, lighted up all the forest. 3. The demand for amusement and instruction had, during the course of twenty years, been gradually increasing. 4. On the passage the boat was driven by a midnight storm on the rocks. 5. Why do I treat thee thus? 6. Though enemies surround me, yet other men and other times shall hear. 7. The experiment having thus failed, Caesar rose and ordered the crown to be carried to the Capitol.

8. I love you for lulling me back into dreams
Of the blue Highland mountains and echoing streams
And of birchen glades breathing their balm,
While the deer was seen glancing in sunshine remote,
And the deep mellow crush of the wood-pigeon's note
Made music that sweeten'd the calm.

9. Men must work, and women must weep,
Though storms be sudden, and waters deep,
And the harbour bar be moaning.

10. The soul's dark cottage, battered and decayed,
Lets in new light through chinks that time has made.

11. Speeding on with might and main,
Hitherward rides a gallant train.

12. A barking sound the shepherd hears,
A cry as of a dog or fox;
He halts, and searches with his eyes,
Among the scattered rocks;
And now at distance can discern
A stirring in a brake of fern;
And instantly a dog is seen,
Glancing through that covert green.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 160—165.

1. How are verbs divided according to their mode of inflexion? 2. What are regular verbs? 3. What are irregular verbs? 4. What are strong verbs? 5. What are weak verbs? 6. What are mixed verbs? 7. Which class of verbs is the more numerous?

8. What are the chief parts of a verb? 9. What is a defective verb? 10. Name the defective verbs. 11. Explain *do* in the phrase "This will do." 12. How is *beware* used? 13. Explain *uncouth* and *cunning*. 14. What does *dight* mean? 15. What is *ought* formed from? 16. How is *quothe* used? 17. When is *will* regular? 18. Explain the verb *worth*. 19. Explain *yeclept*. 20. What is an impersonal verb? 21. Explain *methinks*, *me seems*, and *melists*.

CHAPTER VI.—THE ADVERB.

I. Classification.

166. An **Adverb** is a word which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: as, The bird sings sweetly; Come *hither*; The battle *soon* ceased; The lion is a *very* strong animal; She reads *exceedingly well*.

Obs. 1.—The primary use of the adverb is to modify the verb; its secondary use is to modify adjectives and adverbs.

Obs. 2.—Many adjectives are used as adverbs: as, *Slow* tolls the village-clock the drowsy hour.

167. Adverbs are of eight kinds:—

I. Adverbs of Time:—*Afresh, after, afterwards, again, ago, already, always, anew, anon, awhile, before, betimes, continually, continuously, daily, directly, early, eftsoons, erewhile, erst, ever, formerly, fortnightly, generally, hereafter, hereupon, hourly, immediately, late, lately, long, monthly, mostly, never, next, now, now-a-days, often, once, seldom, sometimes, soon, then, thereafter, thereupon, to-day, to-morrow, weekly, when, whilom, yearly, yesterday, yestreen.*

Obs.—The words *to-day, to-morrow, yesterday, and yestreen* may also be parsed as nouns. The *to* in *to-day* and *to-morrow* is a form of the demonstrative *this*: compare *This day*.

II. Adverbs of Place:—*Aboard, above, abroad, after, ahead, anywhere, apart, around, ashore, aside, away, back, backward, backwards, before, behind, below, beneath, beyond, down, downward, downwards, elsewhere, everywhere, far, forth, forward, fro, hence, here, hither, in, into, left, near, nowhere, off, out, right, round, sideways, thence, there, thither, to, underneath, unto, up, upward, upwards, whence, where, whither, wide, within, without, yonder.*

III. Adverbs of Manner:—*Thus, so, well, quickly, etc.* This is the largest class of adverbs, and in it are included nearly all those derived from adjectives and ending in *ly*: as, *firmly, badly, slowly, wonderfully, etc.*

Obs.—*Ly*=like; it is, properly, an adjective-ending.

IV. Adverbs of Degree:—*Almost, altogether, eminently, enough, especially, exceedingly, excessively, extremely, greatly, highly, least, less, more, most, nearly, only, quite, prodigiously, scarcely, too, very, wholly, etc.*

Obs.—The adverbs of manner and degree are called, by some, adverbs of *quality*.

V. Adverbs of Measure:—*Much, little, enough, abundantly, somewhat, partly, entirely, sufficiently, half, etc.*

VI. Adverbs of Number and Order:—*Once, twice, thrice, firstly, secondly, thirdly, lastly, etc.*

Obs.—Adverbs of measure, number, and order are called, by some, adverbs of *quantity*.

II. Adverbs of Mood:—

1. **Affirmation**:—*Yes, certainly, truly, surety, absolutely, indeed, aye, really, yea.*

2. **Negation**:—*No, not, nay.*

3. **Probability and Doubt**:—*Perhaps, mayhap, probably, possibly, perchance, peradventure, likely, unlikely, improbably.*

VIII. Adverbs of Cause:—*Therefore, thence, hence, wherefore, why, whence.*

168. Interrogative Adverbs are those which are used in asking questions: as, *Why* do you tarry? The interrogative adverbs are: *Why, wherefore, when, how, where, whither, whence, whereby, wherein, wherewith, wherewithal.* They are derived from interrogative pronouns. When used to join sentences, these words are conjunctions; when employed interrogatively, they are adverbs.

169. Relative Adverbs not only modify some verb, adjective, or adverb, but also join sentences: as, He departed *when* we arrived. *When, whence, whenever, where, whereafter, whereas, whereto, whereby, wherefore, wherein, whereon, whereout, whereto, whereupon, wherever, wherewith, while, whilst, whither, whithersoever, and why* are all derived from relative pronouns, and are therefore called, by some, *Relative Adverbs*. They have also been called *Conjunctive Adverbs*. As they join sentences, they should be classed as *Conjunctions*.

170. There are many **Compound Adverbs** or **Adverbial Phrases**: as, *At least, at once, at present, at random, by-and-by, by no means, in future, in general, now and then, not at all, of course, of necessity, etc.* These may all be classified under some of the preceding heads. In parsing, take each word of the compound separately and then the whole phrase. [*Parsing*, pp. 146, 150--153.]

Obs.—As many phrases are equivalent to adverbs, so adverbs are often equivalent to phrases, *e.g., thus*=in this manner; *hence*=from this place; *there*=in that place.

171. The adverb may, as a rule, be known by its being movable to any place in the sentence in which it is used. The only case in which it is not movable is when it modifies an adjective or another adverb.

172. Some words are classed both as adverbs and prepositions. If they govern an objective case expressed or understood, they are prepositions; if they do not, they are adverbs: *e.g.,* The lark flies *up* (adv.); The boy climbed *up* the tree (prep.).

TABLE OF ADVERBS.

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| I. Time..... | <i>Again.</i> |
| II. Place..... | <i>Here.</i> |
| III. Manner..... | <i>Merrily.</i> |
| IV. Degree | <i>Excessively.</i> |
| V. Measure | <i>Much.</i> |
| VI. Number and Order..... | <i>Once.</i> |
| VII. Mood { | 1. Affirmation <i>Yes.</i> |
| | 2. Negation <i>Not.</i> |
| | 3. Probability and Doubt <i>Perhaps.</i> |
| VIII. Cause | <i>Therefore.</i> |

TABLE OF SIMPLE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

| Pro- nominal root. | Place where. | Motion to. | Motion from. | Time when. | Manner. | Cause. |
|--------------------------|-----------------|------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Whe- | whe-re | whi-ther | whe-nce | whe-n | how | wh-y |
| The- | the-re. | thi-ther | the-nce | the-n | thus | the for thy (O.E.) |
| He- | he-re. | hi-ther | he-nce | | so how (O.E.) | |

EXERCISE 68.

Mention the adverbs, and say to which class each belongs :—

1. It was also the playground for the village school. 2. Low in a grassy dingle he was laid. 3. Here he came, pierced by a fatal blow. 4. The swallow too is come at last. 5. Anon it seems to weary of its rest. 6. So let us live. 7. Now I steal along a woody lane. 8. Yes, I have stood and marked thy varied note. 9. I have heard what pleases me still more. 10. The tardy fields pay not their promised food. 11. Upward I gaze. 12. The whistling ploughman stalks afield. 13. The swallow darted to and fro. 14. Sometimes the cooing wood-pigeon came near. 15. Never elsewhere in one place I knew so many nightingales. 16. You may perchance behold them on the twigs. 17. Across the old wharf they went together, gently, carefully, for the night was dark, and strange anchors, tubs, and piles of timber were strewn about. 18. Here he stopped and wept very much.

EXERCISE 69.

Mention the interrogative adverbs :—

1. Wherefore sleepest thou? 2. Where are thy men of might? 3. Why sittest thou by that ruined hall? 4. How did you contrive it? 5. Whither shall this unhappy old man retire? 6. Whence came you? 7. Wherewith shall I discharge the debt? 8. Where is the boat? 9. Where-withal shall a young man cleanse his way? 10. Whereby shall I know this? 11. Wherein doth liberty consist? 12. When did you quit the army?

EXERCISE 70.

Assign each adverb to its proper class :—

Yet, once, heretofore, well, gently, now, still, how, oft, perhaps, fast, ever, not, so, bravely, more, when, then, no, hither, already, where, only, dearly, soon, within, certainly, here, almost, really.

EXERCISE 71.

Change the phrases in italics into adverbs :—

1. They speak *in anger*. 2. He treated his brother *with kindness*. 3. *In rain* doth valour bleed, while avarice and rapine share the land. 4. Act *with humility*. 5. How marvellous are thy works ! *in wisdom* hast thou made them all. 6. The knight spoke *with sincerity*. 7. They came *with eagerness*, and departed *with reluctance*. 8. His successor was received *with joy and gladness*. 9. They cultivated *with more success* the sublime science of astronomy. 10. They worked *with industry*.

EXERCISE 72.

Form adverbs from these adjectives :—

Dear, weary, noble, generous, brave, dark, gay, distinct, cheerful, glad, bright, glorious, sweet, soft, wild, sad, right, large, graceful, near, gallant, wide, bold, sure, hearty, happy, fierce, warm, exquisite, real.

EXERCISE 73.

Make twelve sentences, each containing one of the following adverbs :—

Now, securely, very, away, again, there, yesterday, scarcely, well, often, not, forward.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 166--172.

1. What is an adverb? 2. What is the primary use of the adverb? 3. What is its secondary use? 4. Give an example of an adjective used as an adverb. 5. How many kinds of adverbs are there? 6. Name the different kinds. 7. Name adverbs of time. 8. Explain *to in to-day*. 9. Name adverbs of place. 10. Name adverbs of manner. 11. How are adverbs of manner formed from adjectives? 12. Name adverbs of degree. 13. Name adverbs of measure. 14. Name adverbs of number and order. 15. How are adverbs of number subdivided? 16. What are adverbs of cause? 17. Name adverbs of cause. 18. What are interrogative adverbs? 19. When do interrogative adverbs become conjunctions? 20. What are relative adverbs? 21. To which part of speech do they properly belong? 22. Mention some compound adverbs. 23. How are they parsed? 24. What are many adverbs equivalent to? 25. By what test may an adverb be known? 26. How can an adverb be known from a preposition? 27. Write out the simple pronominal adverbs.

II. Inflection.

173. Some adverbs have, like the adjective, degrees of comparison. They are compared :—

i. By adding *er* and *est* to the adverb : as,

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Soon, | Sooner, | Soonest. |
| Often, | Often, | Oftenest. |
| Seldom, | Seldom, | Seldomest. |
| Hard, | Harder, | Hardest. |
| Long, | Longer, | Longest. |
| Loud, | Louder, | Loudest. |
| Early, | Earlier, | Earliest. |

Obs.—In poetry, other adverbs in *ly* besides *early* are compared by *er* and *est*: as, *brightly, brightlier, brightliest*; *gladly, gladlier, gladliest*.

ii. By using the comparative and superlative form of the adjective adverbially: as, *brightly, brighter, brightest*.

iii. By prefixing *more* and *most* to the adverb: as, *brightly, more brightly, most brightly*. This is the most usual method.

iv. Irregularly: as,

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Badly, | Worse, | Worst. |
| Evilly, | Worse, | Worst. |
| Far, | Farther, | Farthest. |
| Forth, | Further, | Furthest. |
| Ill, | Worse, | Worst. |
| Late, | Later, | Last. |
| Little, | Less, | Least. |
| Much, | More, | Most. |
| Near, | Nearer, | Nearest, next. |
| Nigh, | Nigher, | Nighest, next. |

Obs. 1.—The adverb *rather* is the comparative of the obsolete adjective *rathe* (=early). *Erst* is the superlative of *ere* (now used only as a conjunction). *Lief* (=willingly) has a comparative *liefer*.

Obs. 2.—Many adverbs, from their nature, cannot be compared: as, *then, to-day, now, where, once*, etc.

174. SIXTH PARSING MODEL.

For we sometimes gently wrangled.

- For— A conjunction.
 we— A personal pronoun, common gender, plural number, first person, nominative case to the verb “wrangled.”
 sometimes—An adverb of time, modifying the verb “wrangled.”
 gently— An adverb of manner, modifying the verb “wrangled.”
 wrangled— A regular intransitive verb, indicative mood, past tense, plural number, first person, agreeing with its nominative “we.”

[*Parsing*, pp. 75—77, 142—147.]

EXERCISE 74.

Compare the adverbs:—

Much, gladly, near, soon, badly, sumptuously, far, seldom, late, often, ill, vigorously, little, hard, loud, forth, long, civilly, early, happily, merrily, nigh, evilly, rapidly.

EXERCISE 75.

Mention the adverbs, and say of what degree each is:—

1. I seldom come on shore here. 2. No writer has said more exactly what he wanted to say. 3. Fire, that is closest kept, burns most of all. 4. Fast bind, fast find. 5. It becomes the thronèd monarch better than his crown. 6. She sings most divinely. 7. I could have better spared a better man. 8. He thought most bitterly of the past. 9. The piper loud and louder blew.

10. Fate never wounds more deep the generous heart,
 Than when a blockhead's insult points the dart.

EXERCISE 76.

Parse :—

1. I am for managing it rationally. 2. Weeks went by. 3. Adam immediately saw in his mind a plan for building it up again. 4. Giving up the argument, I went straight to my lodgings. 5. Harness me down with your iron bands. 6. Show him in. 7. I did not wonder. 8. He then enquired after the ghost. 9. I am to desire that you would now and then give us a lesson on good humour. 10. Partridge immediately declared it was the finest place he had ever been in. 11. Deep mourns the turtle in sequestered bower. 12. Oft shall the pilgrim lift the latch. 13. I can listen to thee yet. 14. Down he throws his flowers.

15. Beneath these fruit-tree boughs, that shed
 Their snow-white blossoms on my head,
 With brightest sunshine round me spread
 Of Spring's unclouded weather ;—
 In this sequestered nook, how sweet
 To sit upon my orchard-seat,
 And birds and flowers once more to greet,
 My last year's friends together.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 173—174.

1. How are adverbs compared? 2. How are some adverbs in *ly* compared in poetry? 3. Explain the form *rather*. 4. Explain the form *erst*. 5. Give the meaning of *lief*. 6. What adverbs cannot be compared?

CHAPTER VII.—THE PREPOSITION.

175. A **Preposition** is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show the relation between it and some other word in the sentence : as, The horse *in* the stable is sold.

176. The preposition is used to show the relation between—

1. A noun and a noun or pronoun : as, We crossed the threshold *of* the door. Here *of* shows the relation between *threshold* and *door*.

2. A verb and a noun or pronoun : as, Primrose *from* the mossy bank is peeping. Here *from* shows the relation between *is peeping* and *bank*.

3. An adjective and a noun or pronoun : as, He is weary *of* life. Here *of* shows the relation between *weary* and *life*.

Obs.—Prepositional phrases are equivalent to—

- (1) Adjectives, when the preposition relates a noun to a noun or pronoun : as, A man *of* might = a mighty man.
 (2) Adverbs, when the preposition relates a verb or adjective to a noun or pronoun : as, The boy fell *from* the wall (whence) ; We ran *to* the bridge (whither).

177. Prepositions may be divided into *Simple* and *Compound*.

The **Simple Prepositions** are :—*At, by, for, from, in, of, on, through, till, to, up, with.*

The **Compound Prepositions** are:—*Aback, about, above, across, adown, afore, after, against, along, amid, amidst, among, amongst, anent, around, aslant, astride, athwart, bating, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, besides, between, betwixt, beyond, but, concerning, considering, despite, down, during, ere, except, excepting, inside, into, manure, near, next, nigh, notwithstanding, off, outside, over, past, pending, regarding, respecting, round, save, since, through-out, touching, toward, towards, under, underneath, until, unto, upon, within, without.*

Obs. 1.—The simple prepositions are from Old English:—*At* (O.E. *aet*, Latin *ad*); *by* (O.E. *be*, *bi*=about);—*for* (O.E. *for*, Latin *pro*); *from* (O.E. *fram*); *in, on* (O.E. *in, on*, Latin *in*); *of, off* (O.E. *of*=from; compare Latin *ab*); *through* (O.E. *thurh*); *to* (O.E. *to*); *up* (O.E. *up*); *with* (O.E. *with, wither*, from, against). The original meaning of *with* is seen in the word *withstand*. In the word *from*, *-m* is a superlative ending. There is an etymological connection between *for* and *fro*, and also between these words and *far* and *fore*.

Obs. 2.—The derived or compound prepositions, with the exception of the verbal prepositions, are from Old English. The verbal prepositions, which are merely the imperative or participial forms of verbs used as prepositions, are mainly derived from the Latin. These are: *except, save, concerning, considering, during, excepting, pending, respecting, bating* (O.E.), *notwithstanding* (O.E.), *regarding* (Fr.), and *touching* (Fr.).

Obs. 3.—The *er* in *after, over, under*, is the comparative suffix.

Obs. 4.—Prepositions are also classified according to the relation which they express, viz. :—

- (1) **Place.** (a) Rest in : *at, in, near.* (b) Motion to and from : *to, unto, towards, from.* (c) Place and direction : *on, upon, up, down, above, below, etc.*
- (2) **Time.** (a) Time as well as place : *at, in, on, before, by, about, above, between.* (b) Time only : *since, till, until, during, etc.*
- (3) **Agent and instrument :** *by, through, with.*
- (4) **Cause** (end, purpose, motive, or reason) : *for, from, by way of, out of, on account of.*
- (5) **Reference :** *on, of, about, touching, concerning.*
- (6) **Separation and exclusion :** *without, save, except, but.*
- (7) **Inclination and conformity :** *for.*
- (8) **Aversion and opposition :** *against, with, athwart.*
- (9) **Substitution :** *for, instead of, in place of.*
- (10) **Possession :** *of, to ; as, (consists) of, (belongs) to.*

178. The chief **Prepositional Phrases** are:—*According to, agreeably to, apart from, apropos of, away from, by means of, by reason of, by virtue of, conformably to, for the sake of, in accordance with, in addition to, in behalf of, in case of, in comparison to, in compliance with, in consequence of, in defiance of, in favour of, in opposition to, in place of, in preference to, in quest of, in reference to, in regard to, in respect of, in search of, in spite of, instead of, on account of, out of, owing to, with reference to, with regard to.*

Obs.—In parsing these phrases, take each word separately, and then the whole phrase as a compound preposition. [*Parsing*, pp. 154, 155.]

179. Many prepositions are appended to verbs in order to form preposition-verbs : as, Love laughs *at* locksmiths.

180. Prepositions may be known by observing that they cannot be removed from one part of the sentence unless in connection with the noun or pronoun which they govern.

181. Prepositions have no inflexion.

182. SEVENTH PARSING MODEL.

A change came o'er the spirit of my dream.

- A— A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun "change."
 change—An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb "came."
 came— An irregular intransitive verb, indicative mood, past tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "change."
 o'er— A preposition, showing the relation between "came" and "spirit."
 the— A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun "spirit."
 spirit— An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition "o'er."
 of— A preposition, showing the relation between "spirit" and "dream."
 my— A personal pronoun, common gender, singular number, first person, possessive case, governed by the noun "dream."
 dream— An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition "of."

[*Parsing*, pp. 78, 79.]

EXERCISE 77.

Mention the prepositions and say what they relate :—

1. See you robin on the spray. 2. The repairs were ordered to be executed with all despatch. 3. He busied himself with sketching a plan. 4. He sat on a block, with his head resting on a planing-table. 5. The sun was on the point of setting. 6. He hurried across the Chase, stalking along the narrow paths between the fern. 7. You promised me three warnings which I have looked for* nights and* mornings. 8. The times were not ripe for a rising. 9. Dudley was not zealous for inquiry. 10. In the afternoon we were in a barge, watching the games on the river. 11. In the day he wore a shirt of mail under his robes, and he slept with a guard of a hundred men.

12. Our father lives in Washington,
 And has a world of care.

EXERCISE 78.

Mention the preposition-verbs :—

1. He was well acquainted with most of the modern languages. 2. They dream of spring. 3. John never talked of his history. 4. The very stones prate of my whereabouts. 5. Beware of entrance to a quarrel. 6. Thou com'st in such a questionable shape, that I will speak to thee. 7. (He is) still harping on my daughter. 8. Oft I had heard of Lucy Gray. 9. We bitterly thought of the morrow. 10. Make her laugh at that. 11. O, beware, my lord, of jealousy. 12. She sat like patience on a monument, smiling at grief. 13. Stand by the cause of truth. 14. He made for the thicket. 15. He met with an accident. 16. They wondered at the result. 17. How did you come by that name? 18. The boys play at marbles.

* *On* understood.

EXERCISE 79.

Parse :—

1. 'Twas nigh the hour of evening prayer. 2. From nature he had received an uncouth figure. 3. On the Arcopagus the Christian leader takes his stand. 4. This tale awakened the pity of the auditors. 5. They went into Leicestershire, and came to Bosworth Field. 6. The senate awarded the prize of eloquence to Tiberius. 7. Augustus wrote verses against Asinius. 8. The allegory of Bunyan has been read by many thousands with tears. 9. At the end of the long dark valley he passes the dens in which the old giants dwell. 10. His last cry of anger comes back from the skies.

11. He told how murderers walked the earth
Beneath the curse of Cain—
With crimson clouds before their eyes,
And flames about their brain.

12. He sat upon the wave-washed shore
With madness in his eye.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 175—182.

1. What is a preposition? 2. What relations are expressed by the preposition? 3. To what parts of speech are prepositional phrases equivalent? 4. Classify prepositions. 5. Name simple prepositions. 6. Name compound prepositions. 7. Give the derivation of the simple prepositions. 8. Name prepositional phrases. 9. How are prepositional phrases parsed?

CHAPTER VIII.—THE CONJUNCTION.

183. A Conjunction is a word which joins two sentences : as, The king went away *and* the queen followed him.

Obs. 1.—Some grammarians say that a conjunction joins words and phrases as well as sentences. It may, however, generally be shown, by supplying the ellipsis, that a conjunction really joins sentences. Examples :—(1) John *and* Thomas carry a sack to market ; (2) Pitt *and* Fox were opponents.

These sentences may be thus written :—

- (1) John *carries* } carry a sack to market.
[and] Thomas *carries* }
(2) Pitt *was an opponent of Fox* } were opponents
[and] Fox *was an opponent of Pitt* }

Obs. 2.—When conjunctions seem to join words or phrases, the student should, before parsing, write out the sentence in its extended form.

N.B.—It is, however, sometimes difficult to resolve satisfactorily some constructions into sentences. This is accounted for by the fact that they are generally the final result of a succession of abbreviations. In such cases it will be sufficient to consider the conjunction as joining words, and to take the words so joined as a compound form. [*Parsing*, pp. 84, 85.]

184. Conjunctions are of two kinds, *Copulative* and *Disjunctive*.

185. A Copulative Conjunction is one which joins two sentences, and at the same time unites their meaning : as,

She had a rustic, woodland air,
And she was wildly clad.

186. The Copulative Conjunctions are :—*Accordingly, after, also, and, as, because, before, both, consequently, ere, even, for, further, furthermore, how, if, likewise, moreover, provided, seeing, since, so, that, then, therefore, till, until, when, whence, whenever, where, whereafter, whereat, whereby, wherefore, wherein, whereof, whereon, whereout, whereto, whereunto, whereupon, wherever, wherewith, while, whilst, whither, whithersoever, why.*

187. The Compound Copulative Conjunctions are :—*According as, after that, as far as, as if, as long as, as much as, as often as, as soon as, as sure as, as though, as well as, as when, before that, by reason that, for as much as, for fear that, for that, if that, in as much as, inasmuch as, in case, in case that, in order that, in so far as, inasmuch that, in that, seeing that, so as, so far as, so long as, suppose that, supposing that, till that, until that, when that.*

Obs.—In parsing these compounds, take each word separately, and then the whole phrase as a compound copulative conjunction. [*Parsing*, p. 156.]

188. A Disjunctive Conjunction is one which joins sentences, but at the same time disconnects their meaning :
as,

Alas ! they had been friends in youth ;
But whispering tongues can poison truth.

189. The Disjunctive Conjunctions are :—*Albeit, although, but, either, else, except, howbeit, however, lest, neither, nevertheless, nor, notwithstanding, or, otherwise, save, still, than, though, unless, whereas, whether, yet.*

190. The Compound Disjunctive Conjunctions are :—*But and if, but that, except that, except when, for all (= although), lest that, nor that, not that, notwithstanding that, provided that, save that, save when, though that, unless that, unless when, without that.*

Obs.—In parsing these compounds, take each word separately, and then the whole phrase as a compound disjunctive conjunction. [*Parsing*, p. 156.]

191. Correlative Conjunctions are such as are used in pairs. Of these there are three classes :—

i. *Conjunction.*

Although

As

Because

Both

Either

If

Neither

Conjunction.

{ Nevertheless
Still
Yet

So

Therefore

And

Or

Then

Nor

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Conjunction.</i> | <i>Conjunction.</i> |
| Notwithstanding | { Nevertheless |
| | { Still |
| Since | { Yet |
| | { Therefore |
| Though | { Nevertheless |
| | { Still |
| Whether | { Yet |
| | { Or |
| And in poetry, | |
| Nor | Nor |
| Or | Or |
| ii. <i>Adverb.</i> | <i>Conjunction.</i> |
| As | As |
| Equally | And |
| Not | But |
| | { But |
| Not merely | { But also |
| | { But even |
| | { But likewise |
| | { But |
| Not only | { But also |
| | { But even |
| | { But likewise |
| Rather | Than |
| So | As |
| So | That |
| Then | When |
| There | Where |
| Thither | Whither |
| iii. <i>Adjective.</i> | <i>Conjunction.</i> |
| Any comparative | Than |
| Other | Than |
| Same | As |
| Such | As |
| Such | That |

[*Parsing*, pp. 81—83.]

192. The following conjunctions are, by some grammarians, called **Conjunctive Adverbs** :—*Accordingly, also, as* (after *so, such, or as*), *before, consequently, else, ere, even, further, furthermore, how, however, likewise, moreover, nevertheless, notwithstanding, otherwise, since, so, still, than, that* (after *so, such, etc.*), *then, therefore, till, until, when, whence, whenever, where, whereafter, whereas, whereat, whereby, wherefore, wherein, whereof, whereon, wherewith, whereto, whereunto, whereupon, wherever, wherewith, while, whilst, whither, whithersoever, why, yet.*

Pure Conjunctions are those which cannot be used as adverbs or prepositions : *as, And, but, either, or, nor, etc.*

193. Conjunctions are frequently divided into *Co-ordinative* and *Subordinative*.

(a) **Co-ordinative Conjunctions**, or those which join two principal sentences, are :—*Accordingly, also, and, because, both, but, consequently, either, else, even, for, further, furthermore, however, likewise, moreover, neither, nor, nevertheless, notwithstanding, or, otherwise, so, still, then, therefore, whence, wherefore, whether, yet.*

(b) **Subordinative Conjunctions**, or those which join a subordinate to a principal sentence, are :—*After, albeit, although, as, because, before, but, ere, except, for, how, howbeit, however, if, lest, nevertheless, notwithstanding, provided, save, seeing, since, so, than, that, though, till, unless, until, when, whence, whenever, where, whereafter, whereas, whereat, whereby, wherefore, wherein, whereof, whereon, whereout, whereto, whereunto, whereupon, wherever, wherewith, whether, while, whilst, whither, whithersoever, why, yet.*

Obs. 1.—The conjunctions *because, but, for, however, nevertheless, notwithstanding, so, whence, wherefore, whether, and yet*, are used sometimes as co-ordinative and sometimes as subordinative conjunctions.

Obs. 2.—The conjunctions which are placed before verbs in the subjunctive mood (§ 118. *Obs. 1*) are said to govern the subjunctive mood, and are therefore called *Governing Conjunctions*.

194. When it is difficult to know whether a word is a conjunction or an adverb, it may be determined by the following test :—If the word be movable to any other part of the sentence, it is an adverb ; but if it cannot be moved from the beginning of the sentence it introduces, it is a conjunction.

195. Conjunctions have no inflexion.

TABLE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| I. Copulative | <i>And.</i> |
| II. Disjunctive | <i>But.</i> |

196. EIGHTH PARSING MODEL.

Nor martial shout nor minstrel tone
Announced their march.

This is equivalent to

[Nor (= neither)] martial shout *announced their march*
[nor] minstrel tone *announced their march.*

| | |
|----------|--|
| Nor— | A disjunctive conjunction, introducing the sentence “martial shout <i>announced their march.</i> ” |
| martial— | An adjective of quality, positive degree, qualifying the noun “shout.” |
| shout— | An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb <i>announced</i> understood. |

- nor— A disjunctive conjunction, correlative to “nor,” joining the sentences “martial shout *announced their march*” and “minstrel tone announced their march.”
- minstrel— A common noun used as an adjective of quality, qualifying the noun “tone.”
- tone— An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb “announced.”
- announced—A regular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, past tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “tone.”
- their— A personal pronoun, common gender, plural number, third person, possessive case, governed by the noun “march.”
- march— An abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “announced.”

[*Parsing*, pp. 80—85.]

EXERCISE 80.

Mention the conjunctions, and say what they join :—

1. I pressed my shivering children to my bosom, but I could not speak.
2. The daisy and the buttercup are nodding courteously.
3. The winter was long and dreary ; but it is all over now.
4. Every avenue to escape was closed, for the entrance to the square was choked up.
5. It was not long before sunset when the van of the royal procession entered the gates of the city.
6. If what you have written should turn out imperfect, you can correct it.
7. The little birds will cover us with leaves as they did the babes in the wood.
8. I never knew how ill she was till the fever came upon her.
9. I am never alarmed, except when I am informed that the sovereigns want treasure.
10. You are more active than I.

EXERCISE 81.

Mention the correlative conjunctions :—

1. Quarter was neither asked nor given.
2. She was such an artless little creature that all loved her.
3. He was such a man as I never saw before.
4. Where the dead leaf fell, there did it rest.
5. Alas ! I have nor hope nor health.
6. Though he die, yet shall he live.
7. I know not whether he writes poetry or prose.
8. I love both flower and tree.
9. No man was so poor that he could not make restitution.
10. Nor scratch had he, nor harm nor dread.
11. You must either work or starve.
12. When pride cometh, then cometh shame.
13. As he excels in virtue, so he rises in estimation.
14. He would consent rather than suffer.
15. Since the sides are equal, therefore the angles are equal.

EXERCISE 82.

Parse :—

1. He was gallant and free.
2. He darted to a conclusion rather by intuition than by reasoning.
3. If I had looked a moment longer I should have dropped.
4. He suffered, but his pangs are o'er.
5. Out went the taper as she hurried in.
6. He swam the Esk river, where ford there was none.
7. Ere he alighted at Netherby Gate, the bride had consented.
8. Let not a man move from his rank before I give the sign.
9. When I receive your long letters I am ashamed.

10. A king sat on the rocky brow
Which looks o'er sea-born Salamis ;
And ships in thousands lay below,
And men in nations ;—all were his !
He counted them at break of day—
And when the sun set, where were they ?

QUESTIONS ON §§ 183—196.

1. What is a conjunction? 2. Whether do conjunctions join words or sentences?
3. How many kinds of conjunctions are there? 4. What is a copulative conjunction?
5. Name copulative conjunctions. 6. Name compound copulative conjunctions.
7. What is a disjunctive conjunction? 8. Name disjunctive conjunctions. 9. Name compound disjunctive conjunctions. 10. What are correlative conjunctions? 11. Name the correlative conjunctions of the first class. 12. Name the correlative conjunctions of the second class. 13. Name the correlative conjunctions of the third class. 14. Which conjunctions are sometimes called conjunctive adverbs? 15. What are pure conjunctions? 16. What are co-ordinative conjunctions? 17. What are sub-ordinative conjunctions? 18. By what test can you distinguish between an adverb and a conjunction? 19. Have conjunctions any inflexion?

CHAPTER IX —THE INTERJECTION.

197. An **Interjection** is a word which expresses sudden feeling : as, *Alas!* the ship is lost.

Obs.—An interjection forms no part of a sentence, but is simply an exclamation expressing joy, sorrow, surprise, pain, grief, or other sudden feeling. As it has no grammatical relation to other words, it has no inflexion.

198. The chief **Interjections** are:—*Adieu! ah! aha! ahoy! alack! alas! avant! away! ay, ay! begone! behold! bravo! eh! farewell! fangh! fie! fy! foh! fudge! good-bye! gramercy! ha! hah! hail! hark! heigh-ho! hey! heyday! hist! ho! holla! hollo! horrible! hurrah! hush! huzza! indeed! list! lo! look! marry! mum! O! oh! oho! pish! poh! pooh! prithee! pshaw! pugh! see! soho! strange! striking! tush! ugh! welcome! what! zooks! zounds!*

199. Any of the leading parts of speech uttered by itself to express a sudden emotion may be called an interjection : as,

1. Noun : *Peace!* breathe not his name.
2. Adjective : *Strange!* I seemed to feel a breath of air.
3. Pronoun : *What!* you are weeping yet !
4. Verb : *Hark!* heard you not the thunder's roar?
5. Adverb : *Away!* the flames are coming nearer.

200. NINTH PARSING MODEL.

Ay, marry, why was he sent into England?

- Ay— An interjection.
marry— An interjection. (*Marry* is a corruption of *by St. Mary.*)
why— An interrogative adverb, modifying the verb “was sent.”
was— An auxiliary verb to “sent,” indicating passive voice, past tense.

- he— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb "was sent."
 sent— A past participle from the transitive verb "to send," referring to "he"
 was sent— An irregular transitive verb, passive voice, indicative mood, past tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "he."
 into— A preposition, showing the relation between "was sent" and "England."
 England— A proper noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition "into."

[*Parsing*, p. 86.]

EXERCISE 83.

Parse :—

1. Alas ! we turn to brave the billows of the world's tempestuous sway.
2. Ah ! forgive a stranger rude. 3. Ha ! what seest thou there ?
4. Oh ! sing unto my roundelay ;
 Oh ! drop the briny tear with me ;
 Dance no more at holiday,
 Like a running river be ;
 My love is dead,
 Gone to his death-bed,
 All under the willow-tree.
5. Oh, could I fly, I'd fly with thee !
 We'd make, with joyful wing,
 Our annual visit o'er the globe,
 Companions of the Spring.
6. O that those lips had language ! Life has passed
 With me but roughly since I heard thee last.
 Those lips are thine—thy own sweet smiles I see,
 The same that oft in childhood solaced me.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 197—200.

1. What is an interjection ? 2. Have interjections any inflexion ? 3. Name interjections.
4. Which parts of speech may be used as interjections ? 5. Give examples.

CHAPTER X.—WORDS NOT EASILY CLASSIFIED.

[*Parsing*, pp. 160--182.]

201. There are many words which may be used sometimes as one part of speech and sometimes as another. Of such words the principal are :—

202. About. *Prep.* He danced about the stage.

Adv. She shuffles her threads about.

203. After. *Prep.* The tossing of the sea remains after the storm.

Adv. To-day deep thoughts resolve with me to drench.
 In mirth that, after, no repenting draws.

Conj. I shall decide after I have heard the witnesses.

Adj. After ages shall sing his glory.

204. All. *Adj. of quantity.* All the world's a stage.
Indef. numeral adj. And all the men and women
 merely players.
*Noun.** All was activity and excitement.
Adv. All bloodless lay the untrodden snow.
205. Alone. *Adj.* It is thou alone that keeps the soul awake.
Adv. She stood alone.
206. Another. *Adj.* There is another and a better world.
Noun. Teach me to feel another's woe.
207. Any. *Adj. of quantity.* Who will show us any good?
Indef. numeral adj. Are there any witnesses present?
Adv. The courier could not travel any faster.
208. As. *Conj.* I directed him as he desired.
Adv. There are as many thorns in the path of life
 as there are flowers.
209. Besides. *Prep.* And there was a famine in the land, besides
 the first famine.
Adv. He sang and recited besides.
Conj. The duke must grant me that ; besides, his
 picture I will send far and near.
210. Both. *Def. numeral adj.* Brother, brother, we are both in
 the wrong.
Conj. Both charge and danger speak 'gainst so great
 a number.
211. But. *Conj.* I change, but I cannot die.
Prep. Who can it be but him?
Adv. There was but (=only) one thing to be done.
Noun. He began his speech with a but.
212. Either. *Adj.* Take either path.
Conj. Either say thou'lt do't, or thrive by other
 means.
213. Eke. *Verb.* They eke out the performance.
Adv. 'Twill be prodigious hard to prove,
 That this is eke the throne of love.
214. Else. *Adv.* Myself could else out-frown false fortune's
 frown.
Adj. The tempest in my mind
 Doth from my senses take all feeling else.
Conj. He has some reason, else he could not beg.
215. Enough. *Adj. of quantity.* We have straw and provender
 enough.
Indef. numeral adj. We have cherries enough.
*Noun.** He had enough to do.
Adv. She looks pretty enough to be well.
216. Even. *Verb.* This will even all inequalities.
Adj. Methinks, the ground is even.
Adv. Even in our ashes live their wonted fires.
Noun. They played at odd and even.
Conj. And behold I, even I, do bring a flood of
 waters on the earth.

* Strictly, an adjective, with a noun understood.

217. **Except.** *Verb.* We include the father in the charge, but except the son.
Prep. All except one agreed.
Conj. I will not let thee go except thou bless me.
218. **Few.** *Indef. numeral adj.* Few things have failed to which I set my will.
*Noun.** The tracts are read only by the happy few.
219. **For.** *Conj.* This prophecy Merlin shall make ; for I live before his time.
Prep. 'Tis not for mortals always to be blest.
Adv. The squire has been asked for.
220. **Half.** *Noun.* Thy half o' the kingdom hast thou not forgot.
Adj. Half measures were of no avail.
Adv. The slave was half dead with fear.
Verb. They will half the inheritance.
221. **Least.** *Adj.* A man can no more have a positive idea of the greatest than he has of the least space.
Adv. She is the least beautiful of the three.
*Noun.** Least said is soonest mended.
222. **Less.** *Adj.* Of two evils the less is always to be chosen.
Adv. I do not love Cæsar less.
*Noun.** Less will not suffice.
223. **Like.** *Adj.* There is no virtue like necessity.
Adv. He was perfumed like a milliner.
224. **Little.** *Adj. of quality.* It lies in my little one's cradle.
Adj. of quantity. O, I have ta'en too little care of this.
Adv. He sleeps little.
*Noun.** Little of this great world can I speak.
225. **More.** *Adj. of quantity.* Made you no more offence than what you speak of?
Indef. numeral adj. Here more roses bloom.
Adv. Once more the cup of hope was dashed to the ground.
*Noun.** I have heard more since.
226. **Most.** *Adj. of quantity.* The most wool comes from the colonies.
Indef. numeral adj. Most men have a thirst for glory.
Adv. I loved her most.
*Noun.** The oldest hath borne most.
227. **Much.** *Adj. of quantity.* Manasseh wrought much wickedness.
Adv. He wept very much.
*Noun.** We shall never see so much.
228. **Neither.** *Adj.* The upright judge inclines to neither party.
Conj. Give me neither poverty nor riches!
229. **Next.** *Adj.* At the next instant the boat sank.
Prep. Her princely guest was next her side.
Adv. Who follows next?
230. **No.** *Adj. of quantity.* An innocent man needs no cloquence.

* Strictly, an adjective, with a noun understood.

- Def. numeral adj.* He asked no heaps of hoarded gold.
- Adv.* Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.
231. **Notwith-** *Prep.* Notwithstanding the warning, he rushed on.
standing. *Conj.* Notwithstanding, in thy days I will not do it.
232. **Off.** *Prep.* The slave-ship was captured off Brazil.
Adv. The robber made off that way.
Interj. Off ! base wretch !
233. **One.** *Adj.* The off horse in the team began to plunge.
Def. numeral adj. One man in his time plays many parts.
234. **Only.** *Indef. pers. pron.* One scarcely knows why he did it.
Adj. My only plea is gone.
Adv. There was a silence broken only by the fall of the ashes in the grate.
235. **Other.** *Conj.* Take what I have, only let me go.
Adj. Why, then your other senses grow imperfect.
236. **Pass.** *Noun.* True piety will weep for others' woes.
Noun. What, have his daughters brought him to this pass ?
237. **Round.** *Verb.* Vex not his ghost : O, let him pass !
Adj. Round dealing is the honour of man's nature.
Prep. Captain Cook sailed round the world.
Adv. Wheel the sofa round !
Verb. They round the edges of the stone.
238. **Save.** *Noun.* We run the daily round of duty.
Verb. He cried, " Save me !"
Prep. Fear prevailed o'er all on board save one.
Conj. That mortal dint,
 Save he who reigns above, none can resist.
239. **Since.** *Conj.* Since truth and constancy are vain,
 Since neither love nor sense of pain
 Nor force of reason can persuade,
 Then let example be obeyed.
Prep. I have not seen him since last spring.
240. **So.** *Adv.* You spoke not with her since.
Adv. It had so sweet a breath.
Conj. The other won't agree thereto,
 So here they fall to strife.
241. **Some.** *Adj. of quantity.* Some time I shall sleep out.
Indef. numeral adj. Some men excel in husbandry,
 some in gardening, some in mathematics.
242. **Somewhat.** *Adv.* It was founded some eighteen centuries ago.
Noun. I have somewhat to say unto thee.
243. **That.** *Adv.* I am somewhat faint with our long talk.
Disting. adj. Thy wish was father, Harry, to that thought.
Rel. pron. Base is the slave that pays.
244. **Then.** *Compound rel. pron.* We speak that we do know.
Conj. Nor did you kill that you might eat.
Adv. Then sunk the star of Solyma.
Conj. Oh, then, I see, Queen Mab hath been with you.

245. **Therefore.** *Adv.* I have married a wife, and therefore I cannot come.
Conj. The sides are equal, therefore the angles are equal.
246. **Well.** *Adj.* Your daughter is not well.
Adv. I do not well know, my lord.
Noun. I advised him to leave well alone.
Interj. Well, my good lord, I have informed them so.
247. **What.** *Interrog. pron.* What does he complain of?
Adj. What neat repast shall feast us, light and choice?
Compound rel. pron. My nature is subdued to what it works in.
Adv. What with hardship and fatigue, the soldier was exhausted.
Interj. What! did my father's godson seek your life?
248. **Whether.** *Interrog. pron.* Whether is more beneficial, that we should have the same yearly quantity of heat distributed equally, or a greater share in summer, and in winter a less?
Conj. Resolve whether you will or no.
249. **Which.** *Interrog. pron.* Which of them shall I take?
Rel. pron. He touched nothing which he did not adorn.
Adj. Which man is it?
250. **Why.** *Adv.* Why dost thou use me thus?
Conj. I have a reason why I would not have you speak so tenderly
Noun. He asked the why and wherefore.
Interj. Why, this fellow has banished two of his daughters.
251. **Wont.** *Participle.* When were you wont to be so full of songs?
Noun. His wont was to read at meals.
Verb. A yearly solemn feast she wont to make.
252. **Yet.** *Conj.* I come to you in the spirit of peace ; yet you will not receive me.
Adv. You yet may spy the fawn at play.

EXERCISE 84.

Classify the words in italics :—

1. *That* civil war embitters *all* his life.
2. She bids him *yet* beware.
3. Act *but* an honest and a faithful part.
4. He did hear *that* sound the first amidst the festival.
5. Glad creatures of the sea! how *all* seems life!
6. She has *little* understanding.
7. Each climate needs *what other* climes produce.
8. A *few* years *since* a child was lost in the woods.
9. The bear was *much* straitened *for* food.
10. Deification *after* death was the *most that* could be attempted.
11. The *little* boy's father, *half* frantic, leaped with *others* into the jolly-boat, *but* it was too dark to see far before them.
12. Fear nought *but* sin.
13. I do my *most* and best.
14. Here *eke that* famous golden apple grew.
15. The children of Israel are *more* than we.

16. And nought was green upon the oak
But moss and rarest mistletoe.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 201—252

1. What parts of speech may the word *about* be? 2. What parts of speech may the word *after* be? [N.B.—In the same manner go through the other words in the list.]

B. Derivation.

CHAPTER I.—DEFINITIONS. PRIMARY DERIVATIVES.

253. Derivation is that part of etymology which explains the different parts of which a word is made up.

254. Words are either *Primitive*, *Derivative*, or *Compound*.

255. A Primitive Word is a word in its simplest form : as, *son*, *good*, *I*, *speak*, *down*, and.

Obs.—Such words are often called roots.

256. A Derivative is a word formed from a primitive word or root. Derivatives are of two kinds, *Primary* and *Secondary*.

I. A **Primary Derivative** is formed from a primitive word by a change in the body of the word : as, *strike*, *stroke*.

II. A **Secondary Derivative** is formed from a primitive word by adding prefixes or suffixes : as, *learn*, *un-learn*, *learn-er*.

A **Prefix** is a syllable put before a root : as, *con-duct*.

A **Suffix** (or affix) is a syllable added after a root : as, *duct-ile*.

257. A Compound Word consists of two or more words, each of which is significant : as, *mill-stone*, *door-step*, *horse-leech*.

Primary Derivatives.

258. Nouns are formed as primary derivatives :—

i. By changing the vowel sound : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Bear, | Bier. | Gape, | Gap. | Shear, | { Share, shore |
| Bind, | Band, bond. | Knit, | Knot, net. | | { shire. |
| Bite, | Bit. | Lay, | Law. | Shine, | Sheen. |
| Bless, | Bliss. | Learn, | Lore. | Sing, | Song. |
| Breed, | Brood. | Lend, | Loan. | Sit, | Seat. |
| Click, | Clock. | Let, | Lot. | Sneak | Snake. |
| Crack, | Creak. | Say, | { Saw (a say- | Stake, | Stick. |
| Deal, | Dole. | | { ing). | Strike, | Stroke. |
| Deem, | Doom. | Serape, | Serap. | Tell, | Tale. |
| Drive, | Drove. | Sell, | Sale. | Write, | Writ. |
| Feed, | Food. | | | | |

ii. By changing the last consonant sound : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Abuse, | Abuse. | Dig, | Ditch. | Speak, | Speech. |
| Advise, | Advice. | Gird, | Girth. | Stick, | Stitch. |
| Arc, | Arch. | Grieve, | Grief. | Strive, | Strife. |
| Behove, | Behoof. | Practise, | Practice. | Use, | Use. |
| Believe, | Belief. | Prove, | Proof. | Wreathe, | Wreath. |
| Devise, | Device. | | | | |

Obs.—When the verb and noun are the same in form, the consonant is often soft in the verb and sharp in the noun : as, *to house* (pron. *houze*), *house* (pron. *houce*).

iii. By changing both vowel and consonant sounds : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Bake, | Batch. | Choose, | Choice. | Live, | Life. |
| Bank, | Bench. | Cloth, | Cloth. | Lose, | Loss. |
| Break, | { Breach, | Dig, | Dike. | Seethe, | Sud. |
| | { breech. | Hold, | Hilt. | Wake, | Watch. |
| Breathe, | Breath. | Lathe, | Lath. | Weave, | Woof, web. |

N.B.—Many primary derivatives are the same as the primitive words : as, *to praise* (verb) ; *praise* (noun). Verbs and nouns of the same form are often distinguished by a change of accent : as,

| <i>Verb.</i> | <i>Noun.</i> |
|--------------|--------------|
| Abstract, | Abstract. |
| Colléague, | Colléague. |
| Désert, | Désert. |

259. Adjectives are formed as primary derivatives :—

i. By changing the vowel sound : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| File (in de- file), | { Foul. | Flit, | Fleet. | Pride, | Proud. |
| Fill, | Full. | Heal, | Hale. | String, | Strong. |
| | | Heat. | Hot. | Wring, | Wrong. |

ii. By changing the last consonant sound : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|
| Diffuse (-ze), | Diffuse (-ce) |
| Leathe, | Loth. |
| Milk, | Milch |

iii. By changing both vowel and consonant sounds : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|
| Cool, | Chill. |
| Love, | Lief. |
| Wit, | Wise. |

260. Verbs are formed as primary derivatives :—

i. By changing the vowel sound : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Blood, | Bleed. | Gold, | Gild. | Roll, | Reel. |
| Chop, | Chip. | Knell, | Knoll. | Shake, | Shock. |
| Din, | Dan. | Lie, | Lay. | Sit, | Set. |
| Drop, | Drip, droop. | Rest, | Roost. | Snif, | Snuff. |
| Fall, | Fell. | Rise, | Raise, rouse. | Sop, | Sip. |
| Fly, | Flee. | | | | |

ii. By changing the last consonant sound : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Bulk, | Bulge. | Grease, | Grease. | Sooth, | Soothe. |
| Calf, | Calve. | Half, | Halve. | Stick, | Stitch. |
| Cling, | Clinch. | Price, | Prize. | Thief, | Thieve. |
| Dog, | Dodge. | Shelf, | Shelve. | Wink, | Wince. |

iii. By changing both vowel and consonant sounds : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Blink, | Blench. | Glass, | Glaze. | Hound, | Hunt. |
| Cling, | Clench. | Grass, | Graze. | Wake, | Watch. |
| Drink, | Drench. | Hook, | Litch. | Wring, | Wrench. |
| Drag, | Dre lge. | | | | |

iv. By prefixing an augment, as, *s, t, c, g* : as,

| <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> | <i>Prim. word.</i> | <i>Deriv.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Dun, | Stun. | Nip, | Snip. | Rumple, | Crumple. |
| Knap, | Snap. | Plash, | Splash. | Tumble, | Stumble. |
| Lash, | Slash. | Quash, | Squash. | Wag, | Swag, sway. |
| Mash, | Smash. | Rob, | Crib. | Whirl, | Swirl, twirl. |
| Melt, | Smelt. | Rumble, | Grumble. | Wing, | Swing. |

EXERCISE 85.

Mention primary derivatives from these words :—

Bear, say, heat, thief, hook, rob, wing, grass, cool, knit, bite, tell, dig, melt, dog, gold, fall, lie, flit, hold, lose, wake, feed, pride, break.

EXERCISE 86.

With what simple words are the following etymologically connected?

Ditch, woof, stumble, shock, bliss, seat, gap, splash, strong, wrench, twirl, breach, choice, strife, lot, full, snake, sheen, band, brood, raise, reel, mileh, doom, clock.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 253--260.

1. What is derivation?
2. Classify words as to their structure.
3. What is a primitive word?
4. What are primitive words often called?
5. What is a derivative?
6. How many kinds of derivatives are there?
7. What is a primary derivative?
8. What is a secondary derivative?
9. What is a prefix?
10. What is a suffix?
11. What is a compound word?
12. How are primary derivative nouns formed?
13. Give examples of each method.
14. How are primary derivative adjectives formed?
15. Give examples of each method.
16. How are primary derivative verbs formed?
17. Give examples of each method.

CHAPTER II.—SECONDARY DERIVATIVES.

261. Prefixes and suffixes used in English are chiefly of *English, Latin, or Greek* origin.

262. The **English Prefixes** are :—

A (O.E. *an, on, in*), *on, out, from* : a-foot, a-shore, an-on, a-bove, a-round, a-rise, a-thwart (on the cross).

After, following : after-noon.

Al, all : al-most, al-together, al-so.

At, to : at-one.

Be (O.E. *by*), *near, upon, over, to make* : be-speak, be-dim, be-calm, be-fore, be-dew.

En, em, to make : en-dear, em-power, en-rich.

For, through, also denotes *opposition* : for-bid, for-sake, for-swear.

Fore, before : fore-know, fore-head, fore-noon.

Gain, against : gain-say.

In, in : in-come, in-take, in-step.

Mid, middle : mid-way.

Mis, amiss : mis-lead, mis-take, mis-hap.

N, not : n-either, n-ever, n-one, n-or.

- Off**, *away* : off-shoot, off-scouring, off-spring.
Out, *excelling, beyond* : out-bid, out-cry, out-shin
Over, *above* : over-hang, over-do, over-flow.
To, implying *addition* : to-gether, to-wards.
To, *this* : to-day, to-night.
To, *asunder* : all to brake his skull (= quite in pieces brake his skull).
Un (before an adjective or adverb), *not* : un-easy, un-kind, un-safe.
Un (before a verb) denotes *deprivation* or *reversal* : un-furl, un-tie, un-roll.
Under, *beneath* : under-ground, under-sell, under-pay.
Up, *upwards* : up-raise, up-cast, up-hold.
With, *against, from, back* : with-stand, with-draw.

EXERCISE 87.

Mention each prefix, and give its meaning :—

Withhold, to-morrow, unhappy, mislead, instep, never, outdo, overthrow, uproar, enable, forlorn, foreshew, benight, beside, aboard, together, un-loose, underhand, bedizen, midshipman.

263. The **Latin Prefixes** are :—

- ✕ **A**, *ab, abs, from* : a-vert, ab-sorb, abs-tract.
Ad (a, ac, af, ag, al, am, an, ap, ar, as, at), *to* : ad-mit, a-scend, ac-cede, af-firm, ag-gravate, al-lude, am-munition, an-nounce, ap-ply, ar-rest, as-sume, at-tend.
Am (amb), *on both sides, round* : am-putate, amb-ition.
Ante (anti), *before* : ante-date, ante-chamber, anti-cipate.
Bene, *well* : bene-factor.
✕ **Bis**, *twice* ; **bi** (bin), *two* : bi-ped, bis-cuit, bin-ocular.
Circum (circu), *round* : circum-scribe, circu-it.
Cis, *on this side of* : cis-alpine.
Con (co, cog, col, com, cor), *together* : con-tend, co-equal, cog-nate, col-lect, com-pute, cor-rupt.
Contra (contro, Fr. counter), *against* : contra-dict, contro-vert, counter-part.
De, *down, from* : de-scend.
Demi, *half* : demi-god.
✕ **Dis** (di, dif), *asunder* : dis-miss, di-vide, dif-fer.
Equi, *equally* : equi distant.
Ex (e, ec, ef), *out of* : ex-press, e-ject, ec-centric, ef-flux.
Extra, *beyond* : extra-ordinary.
In (il, im, ir), *before a verb, into* : in-clude, il-lume, im-plore, ir-rigate.
✕ **In** (ig, il, im, ir), *before an adjective, not* : in-firm, ig-noble, il-legal, im-pure, ir-resolute.
Inter (intel, Fr. enter), *between, among* : inter-rupt, intel-lect, en-ter-prise.
Intra, *within* : intra-mural.
Intro, *within* : intro-duce.
Juxta, *nigh to* : juxta-position.
Male (mal), *ill* : male-ficent, mal-treat.
Non, *not* : non-juror, non-existent.
Ob (o, oc, of, op, os), *against* : ob-tain, o-mit, oc-cur, of-fer, op-press, os-tensible.

Per (pel, pol, Fr. par), *through* : per-mit, pel-lucid, pol-lute, par-don.
Post, *after* : post-script, puny (Fr. puiné, O.Fr. puis-né, Lat. post natus).

Prae (pre), *before* : pre-scribe.

Praeter (preter), *beside, contrary to* : preter-mit.

Pro (Fr. por, pur, pour), *before, for* : pro-long, por-tray or pour-tray, pur-chase.

Re (red), *back, again* : re-move, red-ecm.

Retro, *backward* : retro-spect.

Se (sed), *apart* : se-cede, sed-ition.

Semi, *half* : semi-breve.

Sine (sim, sin), *without* : sine-cure, sin-ple, sin-cere.

Sub (su, suc, suf, sug, sup, sur, sus), *under* : sub-ject, su-spect. suc-ceed.
 suf-fice, sug-gest, sup-port, sur-reptitious, sus-pend.

Subter, *beneath* : subter-fuge.

Super (Fr. sur), *over* : super-scribe, sur-vive.

Supra, *above* : supra-mundane.

Trans (tra, Fr. tres), *across* : trans-port, tra-duce, tres-pass.

Ultra, *beyond* : ultra-marine.

Vice (vis), *in place of* : vice-roy, vis-count.

EXERCISE 88.

Mention each prefix, and give its meaning :—

Antecedent, postpone, retrieve, retrograde, submit, adduce, percussion, circumference, semitone, transmit, extravagant, construct, equilateral, preface, preternatural, ultramontane, simple, progress, subterranean, suppress, explore, interjection, contravene, benediction, dissolve, infuse, inclement, intromit, bisect, obstruct, ambient, abdicate.

264. The Greek Prefixes are :—

Amphi, *both* : amphi-bious.

An (a, am), *not* : an-archy, a-pathy, am-brosial.

Ana, *up* : ana-logy.

Anti (ant), *against* : anti-pathy, ant-agonist.

Apo (aph), *from* : apo-stle, aph-orism.

Arch, *head* : arch-angel.

Auto, *self* : auto-graph.

Cata (cat, cath), *down* : cat-eract, cat-echism, cath-edral.

Dia (di), *through* : dia-meter, di-orama.

Dys, *ill* : dys-pepsia.

En (el, em), *in* : en-demic, el-lipsis, em-blem.

Epi (ep, eph), *upon* : epi-demic, ep-och, eph-emeral.

Eu (ev), *well* : eu-phony, ev-angelist.

Ex (ec), *out, from* : ex-odus, ec-stasy.

Hemi, *half* : hemi-sphere.

Hetero, *different* : hetero-geneous.

Homo, *the same* : homo-geneous.

Hyper, *over* : hyper-bolical.

Hypo (hyph), *under* : hypo-thesis, hyph-en.

Meta (met, meth), *change* : meta-phor, met-onymy, meth-od.

Mono (mon), *alone* : mono-tone, mon-arch.

Pan, *all* : pan-theon.

Para (*par*), *beside* : para-ble, par-allel.
Peri, *around* : peri-meter.
Philo (*phil*), *loving* : philo-sophy, phil-anthropy.
Poly, *many* : poly-syllable.
Pro, *before* : pro-gramme.
Pros, *towards* : pros-ody.
Pseudo, *false* : pseudo-nym.
Syn (*sy, syl, sym*), *with* : syn-tax, sy-stem, syl-lable, sym-pathy.

EXERCISE 89.

Mention each prefix, and give its meaning :—

Synthesis, amphitheatre, hypocrite, metamorphosis, philology, polygon, monogram, anomaly, pantheist, prologue, apology, diagram, autocrat, anatomy, architect, catastrophe, dysentery, antipodes, emphasis, enthusiasm, hemistich, eulogy, heterodox, proselyte, pseudo-apostle, period, paradox, metaphysics, hypocritical, homologous.

EXERCISE 90.

Mention each prefix, give its meaning, and say from what language it is derived :—

Offal, peripatetic, evangelist, ultra-liberal, awake, extract, exodus, antarctic, archbishop, mislead, semitone, depart, almost, unwise, parody, superstructure, dishonour, overhear, withdraw, irregular, ellipsis, diameter, sustain, surpass, forswear, foretell, malefactor, nonsense, purvey, advance, beneath, differ, automaton, traverse, counterfeit.

265. The English Suffixes of Nouns are :—

i. Denoting agent or doer :—

ar : beg-g-ar, li-ar.
er : read-er, paint-er, talk-er, spid-er (= spinner).
or : sail-or, tail-or.
yer, ier : law-yer, saw-yer, cloth-ier.
en (feminine) : vix-en.
ard, art : slug-g-ard, drunk-ard, brag-g-art, wiz-ard, lag-g-ard.
ster, properly feminine, as, spin-ster ; but now used as masculine, as, pun-ster, web-ster (= weaver).
man : wood-man, sword-s-man, sport-s-man.
woman, maid : fish-woman, milk-maid.
ther, ter : bro-ther, daugh-ter.
ward, keeper : bear-ward, hay-ward.

ii. Denoting abstract ideas, as, state, quality, action, being, condition, etc. :—

craft : priest-craft, wood-craft, witch-craft.
dom : king-dom, martyr-dom, thral-dom, hali-dom (holy state), earldom.
ship, scape : hard-ship, friend-ship, wor-ship (= worth-ship), land-scape.
hood : man-hood, hardi-hood, girl-hood.
head (= hood) : God-head.
kind : man-kind, woman-kind.
ness : dark-ness, white-ness, good-ness.

th : leng-th (from long), mir-th (fr. merry), dea-th (fr. die), tru-th (fr. true), steal-th, dear-th, heal-th, fil-th (fr. file in de-file), streng-th (fr. strong), slo-th (fr. slow), bir-th (fr. bear), ear-th (fr. ear, to plough).

t, passive, *that which is made or done* : sigh-t (fr. see), fligh-t, heigh-t, weigh-t, wof-t (fr. weave), drif-t (fr. drive), gif-t, clef-t.

y : beggar-y.

ery : mock-ery, cook-ery, brav-ery.

ry (collective) : husband-ry, fine-ry, chival-ry.

try : pan-try (a place for bread, Fr. *pain*).

ric : bishop-ric.

ter : laugh-ter, slaugh-ter (fr. slay).

red : hat-red, kin-d-red.

lock : wed-lock.

ledge : know-ledge.

ing (O.E. *ung*) : read-ing, writ-ing.

age (properly of French origin) : bond-age, till-age.

iii. Denoting diminution, *i.e.*, a smaller form or less degree of an object or quality :—

ock : hill-ock, bull-ock, Poll-ock (fr. Paul).

ie,* y : bird-ie, lass-ie, Will-ie, Ann-ie, bab-y.

kin : lamb-kin, fir-kin (fr. four, a firkin being one-fourth of a barrel), bump-kin, bus-kin, pip-kin (fr. pipe), man-ni-kin, Wat-kin, Simp-kin (fr. Samuel), Peter-kin, Haw-kin (fr. Hal, Harry), Wil-kin.

ing : farth-ing (fr. fourth), tith-ing, Rid-ing (fr. thrid = third).

ling : dar-ling (fr. dear), gos-ling (fr. goose), duck-ling, found-ling. Ground-ling, hire-ling, world-ling have a depreciative sense.

et : pock-et, lock-et, hatch-et, thick-et, mall-et, latch-et, cask-et.

let : ring-let, stream-let, brook-let, leaf-let.

iv. Denoting instrument or means by which something is done :—

le : gird-le, hand-le, thimb-le (fr. thumb), spin-d-le, set-t-le.

el : satch-el (fr. sack), shov-el, swiv-el, tram-m-el.

er, r : fing-er (fr. fang, to take), lai-r (fr. lie), wat-er (fr. wet).

ther, ter, der : fea-ther, mur-der, rud-der.

v. Forming patronymies, *i.e.*, words denoting sonship or descent :—

ing : Athel-ing, Elis-ing, and in names of places and persons.

son : John-son, Wil-son, Thom-son.

266. Nouns are also formed by the suffixes :—

d : see-d (fr. sow), cu-d (fr. chew), for-d (faran, to go).

k : haw-k, mil-k, yol-k (*i.e.*, yel-k, fr. yellow).

m : bloo-m (fr. blow), sea-m (fr. sew), qual-m (fr. quail).

ow : shad-ow (fr. shade), mead-ow.

en, n : ward-en, maid-en, heav-en. Chick-en (chick = cock) and kit-ten (kit = cat) are diminutives.

EXERCISE 91.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Napkin, darkness, sailor, songster, wisdom, width, sight, wilding, chicken, hatchet, ringlet, bloom, girdle, helmsman, lordship, sluggard, mockery, hatred, walking, firkin, wedlock, hillock, pantry, knowledge, stealth.

267. The English Suffixes of Adjectives are :—

i. Denoting quality :—

like : lady-like, war-like.

ly, *like* : gentleman ly, king-ly, man-ly, spright-ly.

able, ible (properly, Latin), *may or can be* : eat-able, drink-able.

ish, *rather so* : thiev-ish, girl-ish, whit-ish.

less, negative, *void of* : law-less, sense-less.

ful, *having or full of* : fear-ful, fruit-ful, hope-ful.

some, *partaking of a quality*. tire-some, hand-some, buxom (= buck-some), irk-some.

y, *pertaining to* : might-y, head-y, storm-y.

ey, *abounding in* : clay-ey.

er : cleve-er, bitt-er (fr. bite).

fast : stead-fast, sooth-fast, shame-fast (written "shame-faced").

le : litt-le, britt-le, id-le.

ing, participial adjective active : pleas-ing, truth-tell-ing.

ed, participial adjective passive : wretch-ed, rag-g-ed, neat-hand-ed.

en, participial adjective passive : molt-en, drunk-en, forlor-n, tor-n.

ii. Denoting material :—

en, *made of* : lead-en, gold-en, leather-n.

iii. Denoting number :—

teen, *ten* : four-teen = four + ten.

th : four-th, seven-th, nin-th, etc., ordinal numerals.

ty, *ten* : for-ty, seven-ty, nine-ty, etc., cardinal numerals.

fold : four-fold, seven-fold, mani-fold.

iv. Denoting place or direction :—

ern : north-ern, south-ern.

erly : north-erly, south-erly.

ward : down-ward, north-ward, fro-ward, awk-ward (awk = left).

Obs.—The suffix *fast* occurs in *stead-fast*.

EXERCISE 92.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Godlike, easterly, tenth, upward, dewy, cloud-compelling, frolicsome, lovely, fifty, sixteen, truthful, blackish, houseless, booted, fordable, tenfold, silvern, silvery, steadfast, wooden, tearful, hilly, winsome, froward, ninety.

268. The English Suffixes of Verbs are :—

i. Denoting *to make* :—

en : weak-en, strength-en, dark-en, dead-en, sweet-en.

se : clean-se, rin-se.

ish : burn-ish, fin-ish.

y : wor-r-y (fr. wear), sul-l-y (fr. soil).

ii. Forming frequentatives, or words denoting the repetition of an act, and hence a habit or occupation :—

k : tal-k (fr. tell), har-k (fr. hear), stal-k (fr. steal).

le : hand-le, start-le, strag-g-le (fr. stray), wad-d-le (fr. wade), nib-b-le (fr. nip), crum-ble, crack-le, throt-t-le (fr. throat).

l, after a vowel or r : knee-l, draw-l, snar-l (fr. sneer).

er : glim-m-er (fr. gleam), wand-er (fr. wend), frit-t-er (fr. fret), stag-g-er, clamb-er, shiv-er, ling-er (fr. long).

on : reck-on, blaz-on, beck-on.

om, m : blossom (fr. blush), glea-m (fr. glow).

EXERCISE 93.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Dibble, kneel, falter, shiver, gleam, worry, cleanse, weaken, beckon, wander, talk.

269. The English Suffixes of Adverbs are :—

i. Denoting manner :—

ly, like : bad-ly, wise-ly.

way, ways : al-ways.

wise : other-wise, like-wise.

long : head-long.

s, properly a genitive ending : beside-s, need-s, while-s, hereabout-s.

ii. Denoting time :—

ce : on-ce, twi-ce.

times : four-times, some-times, often-times.

st : whil-st. Compare the prepositions *among-st*, *amid-st*. The *st* is properly the superlative affix.

om, properly a dative ending . whil-om, seld-om.

n : whe-n, the-n.

iii. Denoting place :—

ward : for-ward.

wards : back-wards.

re, at or in (rest) : he-re, the-re, whe-re.

nice, from (motion) : he-nice, the-nice, whe-nice.

ther, to (motion) : hi-ther, thi-ther, whi-ther.

EXERCISE 94.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Badly, seldom, hither, straightway, nowise, hitherward, sidelong, besides, where, once, whilst, hence.

270. The Latin Suffixes of Nouns are :—

i. Denoting agent or person :—

an, ain : artis-an, vill-ain.

ate : advoc-ate, cur-ate.

tor, sor : ac-tor, execu-tor, spon-sor.

trix, tress : execu-trix, moni-tress.
ant, ent, participial ending : defend-ant, reg-ent
eer, ier : chariot-eer, cash-ier.
ee, *person acted upon* : legatee.
ive, *person acted upon* : capt-ive.
iff : cait-iff, plaint-iff.
ary, *a craftsman* : statu-ary, lapid-ary.

ii. Denoting abstract ideas :—

age, *act of doing, thing done*, also *state* : pass-age, parent-age.
ion : opin-ion, domin-ion.
tion, sion, *state of* : mo-tion, acces-sion.
ment : move-ment, discern-ment.
t, te, *thing done* : fac-t, jes-t, effec-t, da-te.
ty, ity : pover-ty, dign-ity.
tude : forti-tude, grati-tude.
our, or : hon-our, ard-our, err-or.
y : miser-y.
cy : clemen-cy, secre-cy.
ce : justi-ce.
ure : verd-ure, cult-ure.
ture, sure : pic-ture, era-sure.
ance, ence, verbal-noun endings : abund-ance, vigil-ance, pres-ence.
lence : pesti-lence.
escence, *growing more and more so* : incand-escence, putr-escence.
cy, *office or state* : cura-cy, magistra-cy.
mony : patri-mony, matri-mony.
and, end, gerundial suffixes : vi-and, leg-end.

iii. Denoting place :—

ary, *place for or collection of* : libr-ary, gran-ary.
tory, *place for doing* : dormi-tory.

iv. Forming diminutives :—

icle : cub-icle.
ule : glob-ule.
cule : animal-cule.
culum : animal-culum
cle, le : corpus-cle, circ-le.
el : lib-el, chap-el.
et : lanc-et.
aster : poet-aster.

v. Denoting instrument :—

tre : scep-tre.
chre : sepul-chre.
bule, ble : vesti-bule, sta-ble
cle : vehi-cle.
brum : candela-brum.
ment : cape-ment.

Obs.—*Oon* in *ball-oon* is an augmentative ending, since it implies a larger form or higher degree.

EXERCISE 95.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Courage, endurance, occasion, matrimony, vehicle, particle, globule, grandeur, sceptre, culture, secrecy, plaintiff, mortgagee, sponsor, administratrix, dignity, labour, discretion, opinion, chapel.

271. The Latin Suffixes of Adjectives are :—

i. Denoting quality :—

al, *belonging to* : leg-al, reg-al.

an, ain : hum-an, cert-ain.

ian : Christ-ian.

ane, ene, ine : mund-ane, terr-ene, femin-ine.

ic, ical : civ-ic, naut-ical.

ique : un-ique, obl-ique.

esque : pictur-esque.

able, ible, *that may or can be* : port-able, ed-ible.

il, ile, tile : civ-il, serv-ile, vola-tile.

ar : sol-ar.

ary : auxili-ary.

ous, *full of* : copi-ous.

ose : verb-ose, grandi-ose.

aceous, acious : crust-aceous, viv-acious.

tory, sory : ama-tory, cur-sory.

id : ferv-id, tim-id, horr-id, ac-id.

ive, tive, sive : express-ive, cap-tive, pen-sive.

ate : consider-ate, sed-ate.

ferous, *bearing* : somni-ferous, carboni-ferous.

cund : jo-cund, rubi-cund.

fic, *making* : terri-fic, horri-fic.

bund : mori-bund.

ant, ent, participial endings : eleg-ant, flu-ent.

olent, *full of* : vi-olent.

ulent : turb-ulent.

escent, *growing more and more* : conval-escent.

and, end, *that must be* : multiplic-and, divid-end (used as nouns).

endous (=end-ous) : stup-endous, trem-endous.

ii. Denoting material :—

ine : sal-ine.

eous : lign-cous, vitr-eous.

iii. Denoting degree :—

ior, comparative ending : super-ior, infer-ior, jun-ior.

me, superlative ending : supre-me, extre-me.

iv. Denoting number :—

ple : sim-ple, tri-ple.

ble : dou-ble.

EXERCISE 96.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :

Rampant, equal, honorary, desolate, favourable, picturesque, servile, glorious, simple, jocose, Christian, extreme, turbulent, timid, solar, moribund, fluent, unique, cursory, saline.

272. The Latin Suffixes of Verbs are :—

i. Denoting *to make* :—

fy : magni-fy, grati-fy, fructi-fy.

ite : exped-ite.

ate : hesit-ate, vac-ate.

it : ed-it, cred-it, aud-it.

ii. Denoting *to become more and more* :—

esce : coal-esce.

EXERCISE 97.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Alienate, simplify, terminate, facilitate, expedite, credit, horrify, edit, coalesce, limit.

273. The Greek Suffixes of Nouns are :—

i. Denoting agent or person :—

t : prophe-t.

te : athle-te.

ist : soph-ist, botan-ist.

cian : physi-cian, mechani-cian.

ine : hero-ine.

ite : Israel-ite.

ii. Denoting abstract ideas :—

sm, asm, ism : cha sm, pleon-asm, soph-ism.

ma : panora-ma.

sis, *process* (Norman-French *sy*) : cri-sis, empha-sis, drop-sy.

ad : Ili-ad.

id : Æne-id.

y, e : eulog-y, monarch-y, epitom-e, catastroph-e.

ic, ics, tic, tics : rhetor-ic, eth-ics, arithme-tic, sta-tics.

iii. Forming diminutives :—

isk : aster-isk, obel-isk

iv. Denoting place :—

tery : baptis-tery, monas-tery.

EXERCISE 98.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Music, magnetism, monarchy, basilisk, analyst, monastery, triad, diorama, dynamics, athlete, politician, etymology.

274. The Greek Suffixes of Adjectives are :—

i. Denoting quality :—

ic : angel-ic, hieroglyph-ic.

ical (Gr. *ic*, Lat. *al*) : mechan-ical, polem-ical.

idal : pyram-idal.

iac : demon iac.

tic, tical : splene-tic, splene-tical.

stic, stical : pla-stic, sophi-stical.

oid, oidal, *resembling in form or character* : spher-oid, spher-oidal.

ii. Denoting material :—

ine : cedr-ine.

EXERCISE 99.

Mention each suffix, and give its meaning :—

Harmonic, maniac, cycloidal, elastic, mimic, practical, petrine, didactic, oligarchical, rhomboidal.

275. The Greek Suffix of Verbs is :—

ize, to make : bapt-ize, critic-ize, botan-ize.

EXERCISE 100.

Mention each suffix, give its meaning, and say from what language it is derived :—

Botanize, perambulate, linger, magnify, drunkard, argillaceous, arithmetical, ligneous, ragged, verbose, agitate, angelic, triad, sanctimony, trustee, laughter, obelisk, lassie, brewster, anatomy, hatred, politician, barrister, sophist, shepherdess, secretary, cleanse, creation, laboratory, sully, destructive, analysis, delicacy, finery, bondage, bishopric, oration, panorama, pestiferous, legible, aneurism, wealth, flood, lambkin, rubescent, pyramidal, fertile, lively, southward, glimmer, canine, cedrine, marine, fervid, wooden, patient, lower, consolatory, valour, duckling.

CHAPTER III.—COMPOUND WORDS.

276. In most compound words the second word indicates the genus or class, and the first word the species or the quality that distinguishes the object denoted by the compound from the class : thus, *cornfield* means a particular kind of *field*, viz., one that grows corn.

277. The accent is placed upon the first or defining word : as, *báckbite*, *óutlet*, *lándbreeze*.

I. Compound Nouns.

278. Compound Nouns consist of :—

1. A noun preceded by a noun : as, *serrant-man*, *moonlight*, *railway*, *man-eater*, *torchlight*, *daystar*, *paper-cap*, *bookcase*, *shoemaker*, *steamboat*.

Obs.—This is the largest class. Sometimes a genitive case ending occurs : as, *craftsman*, *herdsman*, *catspaw*.

2. A noun preceded by an adjective : as, *quicksilver*, *freeman*, *nobleman*, *blackbird*, *bluebell*, *halfpenny*.

3. A noun preceded by a transitive verb : as, *dareddevil*, *spitfire*, *pick-pocket*, *turnspit*, *make-shift*, *catchpenny*, *pastime* (= pass-time), *tell-tale*.

Obs.—The verb governs the noun.

4. A verb preceded by a noun : as, *godsend*, *windfall*.

5. A noun preceded by a gerund : as, *turning-lathe*, *spinning-jenny*, *riding-habit*.

6. A noun preceded by an adverb : as, *foreknowledge, afterthought, by-law, by-word, offset, onset, inroad.*
7. A noun preceded by a preposition : as, *forenoon, afternoon.*
8. A verb preceded by an adverb : as, *welcome, inlet.*
9. An adjective preceded by a noun : as, *court-martial, knight-errant, Theatre-Royal, Prince-Regent.*
10. A phrase : as, *ne'er-do-well, forget-me-not, hearsay, standstill.*

EXERCISE 101.

Divide each compound, say of what parts of speech it is composed, and give its meaning : thus,

Tea—a noun
Spoon—a noun } tea-spoon = a spoon for stirring tea.

Farm-yard, bookstand, bread-basket, freeman, spendthrift, breakfast, foresight, by-lane, welcome, holdfast, errand-boy, racehorse, thoroughfare, riding-whip, afterthought, stopgap, bluebeard, quicksilver, outlet, cousin-german.

II. Compound Adjectives.

279. Compound Adjectives consist of :—

1. An adjective preceded by a noun : as, *snow-white, blood-red, ice-cold, coal-black, ankle-deep, foot-sore, nut-brown.*
2. An adjective preceded by an adjective : as, *blue-black, yellowish-white, blue-green.*
3. An adjective preceded by an adverb : as, *all-powerful, over-strict, non-resident, up-right.*
4. An incomplete participle preceded by an adjective or adverb : as, *all-seeing, all-ruling, soft-flowing, fast-sailing, merry-making.*
5. A complete participle preceded by an adjective or adverb : as, *new-born, free-spoken, dear-bought, fresh-made, over-fed, inbred, new-laid.*
6. An incomplete participle preceded by a noun : as, *fruit-bearing, music-making, tale-bearing, time-serving, truth-telling, heart-rending.*
7. A complete participle preceded by a noun : as, *heaven-born, bed-ridden, blood-stained, tempest-tossed.*

280. Many adjectives are at once compound and derived. They are usually formed by adding *d* or *ed* to compounds made up of—

1. A noun preceded by a noun : as, *web-footed, iron-jointed, ox-eyed.*
2. A noun preceded by an adjective : as, *white-robed, blue-eyed, long-legged.*

EXERCISE 102.

Divide each compound, say of what parts of speech it is composed, and give its meaning :—

Sky-blue, fair-haired, heart-rending, all-powerful, full-blown, ell-long, close-grained, underdone, homebound, full-eared, long-necked, grass-green, well-built.

III. Compound Pronouns.

281. Compound Pronouns consist of :—

1. The word *self* preceded by a personal pronoun : as, *myself, thyself* (§ 80).

2. The word *own* preceded by a personal pronoun : as, *my own*, *thy own* (§ 80).

Obs.—These compounds are always written as separate words.

3. The words *so*, *ever*, or *so-ever* preceded by a relative or interrogative pronoun : as, *whoso*, *whoever*, *whosoever* (§§ 83, 85).

N.B.—The compound relative *what* is compound in meaning but not in form.

EXERCISE 103.

Divide each compound into its separate parts :—

Himself, her own, whatsoever, whoso, their own, thyself, one's own, themselves, whichever, whoever.

IV. Compound Verbs.

282. Compound Verbs consist of :—

1. A verb preceded by an adverb : as, *foretell*, *outdo*, *undervalue*, *overthrow*.

Obs.—Akin to this class are preposition-verbs : as, *to laugh-at*, *to swerve-from*, etc.

2. A verb preceded by a noun : as, *top-dress*, *henpeck*, *browbeat*.

3. A verb preceded by an adjective : as, *rough-hew*.

EXERCISE 104.

Divide each compound, say of what parts of speech it is composed, and give its meaning :—

Overlap, backbite, whitewash, understate, waylay, foretell.

V. Compound Adverbs.

283. Compound Adverbs consist of :—

1. A preposition preceded by an adverb : as, *therefrom*, *whereby*, *hereupon*, *forthwith*.

2. An adverb preceded by an adverb : as, *thereabout*, *thenceforward*.

3. An adverb preceded by an adjective : as, *somehow*, *somewhere*, *anywhere*, *also*, *everywhere*.

4. A noun preceded by a noun : as, *piecemeal*, *sideways*, *lengthways*.

5. A noun preceded by an adjective : as, *straightway*, *nowise*, *otherwise*, *yesterday*, *meanwhile*.

6. A noun preceded by a preposition : as, *indeed*, *indoors*, *upstairs*, *forsooth*.

Obs.—Akin to these are such words as *peradventure*, *perhaps*.

7. An abbreviated phrase : as, *head-foremost* (= head being foremost).

Obs. 1.—Many compound adverbs are formed from compound adjectives by adding *ly* : as, *left-handedly*.

Obs. 2.—Many adverbial phrases, of which the component words are written separately, are treated as compound adverbs (§ 170).

EXERCISE 105.

Divide each compound, say of what parts of speech it is composed, and give its meaning :—

Always, sometimes, meanwhile, downstairs, henceforward, heretofore, lengthways, thereupon, nowhere, hereby.

VI. Compound Prepositions.

284. Compound Prepositions consist of :—

1. A preposition preceded by a preposition : as, *into, upon, within*.
2. A noun preceded by a preposition : as, *inside*.
3. A phrase : as, *according to, by means of* (§ 178).

EXERCISE 106.

Divide each compound and say of what parts of speech it consists :—
Inside, into, underneath, throughout, without, owing to, upon, within.

VII. Compound Conjunctions.

285. Compound Conjunctions consist of :—

1. A noun preceded by an adjective : as, *likewise, otherwise*.
2. An adverb preceded by an adverb : as, *moreover, whenever, however, whereas*.
3. A preposition preceded by an adverb : as, *wherefore, therefore, whereafter, whereat, whereby*.
4. A conjunction preceded by an adjective : as, *although*.
5. An abbreviated phrase : as, *albeit, howbeit, nevertheless, notwithstanding*.

N.B.—Many compound conjunctions have their parts written as separate words : as, *according as, as soon as*, etc. (§§ 187, 190).

EXERCISE 107.

Divide each compound, and say of what parts of speech it consists :—
Furthermore, whereupon, likewise, wherein, moreover, wherewith, howbeit, nevertheless, however, albeit.

VIII. Disguised Compounds.

286. Many words, really compounds, do not appear to be such. In others the component parts are difficult to recognise. Such are the following :—

Apricot, formerly “apricock,” Fr. *abricot*, Lat. (*malum*) *præcox*, early ripe (apple) ; **as**, O.E. *als*, *eall-swa*, also ; **atone**, at-one, to cause to be at one ; **ballast**, O.E. *bat-last*, boat-load ; **bandog**, band-dog ; **barn**, O.E. *berern*, *bere-aern*, bere-place or barley-house ; **biscuit**, Fr. from Lat. *bis coctus*, twice cooked ; **bridal**, bride-ale, bride-feast ; **burglar**, Fr. *burglaire*, Lat. *burgilatro*, burg- or house-robber ; **chaffer**, *chap-fare*, way of bargaining ; **constable**, Fr. *connétable*, Lat. *comes stabuli*, count of the stable, master of the horse ; **cormorant**, Fr., Ital. *corvo marino*, sea-crow ; **curfew**, Fr. *couvre-feu*, cover-fire ; **daisy**, day’s eye ; **doff**, do off ; **don**, do on ; **every**, O.E. *aefer-aelc*, ever-each ; **futtocks**, foot-hooks or foot-locks ; **garlick**, gar leek, spear leek (O.E. *gār*, a spear) ; **goshawk**, goose hawk ; **gospel**, O.E. *god-spell*, good news ; **gossamer**, God’s summer ; **gossip**, O.E. *god-sib*, God-related originally “sponsor” ; **groundsel**, O.E. *grund-swelige*, ground-dwelling plant ; **grunsel**, O.E. *grund-syl*, ground-sill, threshold ; **halliards** or **halyards**, haul yards ; **handsel**, O.E. *hand-selan*, hand-to give ;

heifer, O.E. *hea-fœre*, stall-cow; huzzy, O.E. *hus-wif*, house-wife; icicle, O.E. *is-gicel*, lump of ice; jeopardy, Fr. *jeu parti*, Lat. *jocus partitus*, a divided game, an even chance; kerchief, Fr. *couvre chef*, cover-head; lammass, O.E. *hlaf-maesse*, loaf-mass or feast; lamprey, Fr. *lamproie*, Lat. *lampetra*, lambo-petra, lick-rock; lapwing, lepewing (from its mode of flight); liquorice, Gr. *glykyrrhiza*, sweet-root; midriff, O.E. *mid-hrif*, mid-body; neighbour, O.E. *neah-bur*, near dweller; nightingale, night singer; nostril, nose-thrill, nose-hole; not, naught, ne-aught, not anything; orchard, O.E. *ort-yard*, root garden; osprey, Fr. *orfraie*, Lat. *ossifraga*, bone-breaker; porcupine, Ital. *porco-spinoso*, Lat. *porcus spinosus*, thorny hog; porpoise, Ital. *porco pesce*, Lat. *porcus-piscis*, hog-fish; prithee, I pray thee; quandary, Fr. *qu'en dirai-je?* What shall I say of it? samphire, Fr. *Saint Pierre*, the herb of St. Peter; scabbard, O.E. *scauberk*, scraper (sharp instrument), to hide; sheriff, O.E. *scire-gerefa*, shire-reeve; stirrup, O.E. *stige-rap*, mounting rope; such, O.E. *swa-lic*, so like; tadpole, toad head; vinegar, Fr. *vin-aigre*, sour wine; viper, Lat. *vipera*, for *viri-pera*, the bringer forth alive; walrus, whale horse; warlock, O.E. *waer-loga*, treaty breaker; wassail, O.E. *waes hael*, be of good health; which, *hwa-lic*, who like, Scotch *whilk*; whiskey, Keltic *uisge-beatha*, water of life; window, Icelandic *windanga*, wind eye; woman, O.E. *wipnan*, wifman.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 276—286.

1. Which part of a compound indicates the genus? 2. Which part indicates the species? 3. Where is the accent placed in a compound? 4. Of what parts of speech do compound nouns consist? 5. Of what do compound adjectives consist? 6. Show how adjectives may be at once compound and derived. 7. Of what do compound pronouns consist? 8. Of what do compound verbs consist? 9. Of what do compound adverbs consist? 10. Of what do compound prepositions consist? 11. Of what do compound conjunctions consist? 12. Give a list of disguised compounds.

CHAPTER IV.—OLD ENGLISH WORDS.

287. The principal words in the oldest form of the English language from which modern English words are taken are as follows:—

| | |
|--|--|
| Ac, an oak: acorn, barnacle, Auckland. | Ancleow, the joining of the foot and leg: ankle. |
| Acan, to feel pain: ache. | Andswerian, to reply: answer. |
| Aesian, to ask: ask. | Angel, hook: angle. |
| Adl, disease: aildlel. | Appel, apple: apple. |
| Æcer, a field: acre. | Arowe, arrow: arrow. |
| Æfen, even: eventide. | Arm, arm: armlet. |
| Æfre, always: ever, every. | Assa, ass: Compare Ger. <i>esel</i> , Lat. <i>asinus</i> . |
| Ælc, each: every = ever-each. | Ata, oat: oats. |
| Ælmesse, alms: alms. | Ath, swearing: oath. |
| Ær, before: ere, early, erst, or. | Ba, the two: both. |
| Ærian, to plough: ear. | Bacan, to bake: bacon, batch, unbaked. |
| Æsc, ash: Ascot, Es-combe, Ashby. | Baec, back: backbite, backwards, aback. |
| Æs-ec, embers: ashes. | Baelg, a bag: belly, bellows, bilge, bulge, billow. |
| Æспен, a kind of poplar: aspen. | Baer, bare: barefoot, barefaced, barely. |
| Æstpornan, to kick: spurn. | Bæst, inner bark: bast. |
| Æthelc, noble: Atheling, Ethelbert. | Bætan, to rein in: bit (for horses). |
| Ætwitan, to reproach: twit. | Baþh, a bath: Bath, bathe. |
| Agan, to possess (past, ahte): own, ought. | Bald, brace: bold, Ethelbald, Baldwin. |
| Aht, anything: aught, naught. | |
| An, one: an, a, any, only. | |

Ban, *a bone* : bone.
 Bana, *death, killer* : bane, ratsbane, henbane.
 Banc, *a seat* : bench.
 Bar, *a boar* : boar.
 Bat, *a boat* : boatswain.
 Bereftan, *behind* : abaft.
 Bealu, *bale* : baleful.
 Beam, *a tree, anything in a straight line* : beam, hornbeam, sunbeam, Bampton.
 * Bean, *a bean* : bean.
 Bearn, *a child* : bairn.
 Beatan (past, beot), *to beat* : batter, beetle.
 Becuman, *to happen* : become.
 Bed, *bed* : bedridden, bedstead.
 Bed, *a prayer, from bidden, to pray* : bedesman, bead. ✕
 Behofian, *to require* : behove.
 Beodan, *to order* : bid, beadle.
 Beon, *to be* : become, albeit.
 Beorgan, *to protect* : burg, borough, burrow, harbour, harbinger, borrow.
 Beorht, *bright* : Albert.
 Beran, *to bear* : burden, bier, bairn, birth, berth, brood, burden, bird.
 Bere, *barley* : barn, barley.
 Bereafian, *to rob* : bereave.
 Betan, *to make good* : better, best, to boot, bootless.
 Bienen, *to nod* : beck, beckon, beacon. —
 Bidan, *to wait* : bide, abide.
 Bill, *a falchion* : bill-hook.
 * Bindan, *to bind* : band, bond, bondage, bundle, woodbine.
 Birce, *birch* : birch.
 Bisgian, *to be engaged* : busy, business.
 Bitan, *to bite* : bit, beetle, bait, bitter.
 Blac, *pale* : bleach, bleak.
 + Blac, *black* : black, blacking.
 Blæsan, *to blow* : blast, bluster.
 Blendan, *to mix* : blend.
 Bleo, *colour* : blue.
 Bletsian, *to bless* : blithe, bliss.
 Blind, *blind* : blindness.
 Blod, *blood* : bleed.
 Blowian, *to blossom* : blow (of flowers), blood, blade, blossom, bloom.
 Boc, *book* : boc-land.
 Bodian, *to announce* : forebode.
 Bodig, *the chest* : body, bodice.
 Bolla, *a bowl* : bowl, bolster.
 Bonda, *a holder* : husband.
 Bord, *board* : boarder.
 Bosm, *the breast* : bosom.
 Bot, *remedy* : bootless, to boot.
 Brad, *broad* : breadth, Bradford.
 Brægen, *brain* : brains.
 Bræs, *brass* : braten.
 Bræth, *breath* : breathe.
 Bræw, *brow* : eyebrow.
 Brecan, *to break* : brake, bray, breach, breakers, bracken, brick, breakfast, breakwater.
 Breost, *breast* : abreast.
 Broowan, *to brew* : broth, brose, barley bree.
 Brer, *briar* : sweetbriar.
 Bricg, *bridge* : Cambridge.

Brid, *the young of any animal* : bird.
 Bridan, *to braid* : bridle.
 Bringan, *to bring* : bringing.
 Broe, *a brook* : brooklet.
 Broc, *a badger* : Broxbourne (badgers' stream).
 Brom, *broom* : Brompton.
 Brother, *brother* : brethren, brotherhood.
 Bryd, *a bride* : bridegroom, bridal.
 Buan, *to cultivate* : boor, neighbour.
 Buc, *a pitcher* : bucket.
 Bugan, *to bend* : bay, bight, bow, bugle, bough, elbow, buxom.
 Bur, *a dwelling* : bower.
 Burh, *a town, a fort* : borough, burgh, Edinburgh, Canterbury.
 Byrgan, *to bury* : burial.
 Byrnan, *to burn* : brimstone, brown, brunt, brand, brandy, brindled.
 Cald, *cold* : chill, cool, Caldwell, Colebrook.
 Calu, *bald* : callow.
 Carian, *to care* : careful, chary.
 Catt, *cat* : catkin, kitten, caterpillar.
 Ceaca, *cheek* : cheeks.
 Ceafu, *chaff* : chaff.
 Cealf, *calf* : calve Calverley, Kelvedon.
 Ceapian, *to buy* : cheap, chapman, chaffer, Cheapside.
 Cearcian, *to creak* : cark, chirp, chaffer.
 Cemban, *to comb* : kempster, unkempt.
 Cennan, *to bring forth* : kindle, kin, kind, kindred, kindly.
 Ceol, *a small ship* : keel, Chelsea.
 Ceorfan, *to carve* : carver.
 Ceorl, *a husbandman* : churl, carle.
 Ceosan, *to pick out* : choose. —
 Ccowan, *to chew* : chew, cud.
 Cepan, *to keep* : keepsake.
 Cetel, *kettle* : kettle-drum.
 Cidan, *to reprove* : chide.
 Cild, *child* : childhood, childish, Childermas.
 Cin, *chin* : chin.
 Clæne, *clean* : cleanse.
 Clam, *that which is clammy or holds fast* : clam, clamp, clump, clammy.
 Clath, *cloth* : clothe, clothier.
 Cleofan, *to cleave* : cleaver.
 Cluegge, *a bell* : clock.
 Clufan, *to cleave* : cliff, cleft, cloven.
 Clypian, *to call* : yclept.
 Clyppan, *to embrace* : clip.
 Cnafa, *a boy, servant* : knave.
 Cnawan, *to know* : knowledge.
 Cnedan, *to knead* : kneading-trough.
 Cneow, *knee* : kneel.
 Cniht, *a youth* : knight.
 Cnyttan, *to knit* : knot.
 Coc, *cock* : chicken, chickweed, chicken-pox.
 Comb, *valley* : Boscomb, Compton, Wycombe.
 Corn, *seed* : corn, pepper-corn, kernel.
 Coss, *kiss* : kissing.
 Cræft, *art* : craft, crafty, handicraft.
 Cræt, *cart* : carter, cartage.
 Craflan, *to crave* : craven.
 Cran, *crane* : Cranbourne.

- Crane, *weak*: cranky.
 Crawn, *to crow*: crow, crowbar.
 Creopan, *to creep*: creeper.
 Cric, *bent*: crutch, crook, crooked, crotch, crocket, cricket.
 Cu, *cow*: kine.
 Cue, *cwie, alive*: quick, quicken, quickset, couch-grass, quicklime, quicksand, quicksilver.
 Cuman, *to come*: comely.
 Cunnan, *to know*: can, ken, con, cunning, king, uncouth (= unknown), canny, ale conner (inspector of ales).
 Cwæthan, *to say*: quoth, bequeath.
 Cwellan, *to slay*: kill, quell, quail.
 Cwen, *a woman*: queen, quean.
 Cwencan, *to quench*: quench.
 Cwysan, *to crush*: quash, squeeze.
 Cyning, *king*: Kingston.
 Cyrran, *to turn*: jar, charwoman.
 Dæg, *day*; dagnian, *to dawn*: day, dawn, daisy.
 Dæl, *a part*; daelan, *to divide*: deal, dole, to deal, dale, dell.
 Deaf, *without hearing*: deaf, deafen.
 Deag, *colour*: dye.
 Dearran, *to dare*: daring.
 Death, *death*: deathless.
 Deawian, *to moisten*: dew, thaw, dough, dewlap.
 Delfan, *to dig*: delve.
 Deman, *to judge*: deem, doom, doomster, dempster, Doomsday.
 Denu, *a vale*: dene, Walden, Tenterden.
 Deofan, *to dive*: diver.
 Deop, *deep*: depth, Deptford.
 Deor, *a wild animal*: deer, Durham, Derby.
 Deor, *dear*: dearth, darling, endear.
 Deore, *dark*: darken.
 Die, *dyke*: ditch.
 Dihtan, *to prepare*: dight.
 Disc, *a plate*: disc, dish, desk.
 Dohtor, *daughter*: daughter.
 Dol, *foolish*: dull, dolt.
 Don, *to do or put*: do, don, doff, deed.
 Drælan, *to fear*: dread, dreadful.
 Dragan, *to draw*: drag, draw, draught, dray, drabble, dredge.
 Drencan, *to soak*: drench.
 Dreogan, *to work*: drudge.
 Dreorig, *bloody, sad*: drear, dreary.
 Drifan, *to drive*: driver, drift, drove.
 Drigan, *to dry*: dry, drag, drought.
 Drincan, *to drink*: drunk, drunkard.
 Dripan, *to drop*: drip, dribble, dribble, drivel, droop.
 Dugan, *to be worth*: do (in "How do you do?"), doughy.
 Dumb, *without speech*: dumb, dummy.
 Dun, *a hill*: downs, Snowdon, Huntingdon.
 Duru, *a door*: doorstep.
 Dust, *dust*: dusty, dustpan.
 Dwinan, *to pine*: dwindle.
 Dynan, *to dine*: dinner.
 Dyne, *wise*: dynan, *to make a noise*: din, dun.
 Dynt, *a stroke*: dint, dent, dimple.
 Dyppan, *to dip*: dip, deep, dive.
 Dysig, *foolish*: dizzy, dizziness.
 Ea, *running water*: eddy, island, Anglesey.
 Eac, *also*: eke, nickname (an eke name).
 Eage, *the eye*: eye, daisy, Egbert, eye-bright.
 Eald, *old*: old, eld, alderman, Aldborough.
 Eall, *all*: already, withal, also, Albert.
 Ean, *ale*: bridal.
 Eare, *ear*: earwig, earring.
 Earn, *arm*: armlet.
 Earn, *cagle*: Earnley.
 Earnian, *to reap*: earn, earnings.
 East, *east*: Essex, Sterling (= Easterling), Easter (goddess Eostre).
 Ebbe, *flowing back*: ebb, Ebbsfleet.
 Ecg, *edge*: Edgehill, to egg.
 Efer, *a wild boar*: Everton, Eversley, Everleigh.
 Efese, *brim or edge*: eaves, eavesdropper, Evesham.
 Eft, *again*: after, afterwards, abaft, eftsoons.
 Ege, *awful*: awful.
 Eiles, *other*: else, elsewhere.
 Elne, *an ell, the arm*: elbow.
 Eorl, *a man of valour*: earl, earldom.
 Eorthe, *earth*: earthen, earthquake, earthenware.
 Erian, *to plough*: ear (of corn), earing.
 Etan, *to eat*: eater.
 Fadan, *to set in order*: fidget, fiddle, faddle.
 Fæger, *fair*: fairly, fairness.
 Fægnian, *to be glad*: fain.
 Fæst, *fast*: fasten, steadfast, soothfast.
 Fæt, *a vessel*: fat, vat.
 Fæther, *father*: fatherland.
 Fæthm, *the space between the two arms extended*: fathom.
 Faran, *to go, to happen*: fare, ferry, welfare, ford, fieldfare, farewell, thoroughfare, wayfaring, seafaring, fern, Chelmsford.
 Feallan, *to fall*: fall, fell.
 Fealo, *yellow*: fallow, fallowdeer, field-fare (O.E. feala-for).
 Fearh, *a little pig*: farrow.
 Feccan, *to fetch*: fetch.
 Fedan, *to feed*: food, fodder, foster (foodster), forage (fodder age), foray.
 Fel, *skin*: fell, fellmonger.
 Feld, *a field*: field, Sheffield.
 Fengan, *to take, seize*: fang, fangle, finger, new-fangled.
 Feoh, *cattle, money*: fee.
 Feolitan, *to fight*: fight.
 Feol, *a rasp*: file.
 Feond, *an enemy*; fian, *to hate*: fiend, fy, foe, fend.
 Feorn, *food*: farm.
 Feower, *four*: farthing, firkin, fourteen, forty.
 Ferse, *fresh*: freshen, fresbet, freshman, refresh.
 Fæther, *feather*: feathery.
 Fif, *five*: fifteen, fifty.
 Fillan, *to fill*: full, fulfil.
 Findan, *to find*: finder, foundling.
 Fise, *fish*: fisher, fishery, Fishguard.

Flæsc, *flesh*: fleshier.
Fleogan, *to flee*: fly, flight, flea, fleawort, fleabane, fledged, flit.
Floc, *a company*: flock.
Flotan, *to float*: fleet, float, ice-floe, afloat, Fleetwood, Northfleet.
Flowan, *to flow*: flood.
Fola, *foal*: filly.
Fole, *people*: folk, Suffolk, folk-lore.
Folgian, *to follow*: follower.
Fot, *foot*: fetter, fetlock.
Fox, *fox*: vixen, foxglove.
Fram, *from*: fro, froward.
Freo, *free*: freedom.
Freon, *to love*: friend.
Freosan, *to freeze*: frost, frosty.
Fretan, *to gnaw*: fret.
Frician, *to jump, frisk*: frog, freak.
Fugel, *bird*: fowl, fowler.
Fulian, *to corrupt*: foul, filth, defile, fulsome.
Fullian, *to whiten*: fuller.
Furh, *a furrow*: furrow, furlong.
Fus, *ready*: fuss, fussy.
Fyr, *fire*: fire.
Fyst, *fist*: fist.
Gabban, *to mock*: gab, gibber, gibe, jabber, gabble, gibberish.
Gad, *goad*: goad, gadfly.
Gaderian, *to gather*: together.
Gaers, *grass*: grasshopper, graze, grazier, Grasmere.
Galan, *to sing*: nightingale.
Gamenian, *to game*: gamble, gamester.
Gangan, *to go*: gang, gangway, gait, gate, ago.
Gar, *a dart*: to gore, garlick, garfish.
Gast, *breath*: ghost, ghastly, aghast.
Gat, *goat*: Gatford, Gatcombe.
Geac, *a cuckoo, a simpleton*: gowk, gawky.
Gealga, *gallows*: gallows.
Geap, *wide*: gape, gap.
Gear, *year*: year, yearling.
Geara, *formerly*: yore.
Geard, *an enclosure*; **gyrdan**, *to enclose*: yard, garden, vineyard.
Gearo, *ready*: yare, rarely.
Geat, *a gate*: gateway.
Gehaep, *fit*: hap, happy, mishap, happen, hap-hazard.
Genoh, *sufficient*: enough.
Geoc, *yoke*: yokefellow.
Geogoth, *youth*: youthful.
Geolo, *yellow*: yellow-hammer.
Geong, *young*: youth.
Geotan, *to pour out*: gush, gutter, ingot, nugget (= an ingot).
Gerefa, *a governor*: reeve, land-reeve, sheriff (shire-reeve), landgrave.
Gese, *yes*: yes.
Get, *yet*: yet.
Gewiss, *certainly*: i-wis.
Gicel, *a piece*: icicle (is gicel).
Gifan, *to give*: gift, gew-gaw.
Girnan, *to yearn*: yearning.
Gitan, *to obtain*: get.
Clæd, *glad*: gladsome, gladden, gladness.
Claes, *glass*: glaze, glazier.

Glewan, *to shine*: gleam, glow.
Glisnian, *to shine*: glisten. Akin to "glitter" and "glint."
Gliw, *glee*: gleeful.
Gnagan, *to gnaw*: nag.
God, *good*: God, good, gospel (= god spel, good news), gossip (= God sib, related in God, a sponsor), demigod, godhead, good-bye.
Gold, *gold*: gild, gilt, marigold.
Goma, *gum*: gum.
Gorst, *a prickly shrub*: gorse, gooseberry.
Gos, *goose*: gosling, goshawk, Gosport.
Graeg, *grey*: gray, grayling.
Grafan, *to carve, to dig*: grave, graft, groove, engrave, grub.
Grapian, *to lay hold of*: grab, grapple, grope, grip, grapnel.
Gredig, *greedy*: greediness.
Gren, *green*: greensward.
Groot, *dust*: grit, grate, groats.
Gretan, *to greet*: greeting.
Grim, *horrible*: grim.
Grindan, *to grind*: grindstone, grist.
Growan, *to grow*: growth, green.
Grund, *ground*: grunsel, groundsel.
Guma, *a man*: bridegroom.
Gyf, *if*: if.
Gyldan, *to give up, to pay*: yield, guilt.
Gyrdan, *to enclose*: girdle, gird, girth.
Gyst, *guest*: guestchamber.
Habban, *to have*: behave, haft.
Had, *state or condition*: Godhead, manhood.
Haer, *hair*: hairy.
Haerfaest, *harvest*: harvest-home.
Haerineg, *herring*: herring-fishery.
Haest, *hot*: haste, hasty.
Haeth, *heath*: heathen.
Hafoc, *a hawk*: hawk, havoc.
Haga, *a hedge*: haw, hawthorn, haw-haw, Hagley.
Hagol, *hail*: hailstone.
Hal, *hael, sound*; **haelan**, *to make sound*: hail, hale, heal, whole, wassail, health.
Halig, *holy*: holy, halidom, hallow, halibut (holy fish), holly hock, All-Hallows.
Hals, *a neck*: halter, habergeon, hauberk.
Hann, *a dwelling*: home, hamlet, Hampstead, Buckingham.
Hand, *hand*: hand, handiwork, handy, handicap, handsome, handle, handsel.
Hangian, *to hang*: hang, hinge, Stone-henge, hank, hanker.
Har, *hoar*: hoary, horehound.
Hara, *a hare*: hare, harrier, harebell.
Hat, *hot*: heat, hot.
Hatan, *to command*: behest.
Hatan, *to call*: hight.
Hatian, *to hate*: hate, hatred.
Heafod, *head*: headland.
Heah, *high*: height, highness.
Healdan, *to hold*: holding, behold, beholden, hilt, upholsterer.
Healf, *side*: half, behalf.
Heap, *heap*: heap.
Heard, *hard*: harden, hardness.

Heawan, *to hew*: hew, hoe.
 Hebban, *to lift*: heave, heaven, heave-offering, heavy, head (O.E. heafod).
 Helan, *to hide*: hell, hole.
 Help, *help*: helpmate.
 Heord, *a flock, treasure*: herd, horde, hoard, shepherd.
 Heort, *a hart*: hart, hartshorn, Hartlepool, Hertford.
 Heorte, *heart*: heartfelt.
 Heorth, *hearth*: hearthstone.
 Here, *an army*: harbinger, harbour, herring, heriot, harry.
 Hina, *a servant*: hind.
 Hind, *a female deer*: hind.
 Hlaf, *a loaf*: Lammas, lord (hlaford), lady (hlaefdige).
 Hleapan, *to jump*: leap, lapwing.
 Hleotan, *to cast lots*: allot, lottery.
 Hlidan, *to cover*: lid.
 Hlud, *noisy*: loud, loudly.
 Hlystan, *to listen*: listener.
 Hnecca, *the neck*: necktie.
 Hnut, *a nut*: walnut (=foreign nut).
 Hof, *hoof*: hoof.
 Hof, *house*: hovel.
 Hoh, *heel*: hough, hock.
 Holen, *holly*: holm-oak.
 Holm, *an island*: Axholm.
 Horn, *horn*: hornbeam, hornet.
 Hors, *a horse*: walrus (whale horse).
 Hradian, *to hasten*: ready, rathe, rather.
 Hraegel, *clothing*: rag, night-rail.
 Hraec, *smoke*: reek, reeky.
 Hrefn, *raven*: raven.
 Hreod, *a reed*: reed.
 Hreoh, *rough*: rough, rugged, raw.
 Hreosan, *to rush*: rush.
 Hreowan, *to regret*: rue, rueful.
 Hrieg, *back*: ridge, Loughrigg Fells.
 Hridel, *a sieve*: riddle.
 Hrif, *bowels*: midriff.
 Hrim, *hoar-frost*: rime.
 Hring, *ring*: ringlet.
 Hrof, *roof*: Rochester (Hrove-ccaster).
 Hu, *how*: however, howbeit.
 Hund, *a dog*: hound, hunt.
 Hund, *a hundred*: hundred-fold.
 Hunig, *honey*: honeysuckle, horehound.
 Hurst, *a wood*: Midhurst. Chiselhurst.
 Hus, *a house*: husband, housewife, hussy, hustings.
 Hwa, *who*: where, what, why, whence, whither, when.
 Hwael, *whale*: whale, walrus.
 Hwaet, *sharp*: whet, whittle.
 Hwaete, *wheat*: wheat, Wheathampstead.
 Hwearf, *a place of exchange*: wharf.
 Hweol, *wheel*: wheelwright.
 Hweorfan, *to turn*: warp.
 Hwhit, *white*: Whitsunday, Whitechurch.
 Hyg, *hay*: hayloft.
 Hyngrian, *to hunger*: hungry.
 Hyr, *hire*: hireling.
 Hyran, *to obey*: hear, hearken, hearsay.
 Hyth, *shore*: Rotherhithe.
 Ic, *I*.
 Iug, *a pasture*: Reading.

-ing, *son of*: names of persons: as, Brown-ing, Atheling.
 -ingham, *dwelling-place of the sons of*: names of places: as, Buckingham, Birmingham.
 Iren, *iron*: iron-grey.
 Iul, *the merry feast, Christmas*: yule, yule-log, yule-tide.
 Kyrtel, *kirtle*: kirtle.
 Lacnian, *to cure*: leech.
 Laecan, *to seize*: latch.
 Lædan, *to lead*: loadstar, loadstone.
 Læfan, *to leave*: leave.
 Læn, *lean*: leanness.
 Lænan, *to lend*: loan.
 Lær, *doctrine*: laeran, *to teach*: lore, learn.
 Læs, *that not*: lest.
 Læt, *late*: late, latter, last, belated, latter-math.
 Lætan, *to let*: let.
 Lah, *low*: lowland.
 Lam, *lame*: lameness.
 Lamb, *lamb*: lambkin.
 Land, *land*: landford.
 Lang, *long*: along, length, Langley.
 Leac, *leek*: leek, garlic, house-leek, cherleek, hemlock.
 Leaf, *leaf*: leaflet.
 Leag, *a field*: lea, Elmsley.
 Leas, *false*: leasing.
 Leas, *loose*: loosen, suffix -less.
 Leegan, *to lay*: lair, layer, law, belay, outlay, lawyer.
 Leneten, *spring*: Lent.
 Leod, *people*: lewd.
 Leof, *dear*: lief, leman.
 Leofian, *to live*: life, livelong, livelihood.
 Leogan, *to deceive*: lie, liar.
 Leoht, *light*: lighten, lightning.
 Leornian, *to learn*: learning.
 Leosan, *to lose*: loren, *lost*: lose, forlorn.
 Lie, *a corpse*: lich-gate, Lichfield.
 Lim, *glue*: lime, birdlime.
 Lit, *little*: little.
 Lit, *a ship*: lighter, lighterman.
 Loca, *a lock*: locker, locket, lock-jaw.
 Lyft, *air*: loft, lift, aloft.
 Lysan, *to loose*: loosen.
 Lystan, *to please*: lust, list, listless.
 Macian, *to make*: maker.
 Maed, *what is mowed*: mead, meadow.
 Mael, *time*: piecemeal, inchmeal.
 Maenan, *to think*: mean, mind.
 Maenig, *many*: manifold.
 Maga, *stomach*: maw.
 Magan, *to be able*: may, might, main.
 Mangian, *to traffic*: monger, costermonger (=costard-monger, apple seller).
 Meare, *a boundary*: mark, march.
 Med, *reward*: meed.
 Mengan, *to mix*: mingle, among, mongrel.
 Meole, *milk*: milch, milksop.
 Mere, *a lake or marsh*: Windermere.
 Metan, *to measure*: mete.
 Metan, *to meet*: meet, moot-hall, to moot, moot-point, Witenagemote.
 Mete, *food*: metsian, *to feed*: meat, sweet-meat, meat-offering, mess, messmate.

Mid, *middle*: amid, middling, midrib, midsummer.
 Milde, *mild*: Mildred.
 Mona, *moon*: month, moonlight, moonshine.
 Mor, *moor*: Westmoreland, mire, morass, Chat Moss, moorhen.
 Morgen, *morning*: morn.
 Morth, *death*: murder.
 Mus, *mouse*: mouse, titmouse (little mouse).
 Muth, *mouth*: mouthful.
 Mycel, *great*: much, mickle.
 Nacod, *naked*: nakedness.
 Næddre, *a snake*: adder.
 Nædl, *a needle*: needlewoman.
 Nægel, *a nail*:
 Næsse, *a headland*: naze, -ness (in Carthness, etc.).
 Nafu, *the nave of a wheel*: navel.
 Nama, *name*: namesake.
 Neah, *close to*: near, nigh, next, neighbour.
 Nearo, *narrow*: narrowness.
 Neat, *ox*: neat, neatherd.
 Neb, *face, beak*: nib, nibble, snipe, snap, snub.
 Neod, *need*: needs ("of necessity," genitive of "need"), needy, needless.
 Nest, *nest*: nestling.
 Nett, *net*: netting, network.
 Niht, *night*: nightingale, nightshade, benighted.
 Nither, *down*: nether, nethermost, beneath.
 Niw, *new*: news, renew, new-fangled.
 Nosu, *nasu, a nose*: nostril (nose-hole), nozzle, nosegay.
 Nu, *now*: nowadays.
 Ofer, *shore*: Andover, Wendover.
 Other, *second*: other, another.
 Otor, *otter*: otter-hound.
 Oxa, *ox*: ox-lip.
 Pæth, *path*: pathway.
 Pic, *point*: peak, pickets, pike, pickerel, to peck, woodpecker, pick, The Peak.
 Pip, *pipe*: pipkin.
 Plega, *play*: playmate, playful.
 Pliht, *condition*; plightan, *to pledge*: plight, plot.
 Pyt, *pit*: armpit, cockpit, pitfall.
 Rædan, *to read*: rede, riddle, Mildred (mild in counsel).
 Ræpan, *to bind*: rap, rope, wrap, stirrup.
 Rathe, *soon*: rather.
 Read, *red*: ruddy, ruddock.
 Reafian, *to rob*: bereave, reever, robber.
 Reccan, *to care*: reck, reckless.
 Rein, *clean*: rinse.
 Reed, *reed*: Reedham, Ridley.
 Ric, *dominion*: bishopric.
 Rim, *number*: rhyme (more correctly, rime).
 Rinan, *to rain*: rainbow.
 Rip, *harvest*; ripan, *to cut*: ripe, reap.
 Risan, *to rise*: arise.
 Risce, *a rush*: Rushholme, Rushworth, Risborough.
 Rod, *a cross*: rood, roodloft, Holyrood.

Rowan, *to row*: rower.
 Sæd, *seed*: seedling.
 Sælig, *blessed*: silly.
 Sam, *half*: sandblind.
 Sar, *sore*: sorry, sorrow.
 Sceadan, *to divide*: scot, scatter, shed.
 Scoapan, *to form*: shape, shop, ship, friendship, landscape.
 Sceamu, *shame*: shamefaced (more correctly, shamefast).
 Sceap, *a sheep*: shepherd, Shepton, Shipley.
 Sceathan, *to injure*: scathe, scathless.
 Seel, *shell*: shale, scale, scales.
 Secotan, *to shoot*: shot, shut, shutter, shuttle, scud.
 Seinan, *to shine*: sheen.
 Seiran, *to cut*: shear, share, shire, shears, sheer, scar, score, shore, ploughshare, shard, sheriff, shred, potsherd, short, skirt, shirt.
 Scridan, *to clothe*: shroud, enshroud.
 Scrob, *a bush*: shrub, scrubby, Shrewsbury.
 Scufan, *to thrust*: scuff, scuffle, shove, shovel, sheaf.
 Seunian, *to shun*: shunt.
 Seur, *a shower*: scour.
 Seyld, *a shield*: shield.
 Secg, *sedg*: Sedgemoor.
 Seegan, *to say*: saw, saying.
 Seld, *rare*: seldom.
 Sencan, *to sink*: sinking.
 Sendan, *to send*: Godsend.
 Seoc, *sick*: sickly, homesick.
 Seou, *to see*: sight.
 Seothan, *to boil*: seethe, sod, soap-sud.
 Settan, *to make to sit*; sittan, *to sit*: sit, set, seat, settle, saddle, saddler, Somerset, Dorset.
 Sib, *related*: gossip.
 Side, *side*: aside, beside, sidle.
 Singan, *to sing*: song, songster.
 Slacian, *to be slow*: slaw, *slow*: slack, slug, sluggish, slacken, sloth, slow-worm.
 Slefian, *to cover*: sleeve, sleeveless.
 Slehan, *to kill*: slay, slaughter, sleight sly (clever in killing), onslaught.
 Smitan, *to smite*: smith, smithy, goldsmith.
 Snican, *to creep*: sneak, snake, snail.
 Soth, *true*: sooth, forsooth, soothsayer.
 Spætan, *to spit*: spittle.
 Sped, *success*: speed, God-speed.
 Spel, *news*: spell, gospel, spellbound.
 Spinnan, *to spin*: spinster, spindle.
 Stalian, *to steal*: stealth, stealthy.
 Stan, *stone*: Stanlope, Stanley.
 Steal, *a place*: stall, Tunstall.
 Steare, *hard*: stark, storch.
 Stede, *a place*: stead, homestead, steady, instead, bedstead, steadfast, Hampstead.
 Steopan, *to bereave*: stepson, stepmother.
 Steor, *a young beast*: steer, stirk.
 Steoran, *to steer*: steersman, starboard, steerage.
 Steorfan, *to die*: starve.

Sticce, *a piece*: steak.

Stician, *to stick*: stitch, stake, stickle, stickler, stock, stockade, stockfish, stockstill.

Stigan, *to ascend*: stairs, stage, stye, storey, still, stirrup (mounting-rope).

Stille, *still*: stillness, stillborn.

Stoc, *a place*: Stoke, Woodstock, Stoke-Pogis.

Stow, *a place*: stow, bestow, Chepstow, stowaway, stowage, Bristol.

Stracian, *to stroke*: strike, streak, stricken.

Sund, *a strait*: Sound, Bomarsund.

Suth, *south*: Sussex, Suffolk.

Swa, *so*: also, such (swa-lie).

Swart, *black*: swarthy.

Sweltan, *to die*: sweltry, sultry.

Swerian, *to take an oath*: swear, forswear, answer (O.E. *andswarian*, from *and*, in opposition to).

Swifan, *to move quickly*: swift, swivel.

Syllan, *to give, to sell*: sell, sale, handsel.

Synn, *sin*: sinner, sinful.

Ta, *toe*: toeplate.

Tade, *a toad*: tadpole.

Tælan, *to speak ill of*: tell-tale.

Tæsan, *to pluck, pull*: tease, teasel.

Tellan, *to count*: tell, tale, foretell.

Temian, *to yoke together*: tame, team.

Teogan, *to draw*: tug, tow, team, tough, tight, tooth.

Teotha, *tenth*: tithe.

Thencan, *to think*: think.

Thic, *thick*: thicket.

Thincan, *to seem*: methinks.

Thing, *a meeting, council*: husting (house-council).

Thirlan, *to pierce*: thirl, thrill, drill, nostril, thrall, thralldom.

Thorpe, *a village*: Bishopthorpe.

Thringan, *to press*: throng.

Throwian, *to suffer*: throe.

Thuma, *thumb*: thumb, thimble.

Thweorian, *to twist*: thwart, athwart.

Tid, *time*: tide, betide, Whitsuntide.

Tredan, *to tread*: tread, treddle, trade (a trodden path, a way of living), tradesman, trade-wind.

Treowian, *to trust*: trow, troth, betroth, true, truth, trust.

Tumbere, *a dancer*: tumbler.

Tun, *an enclosure*: town.

Twa, twegen, *two*: two, twain, twin, twine, between, twelve, twenty, twice, betwixt, twilight. Both = *ba-twa* = two-two.

Ut, *out*: utmost, out.

Wac, *weak*: weak, weaken, weakling.

Wacian, *to watch*: wake, wakeful, awake, watch.

Wad, *wood*: wood, woodbine, woodruff, woodman.

Wæd, *a garment*: (widow's) weeds.

Wægen, *a wagon*: wagon, wain.

Wapen, *a weapon*: weapon, wapentake.

Wær, *cautious*: ware, beware, wary, aware.

Wæt, *wet*: wet, Wedmore.

Wagian, *to wag*: wag, waggle, wagtail.

Wald, *a wood*: Weald, wold, Waltham.

Wanian, *to decrease*: wane, wan, want, wanton.

Wealdan, *to rule*: wield, Bretwalda.

Wealla, *a foreigner*: Welshman, walnut, Cornwall, Wales.

Weallan, *to spring up*: well, Wells.

Weard, *guard*: ward, warden, guard, guardian, Edward.

Weaxan, *to grow*: (to) wax.

Wed, *a pledge*: wed, wedlock, wedding.

Wefan, *to weave*: weave, weaver, web, cobweb, woof, weft, Webster.

Weg, *way*: way, away, wayward.

Wegan, *to bear*: weigh.

Wela, *weal*: weal, wealth, commonwealth, wealthy.

Wenan, *to think*: ween, overweening.

Wendan, *to go*: wend, wander, went.

Weorpan, *to throw*: warp.

Weorthan, *to become*: worth (in "woorth the day").

Weorthe, *worthy*: worthy, stalwart (steel-worthy).

Werig, *tired*: weary.

Wesan, *to be*: was.

Wie, *a dwelling*: Alnwick, Harwich.

Wicca, wiece, *a witch*: witch, witchcraft, wicked.

Wid, *broad*: wide, width.

Wif, *a wife*: wife, woman (wif-man), hussy (hus-wif).

Wiht, *a creature, a thing*: wight, whit, aught (= awhit), naught, not, naughty.

Wild, *wild*: wild, wilderness, bewilder.

Win, *war*: Baldwin, Godwin.

Win, *wine*: wine, winepress, winebibber.

Wind, *wind*: wind, windward, window (wind-eye).

Wise, *way, manner*: wise, likewise, guise.

Witan, *to know*: wit, ywis, unwittingly, wot, weet, Witenagemote, wisdom, wistful, witness.

With, *against*: withstand, withhold.

Wolcen, *a cloud*: welkin.

Wop, *weeping*: whoop.

Worth, *a farm*: Tamworth.

Wos, *juice*: ooze.

Wraestan, *to twist*: wrest, wrestle.

Wreean, *to revenge*: wreak, wreck, wretch, wretched.

Wregan, *to accuse*: bewray.

Writan, *to write*: write, writ.

Writhan, *to twist*: writhe, wreathe, wreath, wrath, wroth, wry, awry.

Wnda, *a wood*: wood, Woodstock.

Wul, *wool*: wool, woollen.

Wunian, *to dwell*: wont.

Wyn, *joy*: winsome.

Wyrean, *to work*: work, wrought, wheelwright.

Wyrd, *fate*: weird.

Wyrian, *to curse*: worry.

Wurm, *worm*: blindworm, wormwood.

Wyrt, *root, herb*: spleenwort, orchard (= wort-yard), wart.

Yfel, *evil*: evil, ill.

CHAPTER V.—LATIN WORDS.

288. The principal Latin words from which modern English words are taken are as follows :—

- Acer**, *sharp* : acrid, acrimony.
Acerbus, *bitter* : acerbity.
Acidus, *sour* : acid.
Acuo, *acutum*, *I sharpen* : acute.
Ædes, *a house* : edify, edifice.
Æquus, *equal* : equal, equator.
Æstimo, *I value* : esteem, estimate.
Æstus, *the tide* : estuary.
Æternus, *of endless duration* : eternity.
Ævum, *an age* : coeval, longevity.
Ager, *a field* : agriculture, agrarian, peregrination.
Agger, *a heap* : exaggerate.
Ago, *actum*, *I do* : agent, act, agitate, exact.
Alacer, *cheerful* : alacrity.
Albus, *white* : alb, albino.
Alius, *another* ; *alienus*, *another's* : alien, alienate.
Alo, *I nourish* : aliment, alimony.
Alter, *other of two* : altercation, alternate.
Altus, *high* : exalt, altitude.
Ambulo *I walk* : perambulate, preamble.
Amo, *I love* : amatory, amity.
Amicus, *a friend* : amicable, inimical.
Amœnus, *pleasant* : amenity.
Amplus, *large* : ample, amplify.
Ango, *I choke*, *I vex* : anger, anguish, anxiety.
Angulus, *a corner* : angle, rectangle.
Anima, *breath* ; *animus*, *the mind* : animate, animal, unanimous.
Annulus, *a ring* : annular.
Annus, *a year* : annual, biennial.
Antiquus, *ancient* : antiquity.
Anus, *an old woman* : anile.
Aperio, *I open* : aperient, overt, April.
Apis, *a bee* : apiary.
Aptus, *fitted* ; *apto*, *I fit* : apt, adapt.
Aqua, *water* : aquatic, aqueduct.
Aquila, *an eagle* : aquiline.
Arbiter, *a judge* : arbitrate.
Arbor, *a tree* : arbour, arboraceous.
Arceo, *I drive away* : exercise, coerce.
Arcus, *a bow* : arc, arch, arches.
Ardeo, *I burn* : ardent, arson.
Arduus, *lofty* : arduous.
Areo, *I am parched* : arid.
Arguo, *I prove* : argue, argument.
Arma, *arms* : disarm, armour.
Aro, *I plough* : arable.
Ars, *an art* : art, artist, inert.
Articulus, *a little joint* : article, articulate.
Asinus, *an ass* : asinine.
Asper, *rough* : asperate, exasperate.
Atrox, *cruel* : atrocious.
Audax, *bold* : audacious.
Audio, *I hear* : audible, auditor.
Augeo, *I increase* : augment, auction, author.
Augur, *a soothsayer* : inaugurate.
Auris, *the ear* : aurist.
Aurum, *gold* : auriferous, orange.
Auster, *the south wind* : austral.
Auxilium, *help* : auxiliary.
Avarus, *covetous* : avarice.
Avidus, *greedy* : avidity.
Avis, *a bird* : aviary, auspice.
Barba, *a beard* : barb, barber.
Beatus, *happy* : beatitude.
Bellum, *war* : rebel, belligerent.
Bene, *well* : benediction, benefit.
Benignus, *kind* : benign, benignant.
Bibo, *I drink* : bib, imbibe, beverage.
Bini, *two by two* : binary, combine.
Bis, *twice* : bissextile, bisect.
Bonus, *good* : bounty, boon.
Brevis, *short* : breve, brief, abbreviate.
Brutus, *senseless* : brute.
Caballus, *a horse* : cavalry.
Cado, *I fall* : cadence, case, accident, occasion.
Cædo, *I cut*, *kill* : homicide, concise, suicide.
Calculus, *a pebble* : calculate.
Calx, *lime* : calcine, chalk.
Campus, *a plain* : camp, decamp, champion.
Candeo, *I burn*, *shine* : candidus, *white* : candid, incendiary, candour.
Canis, *a dog* : canine, kennel.
Canto, *I sing* : cant, canticle, accent, chant, enchantment.
Caper, *a goat* : capricious.
Capillus, *hair* : capillary.
Capio, *I take* : capable, accept, conceive, principal, emancipate.
Caput, *the head* : cape, capital, chaplet.
Carbo, *charcoal* : carbon.
Carcer, *a prison* : incarcerate.
Cardo, *a hinge* : cardinal.
Carmen, *a song* : charm.
Caro, *carnis*, *flesh* : carnal, charnel.
Carpo, *I pluck* : carp.
Carus, *dear* : caress, cherish, cheer.
Castus, *pure* : chaste, incest.
Causa, *a cause* : accuse, excuse.
Caveo, *I beware* : caution.
Cavus, *hollow* : cave, excavate, cavern.
Cedo, *I go*, *yield* : cede, exceed, accede.
Celer, *swift* : celerity, accelerate.
Celo, *I hide* : conceal.
Censeo, *I judge* : census, censure, censor.
Centum, *a hundred* : cent, centipede.
Cera, *wax* : sincere, cere-cloth.
Cerno, *cretum*, *I see* : discern, discreet, recruit, secret.
Certo, *I strive* : concert.
Certus, *sure* : certain, certify.
Charta, *paper* : chart, chartist, cartoon.
Cingo, *I surround* : cincture, succinct.
Circus, *a ring* : circle, circulation.
Cito, *I rouse* : excite, incite.

Civis, *a citizen* : civil, civic, city.
 Clamo, *I cry out* : clamour, exclaim. †
 Clarus, *clear* : clarify, declare.
 Claudio, *I shut* : conclude, conclusion, close, clause.
 Clemens, *mild* : clemency, inclement.
 Clino, *I bend* : incline, declension.
 Clivus, *a slope* : proclivity, declivity, cliff.
 Cælum, *the sky* : celestial.
 Collum, *the neck* : collar.
 Colo, *I till* : colony, cultivate, agriculture.
 Color, *colour* : discolour.
 Comes, *a companion* : concomitant, count.
 Concilio, *I unite* : reconcile.
 Contra, *against* : contrary, counter.
 Copia, *plenty* : copious.
 Copulo, *I join together* : couple, copulative.
 Coquo, *coctum*, *I boil* : decoction, cook.
 Cor, *cordis, the heart* : core, accord, cordial.
 Corona, *a crown* : coronation, coronet.
 Corpus, *the body* : corporal, corporation, corpse.
 Cras, *to-morrow* : procrastinate.
 Credo, *I believe* : creed, credit, incredible.
 Creo, *I create* : creator, creature.
 Cresco, *eretur*, *I grow* : crescent, concrete.
 Crimen, *a crime* : criminal, recriminate.
 Crux, *a cross* : crucify, crusade, crucial.
 Cubo, *cumbo*, *I lie down* : succumb, incubation.
 Culpa, *a fault* : culprit, culpable.
 Cumulus, *a heap* : accumulate.
 Cupio, *I desire* : cupidity.
 Cura, *cure* : cure, curious, secure, incurable.
 Curro, *cursum*, *I run* : current, precursor, recur, course, succour.
 Curvus, *bent* : curve, curvature.
 Custodia, *guardianship* : custody.
 Damno, *I condemn* : damage, damn.
 Debeo, *debitum*, *I owe* : debt, debit.
 Debilis, *feeble* : debility.
 Decem, *ten* : December, decennial.
 Decens, *becoming* : decency, indecent.
 Decor, *beauty* : decorate.
 Dens, *dentis, a tooth* : dentis, indenture.
 Densus, *thick* : dense, condense.
 Deus, *God* : deify, deity, deist.
 Dexter, *right hand* : dexterity.
 Dico, *dictum*, *I say* : predict, diction.
 Dies, *a day* : diurnal, diary.
 Digitus, *a finger* : digit.
 Dignus, *worthy* : dignity, indignity.
 Disco, *I learn* : disciple.
 Divido, *I divide* : divisor, subdivide.
 Divinus, *belonging to a god* : divine.
 Do, *datum*, *I give* : date, add, addition.
 Doceo, *I teach* : docile, doctor.
 Deleo, *I grieve* : dolor, grief : condole, doleful.
 Dominus, *a master* : dominant, domain.
 Domino, *I tame* : indomitable.
 Domus, *a house* : domestic, dome.
 Dono, *I present* : donation, donor.
 Dormio, *I sleep* : dormant, dormouse.
 Dubius, *doubtful* : dubious, doubt.
 Duco, *ductum*, *I lead* : introduce, duct, ductile, duke, reduce.

Dulcis, *sweet* : dulcet, dulcimer.
 Duo, *two* : duplicate, duel.
 Durus, *hard* : endure, obdurate.
 Ebrius, *drunken* : inebriate, sobriety.
 Edo, *I eat* : edible.
 Ego, *I* : egotist.
 Emo, *emptum*, *I buy* : redeem, redemption.
 Eo, *I go* : exit, initial.
 Equus, *a horse* ; eques, *a horseman* : equery, equine, equip.
 Erro, *I wander* : err, aberration, erroneous.
 Exemplum, *an example* : exemplify, sample.
 Expedio, *I set free* : expedition.
 Experior, *I try* : experience, expert.
 Faber, *a workman* : fabric.
 Fabula, *a story* : fable.
 Facies, *the face* : deface, fashion, facial.
 Facilis, *easy* : facility, difficult, faculty.
 Facio, *factum*, *I do*, *I make* : fact, affect, beatify, perfect.
 Fallo, *falsum*, *I deceive* : false, fallible.
 Fama, *report* : fame, infamous.
 Familia, *a family* : familiar.
 Fanum, *a temple* : fane, profane.
 Fatuus, *silly* : fatuity.
 Febrio, *a fever* : febrile.
 Felix, *happy* : felicity.
 Femina, *a woman* : effeminate, feminine.
 Fendo, *I strike* : fender, fence, defend.
 Fero, *I bear* : confer, fertile, conference.
 Ferox, *fierce* : ferocious.
 Ferveo, *I boil* : fervid, fervour.
 Festus, *joyful* : festival, feast.
 Fidelis, *faithful* : fidelity.
 Fido, *I trust* : confide, perfidious.
 Figo, *fixum*, *I fix* : fix, fixture.
 Filius, *a son* : filial.
 Findo, *fissum*, *I cleave* : fissure.
 Fingo, *fictum*, *I shape* : feign, fiction.
 Finis, *an end* : finite, define, infinite.
 Firmus, *strong* : firm, affirm, confirm.
 Fiscus, *a treasury* : fiscal, confiscate.
 Flagro, *I burn* : flagrant.
 Flamma, *a flame* : flame, inflammation.
 Flecto, *flexum*, *I bend* : inflect, reflex.
 Fligo, *flictum*, *I dash* : afflict, profligate.
 Flo, *flatum*, *I blow* : inflate.
 Flos, *floris, a flower* : floral, flourish.
 Fluo, *fluxum*, *I flow* : flux, fluctuate, fluid.
 Fodio, *fossum*, *I dig* : fossil.
 Folium, *a leaf* : foliage, folio, cinquefoil.
 Fons, *a fountain* : font, fount.
 Forma, *a shape* : form, conform, uniform.
 Formido, *fear* : formidable.
 Fors, *chance* : fortune, fortuitous.
 Fortis, *strong* : fortify, fortress.
 Frango, *fractum*, *I break* : fragile, infringe, fracture.
 Frater, *a brother* : fraternal, friar.
 Fraus, *deceit* : fraud, defraud.
 Frigus, *cold* : frigid, refrigerate.
 Frons, *the forehead* : front, affront.
 Fruor, *I enjoy* : fructus, fruit : fructify, fruit, frugal.
 Frustra, *in vain* : frustrate.
 Fugio, *I flee* : fugitive, refuge.

Fulgeo, *I shine*: refulgence, effulge.
 Fulmen, *a thunderbolt*: fulminate.
 Fumus, *smoke*: fumigate, perfume.
 Fundo, *fusum, I pour*: profuse, fusible.
 Fundus, *the bottom*: foundation, profound.
 Fungor, *I discharge*: function.
 Funus, *a burial*: funeral.
 Garrio, *I prattle*: garrulous.
 Gelu, *ice*: gelid, congeal, jelly.
 Gens, *a race*: gentile, genteel.
 Genus, *generis, a kind*: general, ingenuous, progeny, regenerate.
 Gero, *gestum, I carry*: gesticulate, digest, jest.
 Glacies, *ice*: glass, glacier, glaze.
 Gloria, *glory*: glorify, glory.
 Gradior, *gressum, I go*: grade, retrograde, digress, aggressor.
 Grandis, *large*: grandee, aggrandize.
 Granum, *grain*: granary, garner.
 Gratia, *favour*: gratify, grace, ingrate.
 Gravis, *heavy*: gravitate, grave, grief.
 Grex, *a flock*: aggregate, egregious.
 Habeo, *habitum, I have*: habitable, inhabit, prohibit.
 Hæreo, *hæsum, I stick*: adhere, hesitate.
 Hæres, *hæredis, an heir*: heritable.
 Halo, *I breathe*: exhale, inhale.
 Haurio, *haustum, I draw*: exhaust.
 Homo, *a man*: human, homicide.
 Honor, *honour*: dishonour, honest.
 Horreo, *I shudder*: horror, abhor.
 Hortor, *I encourage*: exhort.
 Hortus, *a garden*: horticulture.
 Hospes, *hospitis, a guest*: hospital, host.
 Hostis, *an enemy*: hostile.
 Humus, *the ground*: exhume, humble.
 Ignis, *fire*: igneous, ignite.
 Ignoro, *I know not*: ignore, ignorant.
 Imago, *a likeness*: image, imagine.
 Imitor, *I imitate*: imitable.
 Impero, *I command*: imperious, emperor.
 Inferus, *low*: inferior.
 Insula, *an island*: insular, peninsular.
 Integer, *whole, sound*: integrity, integrate.
 Invito, *I call*: invite, invitation.
 Ira, *anger*: ire, irascible.
 Irrito, *I provoke*: irritate.
 Iter, *itineris, a journey*: itinerant.
 Jaceo, *I lie down*: adjacent.
 Jacio, *jactum, I throw*: deject, object.
 Jocus, *a jest*: joke, jocular.
 Judico, *I judge*: judicial, prejudice, judge.
 Jugum, *a yoke*: adjugate, conjugal.
 Jungo, *junctum, I join*: junction, joint, adjunct, subjunctive.
 Juro, *I swear*: juror, abjure, perjury.
 Jus, *right, law*: jurisprudence.
 Justus, *right*: justice, adjust, unjust.
 Juvo, *jutum, I help*: adjutant, coadjutor.
 Labor, *toil*: labour, laborious.
 Labor, *lapsus, I fall*: lapse, relapse.
 Lacero, *I mangle*: lacerate.
 Lædo, *læsum, I hurt*: collision.
 Lapis, *lapidis, a stone*: dilapidate.
 Latus, *lateris, a side*: lateral, bilateral.
 Latus, *broad*: latitude.
 Latus, *brought*: ablative, collate, translate.

Laus, *laudis, praise*: laudatory.
 Laxus, *loose*: laxity, relax.
 Lego, *I send or depute*: legate, legacy.
 Lego, *lectum, I gather, read*: elect, collect, neglect, select, legible.
 Levis, *light*: levo, *I lift*: levy, alleviate.
 Lex, *legis, a law*: legal, legislate, sacrilege.
 Liber, *free*: liberty, illiberal.
 Liber, *a book*: library, libel.
 Ligo, *I bind*: ligament, oblige, religion.
 Limes, *a boundary*: limit, illimitable.
 Linca, *a line*: line, lineal, outline.
 Lingua, *a tongue*: linguist, language.
 Linquo, *lictum, I leave*: relinquish, relict.
 Liqueo, *I melt*: liquid, liquor.
 Litera, *a letter*: literal, obliterate.
 Locus, *a place*: local, locomotion.
 Longus, *long*: longevity, elongate, oblong.
 Loquor, *locutus, I speak*: loquacious.
 Ludo, *lusum, I play*: ludicrous, allusion.
 Lumen, *light*: illuminate, luminous.
 Luna, *the moon*: lunar, lunacy.
 Luo, *I wash*: ablution, dilute, pollute.
 Lustrum, *a purification*: lustre, illustrate.
 Lux, *lucis, light*: lucid, elucidate.
 Macula, *a spot*: immaculate.
 Magister, *a master*: magistrate, master.
 Magnus, *great*: magnify, magnitude.
 Major, *greater*: majority, majestic, mayor.
 Malus, *bad*: melody, maltreat, malice.
 Mamma, *a breast*: mamma, mammalia.
 Mando, *I commit, enjoin*: mandate, command.
 Maneo, *mansum, I stay*: manor, manse, remain.
 Manus, *the hand*: manacle, manuscript.
 Mare, *the sea*: marine, mermaid.
 Mars, *the god of war*: martial.
 Mater, *a mother*: maternal, matrimony.
 Materia, *timber, stuff*: material, matter.
 Maturus, *ripe*: mature, premature.
 Medeor, *I heal*: medical remedy.
 Medius, *middle*: mediate, immediate.
 Mel, *mellis, honey*: mellifluous.
 Melior, *better*: ameliorate.
 Memor, *mindful*: memory, commemorate.
 Mens, *mentis, the mind*: mental.
 Merco, *meritum, I deserve*: merit.
 Mergo, *mersum, I dip*: submerge, immerse.
 Metior, *mensus, I measure*: mete, immense, mensuration.
 Merx, *mercis, goods*: merchant, commerce.
 Migro, *I wander*: migrate, immigrate.
 Miles, *militis, a soldier*: militate, military.
 Mille, *a thousand*: millennial, milfoil.
 Minister, *a servant*: minister, administer.
 Minor, *less*: minuo, *I lessen*: minority, diminish.
 Mirus, *wonderful*: miracle, admire.
 Miscuo, *mixtum, I mix*: miscellany, mix.
 Miser, *wretched*: misery, commiserate.
 Mitto, *missum, I send*: admit, mission.
 Modus, *a measure*: moderate, mood, modest.
 Mola, *a millstone*: molar, immolate, emolument.
 Mollis, *soft*: mollify, emollient.

Moneo, I warn : monument, monitor.
Mons, montis, a mountain : mount.
Monstro, I point out : demonstrate.
Morbus, disease : morbid.
Mordeo, morsum, I bite : morsel, remorse.
Mors, mortis, death : mortal, mortgage.
Mos, moris, a custom : moral, demoralise.
Moveo, motum, I move : movement, motion.
Multus, many : multifarious, multiply.
Munio, I fortify : muniment, amunition.
Munus, muneris, a gift : munificent.
Murus, a wall : mural, immure.
Musa, a muse : music, museum amuse.
Muto, I change : mutable, commute.
Narro, I relate : narrative.
Nascor, natus, I am born : nascent, innate, natal.
Navis, a ship : navy, navigate.
Necto, nexum, I tie : annex, connect.
Nego, I deny : negation, abnegate.
Negotium, business : negotiate.
Neuter, neither : neutral.
Niger, black : negro.
Noceo, I hurt : noxious, innocent.
Nomen, a name : nominal, denominate.
Non, not : nonconformist, nonsense.
Norma, a rule : normal, enormous.
Nosco, notum, I know ; nobilis, well known : note, cognition, noble.
Novus, new : novel.
Nox, noctis, night : nocturnal, equinox.
Nubo, nuptum, I marry : connubial, nuptial.
Nullus, none : nullity, annul.
Numerus, a number : numeral, enumerate.
Nuncio, I tell : announce, enunciate.
Nutrio, I nourish : nutritive, nurse.
Obliquus, slant : oblique.
Oblivio, forgetfulness : oblivion.
Obscurus, dark : obscurity.
Octo, eight : October, octagon.
Oculus, the eye : ocular, inoculate.
Odor, smell : odorous.
Officium, duty : office.
Omen, a sign : ominous, abominate.
Omnis, all : omnipotent.
Opinor, I think : opinion.
Opto, I wish : optative, option.
Opus, operis, work : operate, inoperative.
Orbis, a circle : orb, exorbitant.
Ordo, ordinis, order : ordinal, extraordinary.
Orior, ortus, I rise : orient, abortive, origin.
Oro, I speak, entreat : orator, adore.
Os, oris, a mouth : oral.
Ovum, an egg : oval, oviparous.
Pagus, a village : pagan, peasant.
Pallium, a cloak : palliate, pall.
Palpo, I stroke : palpable.
Pando, passum, I spread : expand, expanse.
Par, equal : disparity, compare.
Parco, I appear : apparent, disappear.
Pario, I bring forth : parent, viviparous.
Paro, I prepare : parade, prepare.
Pars, partis, a part : part, apartment, portion.
Pasco, pastum, I feed : pastor, pasture.

Passus, a step : pace, compass, trespass.
Pater, a father : paternal, patron, parricide.
Patior, passus, I suffer : patient, passion.
Patria, a native-land : patriot, expatriate.
Pauper, poor : pauperism, poverty.
Pax, pacis, peace : pacify, appease.
Pectus, pectoris, the breast : pectoral.
Pecunia, money : pecuniary.
Pello, pulsum, I drive : compel, repulse.
Pendo, I hang : pendant, depend.
Pendo, pensum, I weigh, pay : pension, expend, recompense.
Pene, almost : peninsula.
Penetro, I pierce : penetrate.
Penuria, want : penury.
Perdo, I lose : perdition.
Persona, a mask, a person : personal.
Pes, pedis, a foot : pedal, biped, impede.
Pestis, a plague : pestilence.
Peto, petitem, I seek : petition, competent, appetite.
Pilo, I steal : pillage, pilfer.
Pingo, pictum, I paint : picture, painter.
Piscis, a fish : piscatory.
Placeo, I please : placid, complacent.
Placo, I appease : implacable.
Planta, the sole of the foot : plantation.
Planus, level : plain, explain.
Plaudo, plausum, I clap hands : plaudit, plausible, applause.
Plecto, plexum, I weave : complex.
Pleo, I fill ; plenus, full : replete, plenary, supply, replenish.
Plico, I fold : pliable, comply, duplicate, surplice.
Ploro, I bewail : deplore, explore.
Plumbum, lead : plumber, plummet.
Plus, pluris, more : plural, pluperfect.
Pœna, punishment : penal, pain, repent.
Polio, I make smooth : polish, polite.
Pondus, weight : ponder, preponderate.
Pono, positum, I place : postpone, repose, opposite.
Populus, the people : popular, depopulate, publish.
Porto, I carry : export, support, important.
Possum, I am able ; potens, powerful : possible, potent, omnipotent.
Post, after : posterity.
Postula, I demand : postulate.
Præda, booty : depredation, prey.
Precor, I pray : deprecate.
Prehendo, I seize : apprehend, reprehensible.
Premo, pressum, I press : compress, oppress.
Pretium, a price : precious, depreciate.
Primus, first : primeval.
Princeps, chief : principal, prince.
Privo, I deprive : private, deprive.
Probo, I try : probable, approbation, improve.
Proprius, one's own : property, propriety.
Puer, a boy : puerile.
Pugno, I fight : pugnacious, impugn.
Pungo, punctum, I prick : pungent, punctual.

Paulo, *I punish* : punitive, impunity.
Purgo, *I cleanse* : purge, expurgate.
Puto, *I prune, I think* : amputate, dispute.
Putris, *rotten* : putrid, putrescence.
Quæro, *quaesitum, I ask* : inquire, question, acquisition.
Qualis, *of what sort* : qualify.
Quatio, *quassum (in composition, entio, cussum), I shake* : discuss, re-percussion.
Queror, *I complain* : querulous.
Quies, *rest* : quiet, requiem.
Quinque, *five* : quinquennial.
Quot, *how many* : quotient.
Radius, *a rod, a ray* : radiate, radiance.
Radix, *a root* : radical, eradicate.
Rado, *rasum, I shave* : razor, erase.
Rapio, *raptum, I seize* : rapacious, rapture.
Rarus, *thin* : rare, rarefy.
Ratus, *fixed* : rate, ratify.
Rego, *rectum, I rule* : regular, indirect.
Repo, *I creep* : reptile, surreptitious.
Res, *a thing* : real, reality.
Rex, *a king* : regal.
Rideo, *risum, I laugh* : deride, derision.
Rigeo, *I am stiff* : rigid.
Rivus, *a brook* : river, rival, arrive.
Robur, *oak* : robust, corroborate.
Rodo, *I gnaw* : corrode.
Rogo, *I ask* : rogation, interrogative.
Rota, *a wheel* : rotation, rote.
Rotundus, *round* : rotundity.
Rumpo, *ruptum, I break* : rupture, bankrupt.
Rus, *ruris, the country* : rustic, rural.
Sacer, *holy* : sacerdotal, sacred, sacrament, desecrate.
Sagax, *wise* : sagacious, sage, presage.
Sal, *salt* : saline, salary.
Salio, *saltum, I leap* : salient, assail, salmon, insult, result.
Salus, *salutis, safety* : salute, salutation.
Salvus, *safe* : salvation.
Sanctus, *holy* : sanctity, saint.
Sanguis, *sanguinis, blood* : sanguinary.
Sanus, *sound* : sane, sanity.
Sapio, *I taste, am wise* : sapor, taste : savour, sapient, insipid.
Satis, *enough* : satiate, satisfy.
Scala, *a ladder* : scale.
Scando, *scansum, I climb* : scan, ascend, ascension.
Scindo, *scissum, I cut* : rescind, scissors.
Scio, *I know* : science, conscience.
Scribo, *scriptum, I write* : scribe, describe, manuscript, conscription.
Scrutor, *I examine* : inscrutable.
Seco, *sectum, I cut* : section, bisect.
Sedeo, *sessum, I sit ; sideo, I set ; sedo, I settle* : sedan, sedate, consider, preside, supersede.
Semen, *seed* : seminary, disseminate.
Senex, *an old man* : senile, senator.
Sentio, *sensum, I feel* : sentiment, sense, dissension, resent.
Sepelio, *I bury* : sepulchre.
Septem, *seven* : September, septennial.
Sequor, *secutus, I follow* : sequence, consequence, execute, prosecute.

Sero, *sertum, I set in a row* : series, sermon, insert, exert.
Servus, *a slave ; servio, I serve* : servo, *I watch or preserve* : serve, serf, servitude, preserve, observe, deserve.
Sidus, *sideris, a star* : sidereal.
Signum, *a sign* : signal, design, ensign.
Similis, *like* : similar, dissemble, simulate.
Sinus, *a bend* : sinuous, insinuate.
Sisto, *I stop, stand* : assist, desist, resist.
Socius, *a companion* : social, associate.
Sol, *the sun* : solar, parasol, solstice.
Solidus, *firm* : solid, consolidate, solder.
Solor, *I comfort* : solace, console.
Solum, *the ground* : soil.
Solus, *alone* : solitude, desolate.
Solvo, *solutum, I loosen* : solve, resolution.
Somnus, *sleep* : somnolent.
Sono, *I sound* : sonorous, consonant.
Spargo, *sparsum, I strew* : asperse, disperse.
Specio, *spectum, I look* : species, appearance, kind : special, respect, spectator, suspicious, despise.
Spero, *I hope* : desperate.
Spiro, *I breathe* : spirit, inspire.
Splendeo, *I shine* : splendour, splendid.
Spondeo, *sponsum, I answer* : despond, response.
Stella, *a star* : stellar, constellation.
Sterno, *stratum, I lay flat* : prostrate, consternation.
Stilla, *a drop* : distil.
Stimulus, *a good* : stimulant.
Sto, *statum, I stand* : stable, state, distant, armistice, substance.
Stringo, *strictum, I tighten* : stringent, constrain, strict, restrict.
Struo, *structum, I build* : structure, construct, destroy, construe.
Studeo, *I am eager ; studium, zeal* : study.
Stupeo, *I am amazed* : stupid.
Suadeo, *suasum, I advise* : suasion, persuade.
Sublimis, *raised aloft* : sublime.
Sum, *I am ; esse, to be ; futurum, about to be* : entity, present, future.
Summus, *highest* : summit, summary.
Sumo, *sumptum, I take* : assume, consumption.
Surgo, *I rise* : insurrection, resource.
Tabula, *a table* : tabular.
Taceo, *I am silent* : tacit, taciturn.
Tango, *tactum, I touch* : tangent, tact, contiguous.
Tardus, *slow* : tardy, retard.
Tego, *tectum, I cover* : tegument, protect.
Temno, *temptum, I despise* : condemn, contempt.
Tempero, *I restrain* : temper, temperature.
Tempus, *temporis, time* : temporal, contemporary.
Tendo, *tensum, I stretch* : tendency, contend, tension.
Teneo, *tentum, I hold* : tenable, tenacious, retain, continuous.
Tento, *I try* : tentative, attempt.
Terminus, *a boundary* : term, determine.
Tero, *tritum, I rub* : trite, detriment.

Terra, *the earth*: terrace, mediterranean.
 Terreo, *I frighten*: terror, deter.
 Testis, *a witness*: testify, contest, in-
 testate.
 Texo, textum, *I weave*: text, textile, con-
 text.
 Timeo, *I fear*: timid, intimidate.
 Torqueo, tortum, *I twist*: torment, tor-
 ture, retort.
 Torreo, tostum, *I parch*: torrid, toast.
 Totus, *whole*: total.
 Traho, tractum, *I draw*; tracto, *I handle*:
 tract, treat, abstract, tractable.
 Tremo, *I shake*: tremor, tremble.
 Tres, tria, *three*: triangle, trefoil.
 Tribuo, *I give*: tribute, distribute.
 Tribus, *a tribe*: tribe, tribune.
 Trudo, trusum, *I thrust*: extrude, abstruse.
 Tuo, *I protect*: tutor, tuition.
 Tumeo, *I swell*: tumid, tumult.
 Turba, *a crowd*: turbid, disturb.
 Ultra, *beyond*; ulterior, *farther*; ultimus,
farthest: ulterior, ultimate.
 Umbra, *a shade*: umbrage, umbrella.
 Unda, *a wave*: undulate, abound.
 Unguo, unctum, *I anoint*: unguent, unction.
 Unus, *one*: unanimous, unite.
 Urbs, *a city*: urban, suburb.
 Urgeo, *I press*: urge, urgent.
 Uro, ustum, *I burn*: combustion.
 Utor, usus, *I use*: use, utility, usurp.
 Vacca, *a cow*: vaccinate.
 Vaco, *I am at leisure*: vacant, evacuate.
 Vado, vasum, *I go*: evade, invasion.
 Vago, *I wander*; vagus, *wandering*:
 vagrant, vagabond, vague.
 Valeo, *I am strong*: valid, convalescent,
 prevail, valedictory.
 Vapor, *steam*: vapour, evaporate.
 Varius, *different*: vary, invariable.

Vastus, *desolate*: vast, waste, devastate.
 Veho, vectum, *I carry*: vehement, vehicle,
 convey, invective.
 Velum, *a covering*: veil, develop, reveal.
 Vendo, *I sell*: vend, venal.
 Venio, ventum, *I come*: advent, venture,
 prevent.
 Ventus, *the wind*: ventilate.
 Verbum, *a word*: verb, verbose, proverb.
 Vergo, *I incline*: converge, diverge.
 Verminis, *a worm*: vermin, vermicular.
 Verto, versum, *I turn*: vertex, advert,
 convert, reverse.
 Verus, *true*: verity, verify, averment.
 Vestis, *a garment*: vest, invest, vesture.
 Vetus, veteris, *old*: veteran, inveterate.
 Via, *a way*: deviate, viaticum, trivial.
 Vicis, *change*: vicissitude, vicar, viceroy.
 Video, visum, *I see*: visage, evidence, pro-
 vide, survey, envy.
 Vinceo, victum, *I conquer*: invincible, con-
 vict.
 Vir, *a man*; virtus, *manliness*: virtue,
 triumvirate.
 Vita, *life*: vital.
 Vitium, *fault*: vice, vitiate.
 Vitrum, *glass*: vitreous.
 Vivo, victum, *I live*: vivacious, convivial,
 vivid, victual.
 Voco, *I call*: vocal, advocate, revoke,
 vowel, vocabulary.
 Volo, *I fly*: volatile.
 Volo, *I will*: volition, benevolent, volun-
 tary.
 Volvo, volutum, *I roll*: revolve, involu-
 tion, volume.
 Vorō, *I devour*: voracious, devour, carni-
 vorous.
 Voveo, votum, *I vow*: vote, devote, votary.
 Vulgus, *the common people*: vulgar.
 Vulnus, *a wound*: invulnerable

CHAPTER VI.—GREEK WORDS.

289. The principal Greek words from which modern English words are taken are as follows:—

(English c = Greek κ; y = υ; ch = χ; ē = η; ō = ω; h = rough breathing.)

Adelphos, *a brother*: Philadelphia.
 Aēr, *the air*: aeronaut.
 Agōgē, *a leading*; agōgos, *a leader*: syna-
 gogue, denagogue.
 Agōn, *a contest*: antagonist.
 Akmē, *a point*: acme.
 Akouō, *I hear*: acoustics.
 Akros, *top*: acropolis, acrostic.
 Ainigma, *a riddle*: enigma.
 Allēol, *one another*: parallel.
 Allos, *another*: allopathy.
 Amphi, *on both sides*: amphibious.
 Ancinos, *the wind*: ancimone.
 Anēr, andros, *a man*: monandria.
 Angelos, *a messenger*: angel, evangelist.
 Authos, *a flower*: anthology.

Anthrōpos, *a man*: misanthrope, anthro-
 pology.
 Archē, *rule, beginning*: monarch, architect.
 Arctos, *a bear*: Arctic.
 Aristos, *best*: aristocracy.
 Arithmos, *number*: arithmetic.
 Askēō, *I exercise*: ascetic.
 Astēr, *a star*: asterisk, astronomy.
 Atmos, *vapour*: atmosphere.
 Autos, *self*: autobiography.
 Axiōma, *a self-evident truth*: axiom.
 Ballo, *I throw*: hyperbole, parable.
 Baptō, *I dip*: baptize.
 Baros, *weight*: barometer.
 Basis, *treading, support*: base, basis.
 Biblion, *a book*: Bible, bibliography.

Bios, *life* : biography, amphibious.
 Botanē, *a plant* : botany.
Character, *something engraved* : character.
 Charis, *thanks, love* : eucharist.
 Cheir, *the hand* : chirography.
 Cholē, *bile* : melancholy.
 Chordē, *a string* : chord.
 Christos, *anointed*, Christ, Christian, *chrism*.
 Chronos, *time* : chronometer.
 Chrusos, *golden* : chrysalis.
 Chumos, *juice* : chyme.
 Daimon, *a spirit* : demon.
 Daktulos, *a finger* : dactyle.
 Dekatē, *ten* : decalogue.
 Dēmos, *the people* : democrat.
 Dendron, *a tree* : rhododendron.
 Deuteros, *second* : Deuteronomy.
 Diplōma, *anything folded* : diploma.
 Dogma, *an opinion* : dogmatic.
 Doxa, *an opinion, glory* : doxology.
 Draō, *I act* : drastic, drama.
 Dromos, *a running* : hippodrome.
 Dunamis, *power* : dynamics.
 Eidōlon, *an image* : idol, idolatry.
 Ekklēsia, *the church* : ecclesiastical.
 Elaō, *I draw out* : elastic.
 Erēmos, *solitary* : eremite, hermit.
 Ergon, *a work* : surgeon, energy.
 Ethnos, *a nation* : ethnology.
 Ethos, *a custom* : ethics.
 Etumos, *true* : etymology.
 Eu, *well* : eulogy.
 Gala, *milk* : galaxy.
 Gameō, *I marry* : bigamy.
 Gastēr, *the belly* : gastric.
 Gē, *the earth* : geography.
 Genos, *a race* : genealogy, heterogeneous.
 Glōssa, or Glōtta, *the tongue* : glossary, *polyglot*.
 Gluphō, *I carve* : hieroglyphic.
 Gnōmōn, *a pointer* : gnomon *physiognomy*.
 Gonía, *a corner* : pentagon.
 Gramma, *a letter* : grammar, epigram.
 Graphō, *I write* : graphic, autograph.
 Gumnos, *naked* : gymnastic.
 Gunē, *a woman* : misogyny.
 Haima, *blood* : hæmorrhage.
 Hairēsis, *choice* : heresy.
 Hēlios, *the sun* : heliotrope.
 Hēmi, *half* : hemisphere.
 Hēmera, *a day* : ephemeral.
 Hepta, *seven* : heptagon.
 Heteros, *another* : heterodox.
 Hex, *six* : hexagon.
 Hieros, *holy* : hierarchy.
 Hippos, *a horse* : hippopotamus.
 Hodos, *a way* : method, exodus.
 Holos, *whole* : catholic.
 Homōios, *like* : homœopathy.
 Homos, *same* : homogeneous.
 Hōra, *an hour* : horoscope.
 Hudōr, *water* : hydrogen.
 Ichthus, *a fish* : ichthyology.
 Idios, *peculiar* : idiom.
 Isos, *equal* : isosecies.
 Kalos, *beautiful* : caligraphy.

Kaluptō, *I hide* : apocalypse.
 Kanōn, *a rule* : canonical.
 Kaustikos, *burning* : caustic.
 Klimax, *a ladder* : climax.
 Klinō, *I bend* : clinic, enclitic.
 Koinos, *common* : epicene.
 Kosmos, *world* : cosmogony.
 Kranion, *the skull* : craniology.
 Kratos, *strength* : democrat.
 Krinō, *I judge* : critic, crisis.
 Kruptō, *I hide* : apocryphal.
 Kuklos, *a circle* : cycle, encyclopædia.
 Kuōn, *a dog* : cynic.
Lambano, *I take* (root *lab, lep*) : syllable, *epilepsy*.
 Legō, *I say* ; lexis, *speech* : eclectic, lexicon, *dialect*.
 Leipō, *I fail* : ecliptic, ellipse.
 Lithos, *a stone* : lithograph.
 Logos, *speech, reason, science* : logic, *dialogue, mythology*.
 Luō, *I loosen* ; lysis, *a loosening* : paralysis.
Mania, *madness* : maniac.
 Martur, *a witness* : martyr.
 Mathēma, *learning* : mathematics.
 Mēchanē, *a contrivance* : mechanics.
 Melas, *black* : melancholy.
 Melos, *a song* : melody.
 Metallon, *a metal* : metal.
 Mētēr, *a mother* : metropolis.
 Metron, *a measure* : geometry.
 Mikros, *small* : microscope.
 Mimos, *an imitator* : mimic.
 Misos, *hatred* : misanthrope.
 Mnēmōn, *remembering* : mnemonics.
 Monos, *alone* : monarch.
 Morphē, *shape* : amorphous.
 Muthos, *fable* : mythic.
 Naus, *a ship* : nausea, nautical.
 Nekros, *dead* : necropolis.
 Neos, *new* : neology, Neapolis.
 Nēsos, *an island* : Polynesia.
 Nomos, *a law* : astronomy.
 Nosos, *a disease* : nosology.
 Odē, *a song* : ode.
 Oikos, *a house* : economy, dioecse.
 Oligoi, *few* : oligarchy.
 Onoma, *a name* : synonym.
 Ophthalmos, *the eye* : ophthalmia.
 Optomai, *I see* : optics, synopsis.
 Organon, *an instrument* : organ.
 Ornis, ornithos, *a bird* : ornithology.
 Orphanos, *bereaved* : orphan.
 Orthos, *right, straight* : orthography.
 Oxus, *sharp* : oxide, oxygen.
Paideia, *instruction* : cyclopædia.
 Pais, paidos, *a boy* : pædagogus.
 Pas (root, *pan*) *all* : panacea, pantheist.
 Pathos, *feeling* : pathetic.
 Pente, *five* : pentagon.
 Petalon, *a leaf* : petal.
 Petra, *a rock* : petrify.
 Phagō, *I eat* : sarcophagus.
 Phainō, *I appear* : phenomenon, phantasy, *fancy*.
 Phēmi, *I say* : prophecy, blasphemy.
 Pherō, *I carry* : metaphor.
 Philos, *fond of* : philosophy, Philip.

Phobos, *fear* : hydrophobia.
 Phōnē, *voice* : phonetic.
 Phōs, phōtos, *light* : photography.
 Phrasis, *saying* : phrase.
 Phrēn, *the mind* : phrenology.
 Phthongos, *sound* : diphthong.
 Phusis, *nature* : physics.
 Planētēs, *wandering* : planet.
 Plassō, *I mould* : plastic.
 Plēssō, *I strike* : apoplexy.
 Pneuma, *air* : pneumatics.
 Poicō, *I make* : poet.
 Polemos, *war* : polemical.
 Poleō, *I sell* : bibliopolist.
 Polis, *a city* : police.
 Polus, *many* : polygon.
 Potamos, *a river* : hippopotamus.
 Pous, podos, *a foot* : antipodes, polypus.
 Prassō, *I do* : practice.
 Presbuteros, *elder* : presbyter, priest.
 Prōtos, *first* : prototype.
 Pseudos, *false* : pseudo-martyr.
 Psuchē, *the soul* : psychology.
 Ptōma, *a fall* : symptom.
 Pur, *fire* : pyre, pyramid.
 Rhetōr, *an orator* : rhetoric.
 Sarx, *flesh* : sarcasm.
 Schizō, *I divide* : schism.
 Skelos, *a leg* : isosceles.

Skēnē, *a tent* : scene.
 Skopeō, *I see* : telescope, episcopacy.
 Sophos, *wise* : philosopher.
 Spaō, *I draw* : spasm.
 Sphaira, *a globe* : hemisphere.
 Stasis, *a standing* : statics.
 Stellō, *I send* : apostle, epistle.
 Stenos, *narrow* : stenography.
 Stichos, *a line* : distich, acrostic.
 Stigma, *a brand* : stigma.
 Strophē, *a turning* : apostrophe.
 Sukos, *a fig* : sycophant.
 Taphos, *a tomb* : epitaph.
 Taxis, *an arrangement* : syntax.
 Technē, *an art* : technical.
 Tēle, *far off* : telegraph.
 Teuchos, *implement, book* : pentateuch.
 Theaomai, *I see* : theatre.
 Theos, *God* : theism.
 Thermos, *warm* : thermometer.
 Thesis, *a placing, position* : hypothesis.
 Tomē, *a cutting* : epitome.
 Topos, *a place* : topography.
 Tropos, *a turning* : tropics.
 Tupos, *I shape* : type.
 Turannos, *a despot* : tyrant.
 Zōnē, *a girdle* : zone.
 Zōon, *an animal* : zoology.

Remark.

A **Hybrid Word** is a word of which the constituent parts are derived from different languages : as, (1) *Causeless*, from Latin *causa* and English *less* ; (2) *Uncertain*, from English *un* and Latin *certus* ; (3) *Eatable*, from English *eat* and Latin suffix *ibilis* ; (4) *Parasol*, from Greek *para* and Latin *sol*.

PART III.—SYNTAX.

A. Rules of Syntax.

290. Syntax treats of the correct method of arranging words into sentences.

291. Words are related to each other, by way of *Concord* and *Government*.

292. Concord is the agreement of one word with another in gender, number, person, or case.

293. Government is the power which one word has over another in determining its case or mood.

CHAPTER I.—SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

[*Parsing*, pp. 107—115.]

I. The Nominative.

294. Rule I. The subject of a verb is always in the nominative case : as, *Man* thinks ; *He* walks.

EXPLANATION.—*Man* is the subject of the verb *thinks*, and is in the nominative case; *he* is the subject of the verb *walks*, and is in the nominative case.

Obs.—The leading rules referring to nouns apply also to pronouns. Those which are peculiar to the pronoun are given separately under the “Syntax of the Pronoun.”

EXERCISE 108.

Parse :—

1. The squirrel ascends the neighbouring beech. 2. The bold bird of prey alights. 3. He sees me. 4. The cottage curs at early pilgrims bark. 5. Down the rough slope the ponderous waggon rings. 6. The maid of honour had her own equipage. 7. A prophet hath no honour in his own country. 8. The wrinkle on the cheek may be the course of secret tears. 9. The experience of the trapper was in the right. 10. A wise caution was observed in this respect; for the treachery of a single deserter might have imperilled the success of the expedition had the exact object been known.

295. Rule II. The verb *to be* and other copulative verbs take the same case after them as before them: as, *Wellington was a great general*; *William was surnamed Rufus*.

EXPLANATION.—*Wellington* before the verb *was* is in the nominative case, therefore *general* (which refers to the same person) after the verb *was*, is also in the nominative case. *William* before the verb *was surnamed* is in the nominative case, therefore *Rufus* (which refers to the same person) after the verb *was surnamed*, is also in the nominative case.

296. The Copulative Verbs are: *To be, to appear, to become, to be born, to be bred, to begin* (intrans.), *to come* (especially in phrase *to come off*), *to commence* (intrans.), *to continue* (intrans.), *to die, to expire, to fall, to go, to grow* (intrans.), *to lie, to look, to prove* (intrans.), *to reign, to remain, to return* (intrans.), *to rise, to seem, to sit, to stand* (intrans.), *to turn* (especially in phrase *to turn out*), *to wander*.

The following verbs called *factitive* (§ 309) become copulative in the passive voice :—*To account, to acknowledge, to admit, to advertise, to appoint, to argue, to believe, to bespeak, to bring* (in phrase *to bring up*), *to call, to choose, to christen, to confess, to consecrate, to consider, to constitute, to count, to create, to crown, to declare, to decree, to deem, to discover, to dub, to elect, to enrol, to enter* (as, “*He entered himself a soldier*”), *to entitle, to esteem, to fancy, to feel, to feign, to find, to guess, to hold, to judge, to know, to lead, to leave, to make, to mould, to name, to nominate, to offer, to own, to place, to proclaim, to pronounce, to prove, to rank, to reckon, to relate, to render, to report, to salute, to say, to see, to show, to style, to suppose, to take* (as, “*He took the captain prisoner*”), *to think, to vote, to warrant, to write*.

EXERCISE 109.

Parse :—

1. It was a friar of orders gray. 2. To the peasants of old times the world outside their own direct experience was a region of vagueness and mystery. 3. Their priests were called Druids. 4. Mary would soon cease to be a difficulty. 5. I would be a merman bold. 6. All the world's a stage. 7. My eldest son was a bred scholar. 8. He was born heir to a large estate. 9. Elizabeth was proclaimed queen. 10. He returned to his own country a millionaire.

297. Rule III. The verbal nouns* *being, becoming, appearing, remaining*, and the like (§ 296), take a noun after them in the

* Or *gerunds*.

nominative case even when they are not preceded by a nominative case: as, She prided herself also upon being an excellent *contriver* in housekeeping.

EXPLANATION.—*Bring*, though not preceded by a nominative case, takes after it the noun *contriver* in the nominative case.

Obs. 1.—The idiom described in this rule is also explained (1) by supplying an ellipsis: thus, “She prided herself on being an excellent contriver” = she prided herself on being (*i.e.*, existing) as an excellent contriver *exists*; (2) by regarding the verbal noun and the following noun as a compound: thus, *being-an-excellent-contriver*, a compound noun.

Obs. 2.—The infinitives of the verbs mentioned above (§ 296) take the same case after them as before them (by Rule 11.), but if they are not preceded by a case, the case following them is the nominative: *e.g.*, To be a *benefactor* is better than to be a *warrior*.

EXERCISE 110.

Parse:—

1. My wife insisted upon her being called Olivia. 2. I valued myself on being a strict monogamist. 3. He had not the sense to discern the impropriety of his being an incessant talker. 4. He enjoyed the privilege of being chief of his party. 5. Far from being an upright man, he is not even possessed of common honesty. 6. The idle boy was severely reprimanded for not being a diligent scholar. 7. How loudly did I complain of being considered a traitor to a country for which my affection is unbounded! 8. Instead of being a harsh father, thou art indeed kind and gentle. 9. To be a good linguist was his sole aim. 10. By being named judge, he has attained to the height of his ambition.

298. Rule IV. A noun or a pronoun is said to be in the **Nominative Absolute** when it is followed by a participle and has its case independent of any other word in the sentence: as, The *speech* delivered, the orator retired; *He* being dead, we shall live.

EXPLANATION.—*Speech* is in the nominative absolute, because it is followed by the past or complete participle *delivered*, and depends on no other word for its case. *He* is in the nominative absolute, because it is followed by the present or incomplete participle *being*, and depends on no other word for its case.

Obs. 1.—In Old English the absolute case was the dative, and of this some traces are found in Milton and other writers—*e.g.*, *Him* destroyed, all else will follow. Here *him*, originally dative absolute, is now parsed as objective absolute.

Obs. 2.—An absolute phrase is an abridged sentence. Thus, “The moon rising, we resumed our journey” = when the moon rose, we resumed our journey.

EXERCISE 111.

Parse:—

1. The churches, the lead having been torn from the roofs, crumbled into ruins. 2. My whole thought being now bent on cultivating my talent, I applied to business. 3. My sole study, therefore, being to escape with my household gods, I disappeared from the playhouse. 4. Michaelmas-eve happening on the next day, we were invited to burn nuts and play tricks at neighbour Flamborough's. 5. The business of the toilet being over, we had at last the satisfaction of seeing him mounted upon the colt. 6. Her mother dying of the gift she gave,—that precious gift,—what else remained to him? 7. Nothing could exceed the neatness of my enclosures, the elms and hedgerows appearing with inexpressible beauty. 8. The day having dawned, I started on my journey.

9. And one man in his time plays many parts,
His acts being seven ages.
10. So folly pleads,
And, avarice being judge, with ease succeeds.

299. Rule V. A noun or pronoun used in direct address is in the **Nominative of Address**: as, Then yield thee, *coward*; Cry aloud, *thou* that sittest in the dusk.

EXPLANATION.—The words *coward* and *thou* are used in direct address, and are therefore in the nominative of address.

Obs. 1.—The nominative of address is, by some grammarians, called the vocative.

Obs. 2.—Nominatives of address are always of the second person.

EXERCISE 112.

Parse :—

1. O friends, I hear the tread of nimble feet hasting this way. 2. These are Thy glorious works, Parent of good. 3. Heavenly stranger, please to taste these bounties. 4. Grieve not, my child, chase all thy fears away. 5. Wake, melancholy mother, wake and weep. 6. England, with all thy faults, I love thee still, my country! 7. What wind blew you hither, Pistol?

8. Sweet Teviot! on thy silvery tide,
The glaring bale-fires blaze no more.

300. Rule VI. A noun used abruptly in an exclamation is called the **Nominative Exclamatory**: as, Thy crystal *stream*, Afton, how lovely it glides!

EXPLANATION.—*Stream* is used in an exclamatory manner, and is called the nominative exclamatory.

Obs.—Nominatives exclamatory are treated by some grammarians as interjections.

EXERCISE 113.

Parse :—

1. Poor, forlorn creature! where are now the flatterers that he could once inspire and command! 2. Religion! what treasures untold reside in that heavenly word! 3. These cowards—I despise them! 4. The king! who's that? 5. Your house! It is left unto you desolate.

6. Resplendent sight! Behold the coxcomb Czar,
The autocrat of waltzes and of war.

Place of the Nominative.

301. Rule VII. The nominative denoting the subject generally precedes the verb: as, *I* had a dove, and the sweet *dove* died.

The exceptions to this rule are :—

1. When the sentence is interrogative: as, Where is your *son*?
2. When the sentence is exclamatory: as, How sweet are all *things* here!
3. When the sentence is optative, that is, expresses a wish: as, Long live the *king*!
4. When the sentence is imperative: as, Go *ye* into all the world.
5. When the sentence begins with one of these words, *hence, here, hereafter, herein, now, so, such, that, then, thence, there, therein, the same,*

these, this, those, thus, wherein, yet, or a phrase : as, Then began a murder grim and great ; From the heart of the procession rose a solemn chant.

6. When the subjunctive is used with the sign omitted : as,

Did *Charity* prevail, the press would prove
A vehicle of virtue, truth, and love.

7. When *neither* or *nor* is used for *and not*, and precedes the verb : as,
Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall *ye* touch it.

8. When the verbs *reply, say, quoth, think, answer, continue, whisper, mutter*, and the like, are used parenthetically : as, Stay, replied the captain.

9. When the sentence begins with an emphatic adjective or adverb : as,
Wonderful are thy *works* ; Down fell the *towers*.

10. When emphasis requires a change : as, Silver and gold have *I* none.

11. In poetry : as,

After him came spurring hard
A *gentleman* almost foespent with speed.

Obs.—When an infinitive or a sentence is the nominative case to the verb, it generally follows the verb, and is represented before it by the pronoun *it* : as, It is excellent to have a *giant's strength*, but it is tyrannous to use it like a *giant*.

EXERCISE 114.

Parse :—

1. There appeared at a great distance a very shining light, and in the midst of it, a person of a most beautiful aspect ; her name was Truth.
2. "Let me pass !" cried he, in a voice of entreaty. 3. Beside the portal doors, buttress'd from moonlight, stands he. 4. Such was the portrait an apostle drew. 5. Of their train am I. 6. So work the honey bees. 7. Down came, by the hands of one of the Syrian slave-girls, the fowl and the wine. 8. Smooth runs the water where the brook is deep.

9. Oh, could their ancient Incas rise again,
How would they take up Israel's taunting strain !
Art thou too fallen, Iberia ?

10. Heavily hangs the broad sunflower
Over its grave i' the earth so chilly ;
Heavily hangs the hollyhock,
Heavily hangs the tiger-lily.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 290—301.

1. What is syntax ? 2. How are words related to each other ? 3. What is concord ? 4. What is government ? 5. What is the case of the subject ? 6. What verbs take the same case after them as before them ? 7. What is a copulative verb ? 8. Name copulative verbs. 9. What is a factitive verb ? 10. What case follows the verbal nouns of copulative verbs ? 11. Explain the construction of "I am tired of being a drummer." 12. What is the nominative absolute ? 13. What was the absolute case in Old English ? 14. What is an absolute phrase equivalent to ? 15. What is the nominative of address ? 16. What other name is given to the nominative of address ? 17. What is the person of a nominative of address ? 18. What is the nominative exclamatory ? 19. What are nominatives exclamatory sometimes called ? 20. What is the usual place of the nominative of the subject ? 21. When is the nominative of the subject placed after the verb ?

II. The Possessive.

302. Rule VIII. The possessive case of a noun or pronoun is governed by the name of the thing possessed : as, *Solomon's* temple was destroyed ; *Their* banner was lost.

EXPLANATION.—When the former of two nouns, which come together, implies possession with reference to the other, it is put in the possessive case, and is said to be governed by the other. Thus, *Solomon's* is in the possessive case, being governed by *temple*, the name of the thing possessed; so *their* is possessive case, being governed by *banner*, the name of the thing possessed.

Obs. 1.—The latter or governing noun is sometimes omitted: as, They went to St. Paul's (*cathedral*).

Obs. 2.—The objective case with the preposition *of* is frequently used to express the sense of the possessive: as, *Philip's* house = the house *of Philip*. *Philip's* is called the English possessive or genitive; *of Philip* is called the Norman possessive or genitive. The possessive case (English genitive) is generally used with names of persons, animals, and personified objects: as, *John's* houses; The *farmer's* horse; The *elephant's* tusk; The *torrent's* roar; *Reason's* voice; The *law's* delay. Certain periods of time are also sometimes put in the possessive case: as, A *day's* march. In this usage poets have greater latitude than prose writers—*e.g.*, Seeking the bubble reputation even at the *cannon's* mouth; He sat him down at a *pillar's* base. The objective with *of* (Norman genitive) is chiefly used with nouns of neuter gender, and invariably so when one noun denotes some quality or characteristic of the object denoted by the other noun: as, A crown *of gold*; The violence *of the wind*.

Obs. 3.—The noun that governs a plural possessive should not be made plural unless the sense requires it: as, What is your life? not, What are your lives?

Obs. 4.—When the thing possessed is only one of a number belonging to the possessor, both the possessive case and *of* are used: as, Read a sonnet *of Milton's*. We cannot properly say "That face *of yours*," because a person has but one face, but we can say "That friend *of yours*," because a person may have more than one friend.

Obs. 5.—The possessive case is equivalent to an adjective: as, The *king's* cause = the *royal* cause.

EXERCISE 115.

Change into the possessive form:—

1. The house of Ahab was destroyed.
2. The paintings of Raphael are renowned.
3. The works of Shakespeare are an inexhaustible mine.
4. The victories of Napoleon produced no lasting good.
5. The fields of the farmer are yellow.
6. The horses of the dealers are for sale.

EXERCISE 116.

Parse:—

1. I am out of humanity's reach.
2. Men's evil manners live in brass; their virtues we write in water.
3. Wolfe's body was embalmed, and borne to the river for conveyance to England.
4. Basil was Benedict's friend.
5. Men's happiness or misery is most part of their own making.
6. There was lack of woman's nursing, there was dearth of woman's tears.
7. Labour for labour's sake is against nature.
8. We should not judge of things by men's opinions, but of opinions by things.

9. He had left his home in his spirit's pride
With his father's sword and blessing.

10. Rome! thou art doom'd to perish, and thy days,
Like mortal man's are numbered.

303. Rule IX. When two or more nouns follow each other in the possessive case, the sign of the possessive is affixed only to the last: as, *England* and *France's* armies fought in the Crimea.

EXPLANATION.—Although the armies are the property of both England and France, the sign of the possessive is affixed only to the latter name (*France's*).

Obs. 1.—When each word is emphatic, when the words are not in apposition, or when the thing possessed is the separate property of two or more possessors, the sign of the possessive is affixed to each noun: as, He has obtained the *mayor's* and the *sheriff's* signature.

Obs. 2.—If any words intervene between the possessives, the sign of the possessive must be affixed to each: as, *England's*, not *France's* sailors landed in China.

Obs. 3.—Sometimes a whole expression is dealt with as a single word and the sign of the possessive is affixed to the last word in the expression: as, The king of Holland's fleet sailed. Here *king* is possessive case, with its sign transferred to *Holland*, which is really objective. The whole expression *king of Holland* is treated as a single word and the sign of the possessive is affixed to *Holland*, the last word in the expression.

EXERCISE 117

Parse :—

1. The Earl of Surrey's troops were victorious. 2. Israel and Syria's forces fought against Judah. 3. Every one has heard of Rosinante, the Knight of La Mancha's steed. 4. The Duke of Wellington's tactics were crowned with success. 5. He had his father's and his friend's assistance. 6. Athens and Sparta's sons fought side by side against the common foe.

Place of the Possessive.

304. Rule X. The possessive case always precedes the noun by which it is governed: as, The *king's* castle, not The castle *king's*.

EXERCISE 118.

Parse :—

1. I am Duke Humphrey's wife. 2. The Greeks took Troy after a ten years' siege. 3. In a cowslip's bell I lie. 4. Who kills a man, kills a reasonable creature, God's image. 5. The crag repeats the raven's croak. 6. The links o'er Malcolm's neck he flung. 7. Old Kaspar's work was done. 8. A beehive's hum shall soothe my ear.

9. O, open for our Lady's sake,
A pilgrim's blessing win.

10. In every change of Man's estate
Are lights and guides allowed.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 302—304.

1. By what is the possessive case governed? 2. Give an instance in which the governing word is omitted. 3. How may the sense of the possessive case be expressed? 4. When should we use the possessive, and when the objective with *of*? 5. When should the noun governing a plural possessive be plural? 6. When are the possessive and *of* both used? 7. To what part of speech is the possessive case equivalent? 8. When two or more possessives come together, where is the sign placed? 9. When is the possessive sign affixed to each noun? 10. When an expression like "The queen of England" is treated as a single word, where is the sign of the possessive placed? 11. What is the place of the possessive?

III. The Objective.

305. Rule XI. Transitive verbs, active voice, govern the objective case: as, Love rules his *kingdom* without a sword; I know *thee*.

EXPLANATION.—*Rules* is a transitive verb, active voice, and governs *kingdom* in the objective case; *know* is a transitive verb, active voice, and governs *thee* in the objective case.

Obs. 1.—Transitive participles govern the objective case: as, In the bows stood a man of gigantic stature, brandishing a *harpoon* in his right hand.

Obs. 2.—The verbal nouns* of transitive verbs govern the objective case: as, He would beat the bushes without catching the *birds*.

Obs. 3.—The verb *to be* and other copulative verbs (§ 296) take the same case after them as before them: as, His *virtues* were his *pride*.

EXERCISE 119.

Parse :—

1. The doctor repeated his remarks. 2. Orestes had spoken the exact truth. 3. Our ancestors bought gold with victory. 4. Floating forests paint the wave with green. 5. Having engaged the linner, our next deliberation was to show the superiority of our taste in the attitudes. 6. Soft pity heals his woes. 7. Thought would destroy their paradise. 8. Cast thy bread upon the waters. 9. The midnight brought the signal sound of strife.

10. She left the web, she left the loom,
She made three paces through the room,
She saw the water-lily bloom,
She saw the helmet and the plume.

306. Rule XII. Two nouns or a noun and pronoun in the objective case, the one denoting a person and the other a thing, follow certain verbs: as, I sent *him a guinea*.

EXPLANATION.—The verb *sent* is followed by a noun and pronoun in the objective case, viz., *him* denoting a person, and *guinea* denoting a thing. *Him* is called the *indirect* object, and *guinea* the *direct* object. In parsing, the indirect object may be placed under the government of a preposition understood: thus, *to* is understood before *him*.

307. The verbs which take an indirect as well as a direct object after them are :—*Advance, allow, ask, bring, buy, cost, deny, do, envy, fine, forward, give, grant, guarantee, leave, lend, make, offer, order, pay, procure, promise, refuse, sell, send, show, teach, tell, yield*. [Parsing, p. 112.]

EXERCISE 120.

Parse :—

1. I brought Goldsmith the money. 2. Then the king gave him a purse of gold, and dismissed him. 3. Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. 4. Sirrah, I'll teach thee a speech. 5. When a wise man gives thee better counsel, give me mine again. 6. I could not refuse him my company. 7. My father on a birthday gave it me. 8. My wife gave him great encomiums. 9. She left him her fortune.

10. My soul shall yield thee willing thanks and praise
For the chief blessings of my fairest days.

308. Rule XIII. Some verbs in the passive voice take an object after them: as, He was refused *admittance*.

EXPLANATION.—The verbs which, in the passive voice, take an object after them are those which, in the active voice, are followed by two objects, one of the person, and the other of the thing. Thus the verb *refuse*, in the active voice, may be followed by an object of the person and an object of the thing: as, They refused *him admittance*. In the passive voice, the person is made the subject, and the object of the thing is retained, hence *admittance* is objective case after *was refused*.

* Or *gerunds*.

EXERCISE 121.

Parse :—

1. We were shown Edward the Confessor's tomb. 2. He was owed money by the Regent. 3. We were shown a room. 4. The prisoner was allowed an advocate. 5. Am I denied this favour? 6. The eldest son was promised a watch on his sixteenth birthday. 7. I have been told this wondrous tale. 8. The wily courtier was offered a post of honour. 9. The teacher was asked a question. 10. Nothing was ever denied me by my worthy master.

309. Rule XIV. Certain verbs called factitive admit, in the active voice, two objects after them: as, The common people made *him* their *leader*.

EXPLANATION.—The verb *made* has two objects, (1) direct, *him*, (2) factitive, *leader*.

Obs. 1.—Factitive verbs are so called because they contain the idea of *making* (Latin *facere*) by thought, word, or deed. In the passive voice they are copulative verbs. See list in § 296.

Obs. 2.—The verb *to be* may be understood between the direct object and the factitive object: thus, The common people made him *to be* their leader.

EXERCISE 122.

Parse :—

1. We called him a poet. 2. She refused positively to name Mary Stuart her successor. 3. We must declare ourselves his rivals. 4. Who calls himself a friend? 5. He considered the transaction a legal sale. 6. I found you a queen in your court. 7. I'll prove thee a traitor.

8. I hear thee sp. *ak* of the better land:

Thou call'st its children a happy band.

9. Ye winds that have made me your sport!

Convey to this desolate shore

Some cordial endearing report

Of a land I shall visit no more.

10. I crown thee king of intimate delights,
Fireside enjoyments, home-born happiness,
And all the comforts that the lowly roof
Of undisturbed retirement, and the hours
Of long, uninterrupted evening know.

310. Rule XV. Some intransitive verbs are followed by an object of kindred meaning: as, He dreamed a *dream*.

EXPLANATION.—*Dream* is akin in meaning to the verb *dreamed*, and is called the object of cognate signification, or the Cognate Objective.

EXERCISE 123.

Parse :—

1. He sang his song and I replied with mine. 2. A scornful laugh laughed he. 3. We lived a life as careless as birds. 4. He laughed a laugh of merry scorn. 5. Sing a new song. 6. Live not a life of sloth. 7. We danced the country dance. 8. We have dreamed a dream and there is no interpreter. 9. I have fought a good fight. 10. She sleeps the sleep of innocence. *A. Jane*!

311. Rule XVI. Some verbs take after them an object of time, space, weight, number, or measurement: as, We watched all *day*.

EXPLANATION.—*Day* is in the objective case, denoting duration of time.

Obs.—A preposition is understood. Thus, We watched all day = we watched *during* all the day.

EXERCISE 124.

Parse :—

1. He taught there forty years. 2. And the next day, both morning and afternoon, he was kept by our party. 3. Hooper burned three quarters of an hour. 4. A man usually requires to sleep eight hours out of the twenty-four. 5. The nugget weighed sixty ounces. 6. I went three times and saw him not. 7. The mighty rampart rose six thousand feet above our head. 8. I hunted some years with Lord Darlington's fox-hounds.

312. Rule XVII. Prepositions govern the objective case : as, He sailed from *Hull* to *London*.

EXPLANATION.—*Hull* is objective case governed by the preposition *from* : *London* is objective case governed by the preposition *to*.

Obs. 1.—The preposition is often understood after *like*, *nigh*, *near*, *next*, *unlike* : as, Words are like *to* arrows. Also after *worth* : as, It is not *worth* a groat.

Obs. 2.—Prepositions are often understood before an indirect object : as, He gave me the book—he gave *to* me the book.

Obs. 3.—The prepositions *in*, *on*, *during*, *for*, *from*, etc., are often understood before nouns of time, place, etc. : as, He walks all day—he walks *during* all the day.

EXERCISE 125.

Parse :—

1. The wakeful trump of doom must thunder through the deep. 2. I spy the rock beneath the smiling sea. 3. A stranger, accustomed to the crowds and bustle of London or Paris, is struck on his arrival at St. Petersburg by the emptiness of the streets. 4. Our hopes, like withered leaves, fall fast. 5. My friend caught me by the elbow, and led me out of the public walk. 6. Cataracts of water flooded the houses in the city and turned the streets into rivers ; trees were torn up by the roots and whirled through the air, and—a more awful omen—the forked lightning struck down the steeple of the church where the heretic service had been read for the first time.

Place of the Objective.

313. Rule XVIII. The objective case follows the verb or preposition on which it depends : as, The waves dashed the *ship* against the *rocks*.

The exceptions to this rule are :—

1. When the word in the objective case is a relative or an interrogative pronoun : as, Is there a bard *whom* genius fires ? *What* do you mean ?

2. When the noun in the objective is preceded by *whatewer*, *whatsoever*, or *whichsoever* : as, *Whatever* *uncasiness* he seemed to endure, it could easily be perceived that Olivia's anguish was much greater.

3. When emphasis requires a change : as, *Me* have ye bereaved of my children.

4. When poetic license is used : as, His *prayer* he saith, this holy man.

EXERCISE 126.

Parse :—

1. The mind returns to its usual state of indifference. 2. This I my glory account, my exaltation, and my whole delight. 3. The danger they

discern not they deny 4. Words learned by rote a parrot may rehearse.
 5. License they mean when they cry liberty. 6. Whom have I to complain
 of but myself? 7. Each flower the dews have lightly wet. 8. A smaller
 boon than this I cannot beg.

9. An habitation giddy and unsure
 Hath he that buildeth on the vulgar heart.
 10. The hounds ran swiftly through the woods
 The nimble deer to take,
 And with their cries the hills and dales
 An echo shrill did make.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 305—313.

1. What case follows transitive verbs, active voice? 2. What verbs take the same case after them as before them? 3. What case do transitive participles govern? 4. What case do the verbal nouns* of transitive verbs govern? 5. What verbs are followed by a double object? 6. What verbs, in the passive voice, retain an objective case? 7. What are factitive verbs? 8. How many objects follow factitive verbs? 9. What do factitive verbs become in the passive voice? 10. What verb may be understood between the direct and factitive objects? 11. What is the object of cognate signification? 12. What is the object of time, space, weight, number, or measurement? 13. What case do prepositions govern? 14. After what adjectives is the preposition *to* understood? 15. What is the usual place of the objective? 16. When does the objective precede the governing verb?

IV. Apposition.

314. Rule XIX. When two nouns, or a noun and pronoun, come together, the one serving to explain the other, they are in apposition and agree in case: as, John the *Baptist* was beheaded; Brutus killed Cæsar, *him* who had been his friend.

EXPLANATION.—*John* is nominative case to the verb *was beheaded*, and *Baptist*, which signifies the same person, is nominative case in apposition with *John*. *Cæsar* is objective case governed by the transitive verb *killed*, and *him*, which signifies the same person, is objective case in apposition with *Cæsar*.

Obs. 1.—**Apposition**, from Latin *appositio*, means “a placing beside.” The word in apposition is adjectival to the other, being used to define the person or thing more accurately.

Obs. 2.—When a word is repeated for emphasis, it is in apposition: as, Truth, simple truth, was written in his face.

Obs. 3.—A noun is sometimes in apposition to a whole sentence: as, The pirates boarded the ship, an act which was promptly resented by the gallant crew.

Obs. 4.—A part is often put in apposition with the whole: as, They love one another. *They* and *one* (or *person* understood) are in apposition.

Obs. 5.—The nominatives before and after the verb *to be* and other copulative verbs are in a kind of apposition. Hence copulative verbs are also called *apposition-verbs*. In the sentences, It is *I*; It is *we*—*I* is in apposition with *it*, and *we* is in apposition with *it*.

Obs. 6.—It is generally improper to use both the noun and its pronoun as nominatives to the same verb or as objectives after the same verb: as, My heart *it* is broken. But in the older writers we find this usage where emphasis is required: as, the Lord *he* is God. It is a species of apposition.

EXERCISE 127.

Parse:—

- Calais, the glory of England, the fear of England's enemies, was lost.
- Thus perished Pythagoras, the Samian philosopher, founder of the

* Or *gerunds*.

Italian school, and the great luminary of the heathen world. 3. God himself is with us for our captain.

4. The birds they sing,
The deer they fling.

5. Lo ! where the rosy-bosom'd Hours,
Fair Venus' train appear.

6. Soul of the age !
The applause, delight, the wonder of our stage !
My Shakespeare, rise !

315. Rule XX. When two or more nouns in apposition form one complex name, the sign of the plural is used with the last only : as, *The Miss Smiths*.

EXPLANATION.—*Miss* and *Smith* are in apposition, and form one complex name : hence the sign of the plural is affixed only to *Smith*.

Obs.—Some prefer *Misses Smith*, while others write *Misses Smiths*. (See § 45, Obs. 4) The form *Messrs. Lambert* has the sanction of usage.

EXERCISE 128.

Parse :—

1. The Lords Justices reserved their decision. 2. The Miss Vernons were invited. 3. Lords Wardens were appointed by the king. 4. The Lords Commissioners prorogued the parliament. 5. The Miss Arundels were remarkable for their beauty. 6. The Messrs. Smith chartered a vessel.

316. Rule XXI. When the nouns in apposition are in the possessive case, the sign of the possessive is used only with one of them : as, *Read the poet Cowper's works*.

EXPLANATION.—*Poet* and *Cowper* are in apposition, but the sign of the possessive is only used with the latter noun, *Cowper*.

Obs.—The sign of the possessive is usually affixed to the last noun, but if several nouns, or a description, be appended to the first noun, the sign of the possessive is affixed to the first noun : as, I called at *Smith's*, an old friend of mine, and a very worthy man.

EXERCISE 129.

Parse :—

1. Lord Warwick's days are o'er. 2. Stephen the miller's carts were in front of the inn. 3. The work is George Eliot's, the greatest living novelist. 4. Henry the Eighth's policy was successful. 5. My brother Walter's pet rabbit is dead. 6. Livy the historian's works are of great interest.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 314—316.

1. What is apposition? 2. When nouns are in apposition, in what do they agree? 3. Give an example of a noun repeated in apposition for emphasis. 4. Give an example of a noun in apposition to a whole sentence. 5. Give an example in which a part is put in apposition with the whole. 6. Why are copulative verbs called apposition verbs? 7. When nouns in apposition form a complex name, where is the sign of the plural placed? 8. Why is the form *Misses Smith* incorrect? 9. When nouns in apposition are in the possessive case, where is the possessive sign placed? 10. When should the possessive sign be affixed to the first noun?

CHAPTER II.—SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

[*Parsing*, pp. 116—122.]

317. Rule XXII. Every adjective qualifies a noun expressed or understood : as, *Wild* flowers charm us ; *Many* are called.

·EXPLANATION.—The adjective *wild* qualifies the noun *flowers* ; the adjective *many* qualifies the noun *persons* understood.

Obs. 1.—The adjective, when it stands alone and takes *the* before it, is, by some, parsed as “an adjective used as a noun :” as, *The good* are happy.

Obs. 2.—When a quality is assumed as belonging to a noun, the adjective expressing the quality is said to be used *attributively* ; when a quality is asserted as belonging to a noun, the adjective is said to be used *predicatively*. Thus :—**Attributive**, *A huge* lion appeared ; **Predicative**, *The lion was huge*.

Obs. 3.—An adjective qualifies factitively when it is used to complete the meaning of factitive verbs (§ 296) : as, *He deemed himself wise* ; *They made themselves comfortable* ; *The fleet was rendered useless*.

Obs. 4.—An adjective qualifies not only a noun but any word, phrase, or sentence equivalent to a noun ; hence it may qualify infinitives and verbal nouns : as, *To walk is pleasant* ; *Walking is pleasant*.

Obs. 5.—Adjectives qualify pronouns predicatively or factitively, but not attributively.

Obs. 6.—Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs : as, *The iron was red hot*.

Obs. 7.—An adjective and a noun may form a compound which can be qualified by another adjective : as, *A valuable black horse*.

Obs. 8.—Many intransitive verbs take an adjective instead of an adverb : as, *He fell ill*.

Obs. 9.—A noun is often used as an adjective : as, *The iron ship sank*.

EXERCISE 130.

Parse :—

1. Reading makes a full man ; speaking a ready man ; writing a correct man. 2. Her right arm lay folded over her bosom. 3. The evening was boisterous. 4. The night is chill. 5. The forest is bare. 6. The dew on his robe was heavy and chill. 7. He mounted the narrow stair. 8. The summer evening grew black as night. 9. I am booted and spurred. 10. The miserable have no other medicine, but only hope. 11. He had contracted a passion for the marvellous and the supernatural. 12. We received a card from the town ladies. 13. Mute was the wind, soft fell the dew.

14. I had a message to send her,
 So tender, and true, and sweet,
 I longed for an angel to bear it,
 And lay it down at her feet.
 I placed it, one summer's evening,
 On a little white cloud's breast ;
 But it faded in golden splendour,
 And died in the crimson west.
15. With fingers weary and wan,
 With eyelids heavy and red,
 A woman sat in unwomanly rags,
 Plying her needle and thread.

318. Rule XXIII. The comparative degree is used in comparing two objects, and the superlative in comparing more than two : as, *This soldier is taller than the next* ; *This soldier is the tallest in the army*.

EXPLANATION.—In comparing two soldiers, we use the comparative, *taller* ; in comparing more than two, we use the superlative, *tallest*.

Obs. 1.—The comparative is used when one thing is compared with a set of things ; and when one set of things is compared with another set of things.

Obs. 2.—It frequently happens that, when one thing of a class is compared with all others of that class, the comparative with *other* is used instead of the superlative : as, Samson was the *strongest* of all men ; Samson was *stronger* than all *other* men

Obs. 3.—The comparative degree is followed by *than* when opposition is denoted, and by *of* when selection is implied : as (1), John is wiser *than* James (opposition) ; (2) He is the elder *of* the two (selection).

EXERCISE 131.

Parse :—

1. The grandest and most renowned of all the ancient amphitheatres is the Colisæum at Rome. 2. The merle may trill his richest note in vain. 3. Our sweetest songs are those that tell of saddest thought. 4. It was nimbler much than hinds. 5. The darkest hour in the twenty-four is the hour before day. 6. Those who have never observed our boldest coasts have no idea of their tremendous sublimity. 7. A circle is more beautiful than a square ; a square is more beautiful than a parallelogram. 8. Iceland is an island somewhat larger than Ireland. 9. The adventure was most perilous.

10. A sadder and a wiser man
He rose the morrow morn.

319. Rule XXIV. Double comparatives and superlatives should not be used : as, *A more braver man* ; *The most bravest man*.

EXPLANATION.—In Old English such forms were in use, but modern usage is against them. *Lesser* has established itself in the phrase “*lesser Asia*.”

Obs. 1.—The existence of these double inflexions is, in some cases, owing to a desire to emphasise or strengthen the comparison, while in others it is due to the common ending being added to a comparative mistaken for the positive, or no longer used in its original sense.

Obs. 2.—Some adjectives which, by their nature, do not admit of comparison, are occasionally compared : as, *chiefest*, *most universal* (§ 74).

320. Rule XXV. Adjectives which denote quantity in bulk or mass qualify nouns in the singular number : as, *Has he any bread* ?

EXPLANATION.—*Any* is an adjective denoting quantity in bulk or mass, and qualifies *bread* in the singular number.

Obs. 1.—The adjectives which come under this rule are :—*All*, *any*, *enough*, *little*, *much*, *no*, *none*, *some*, *whole*.

Obs. 2.—*Enow*, the old plural of *enough*, is used to denote number : as, *Men enow*. *None* was formerly used before a vowel : as, *This is none other but the house of God*. *Some*, when used with numerals, has sometimes the meaning of “about” : as, *Some fifty summers gone*.

EXERCISE 132

Parse :—

1. My whole effort was to save life. 2. We landed some hundred men, where we found fresh water. 3. I have no sympathy with them. 4. Who will show us any good ? 5. Yet show some pity. 6. In the whole narrative I can scarcely promise you one adventure. 7. We have space enough for our purpose. 8. He has much confidence, but little or no ability. 9. Here we find little clay. 10. We have toiled all night.

321. Rule XXVI. Definite cardinal numeral adjectives (except *one*) qualify nouns in the plural number : as, *Twenty men*.

EXPLANATION.—*Twenty* is a definite cardinal numeral adjective, and qualifies *men* in the plural number.

Obs. 1.—*One* qualifies nouns in the singular number : as, *One house*.

Obs. 2.—*No* and *none* may also qualify nouns in the singular : as, *No friend* cheered me. *No* always qualifies a noun expressed.

EXERCISE 133.

Parse :—

1. No word spoke the deliverer. 2. I have not seen him for ten days. 3. Four armies to the field were led. 4. When it dashed madly across the stream, some twenty oars flashed through the water in pursuit. 5. Ten thousand fleets sweep over thee in vain. 6. At the expiration of sixty days the debt was discharged by the loss of liberty or life. 7. By thirty hills I hurry down, or slip between the ridges. 8. The Greeks beheld with surprise the two royal sisters seated on the same throne. 9. He left eight children.

10. Seven days, seven nights, I saw that curse,
And yet I could not die.

322. Rule XXVII. Definite ordinal numeral adjectives qualify nouns in the singular number : as, *The third day*.

EXPLANATION.—*Third* is a definite ordinal numeral adjective, and qualifies *day* in the singular number.

Obs.—When two numerals qualify one noun, some writers place the ordinal adjective first, others the cardinal. When we say *the first three* we imply that there is a *second three* ; when we say *the three first* we mean different *firsts* (as in different sets) or we imply the removal of each *first*, so that the *second* and *third* become, successively, *first*.

EXERCISE 134

Parse :—

1. The second and third crusades trod in the footsteps of the first. 2. A solemn day, the twenty-fifth of December, had been fixed for his execution. 3. The sixty books of the *Basilics*, the code and pandects of civil jurisprudence, were gradually formed in the three first reigns of that prosperous dynasty. 4. Clement the Third was consecrated in the Lateran. 5. In his return by sea from an unfortunate crusade, Louis the Seventh was intercepted by the Greeks. 6. Refer to the eighth page. 7. This event may be ascribed to the tenth century of the Christian era. 8. The prudent Urban adjourned the decision to a second synod. 9. Philip the First was the great grandson of Hugh Capet. 10. The Jews observe the seventh day of the week.

323. Rule XXVIII. The indefinite numeral adjectives (except *another*) qualify nouns in the plural number : as, *Many days* passed away.

EXPLANATION.—The indefinite numeral adjective *many* qualifies the noun *days* in the plural.

Obs. 1.—*Any*, *certain*, and *other* may also qualify nouns in the singular : as, *Any man* would have done the same.

Obs. 2.—*Another* always qualifies nouns in the singular : as, *Another day* is gone.

Obs. 3.—*Many* is used in the phrase *many a*, with a distributive force, before singular nouns : as, *Many a* hill did Lucy climb. In this idiom, *many* has been regarded as a noun.—“a *many* of hills,”

EXERCISE 135.

Parse :—

1. Thou shalt be a father of many nations. 2. Other lords besides thee have had dominion over us. 3. Thou shalt not sow thy fields with divers seeds. 4. Let me leave some of the folk that are with me. 5. Several of them neither rose from any conspicuous family, nor left any behind them. 6. This country is large, having in it many people, and several kingdoms. 7. Brutus is an honourable man ; so are they all, all honourable men. 8. They embarked with all their goods. 9. The Atlantic Ocean exceeds all the other oceans in the number of its seas and gulfs. 10. Many a good horse fell, and threw its rider to the earth.

324. Rule XXIX. The distributive numeral adjectives *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, qualify nouns in the singular number only : as, *Every* tree is known by its fruit ; *Each* man received ten pounds.

EXPLANATION.—The distributive numeral adjective *every* qualifies the noun *tree* in the singular ; the distributive numeral adjective *each* qualifies the noun *man* in the singular.

Obs. 1.—*Each* denotes two or more taken separately : as, *Each* thorn trips his nimble feet. *Every* denotes more than two taken individually and comprehends them all : as, Ye shall gather a certain rate *every* day. *Either* denotes one of two, but not both : as, Choose *either* course. *Neither* means *not either*. *Either* is wrongly used for *each* or *both* : as, On *either* side=on both sides.

Obs. 2.—*Every* qualifies a noun expressed.

EXERCISE 136.

Parse :—

1. At each door, neighbour with neighbour fed. 2. A preaching friar settles himself in every village. 3. Each horseman drew his battle-blade. 4. Every house was an inn where all were welcomed and feasted. 5. She believed every word that he said. 6. I will wear neither of the swords. 7. Take either road. 8. Neither of those men has done his duty.
9. Each morning sees some task begun,
Each evening sees its close.

325. Rule XXX. The distinguishing adjective *an* or *a* limits nouns in the singular number : as, He could draw *a* sword.

EXPLANATION.—The distinguishing adjective *a* limits the noun *sword* in the singular.

Obs. 1.—*An* or *a* sometimes means *each* : as, He earns five shillings *a* day.

Obs. 2.—*A* is used before plural nouns in the phrases *a great many*, *a few*, *a hundred*, etc. : as, *A* few days. In the latter example, *few days* is viewed as an aggregate. *A few days*=some, but not many days. *Few days*=hardly any days. There is a similar difference between *little* and *a little* : thus, *a little bread*=some, but not much bread ; *little bread*=hardly any bread.

Obs. 3.—*An* or *a* always limits a noun expressed.

EXERCISE 137.

Parse :—

1. There lies a sleeping city. 2. A sound came from the land. 3. I see a star. 4. Lo ! o'er the city a tempest rose. 5. You are a counsellor.
6. I see a fountain large and fair,
A willow and a ruined hut.

326. Rule XXXI. The distinguishing adjective *an* or *a* is omitted before proper nouns, and also before abstract and other nouns used in a general sense : as, *Falsehood* is odious ; *A falsehood* is odious.

EXPLANATION.—In the first example, *falsehood* is used in a general sense and has no distinguishing adjective ; in the second example, *falsehood* is used in a particular sense and is limited by *a*.

Obs.—*A* or *an* can be used before proper nouns tending to common : as, He is *a* Brutus.

EXERCISE 138.

Parse :—

1. Man hath a weary pilgrimage. 2. Virtue is its own reward. 3. There is not a virtue which does not ennoble a man. 4. The man is a Nestor. 5. A murder has been done.

6. Murder may pass unpunish'd for a time,
But tardy justice will o'ertake the crime.

327. Rule XXXII. The distinguishing adjective *the* limits nouns both in the singular and plural number : as, *The* star appears ; *The* stars shine.

EXPLANATION.—In the first example, the distinguishing adjective *the* limits the noun *star* in the singular number ; in the second example, the distinguishing adjective *the* limits *stars* in the plural number.

Obs. 1.—*The* is sometimes used before an adjective when the noun is understood : as, *The* brave (men) are ready to die. It is also used before an adjective to form an abstract noun : as, We love *the* Beautiful and *the* True.

Obs. 2.—*The* is used with comparatives : as, *The* oftener he plays, *the* more he loves the game. In this case, *the* is an adverb (being a corruption of *thy*, ablative of the demonstrative *that*).

EXERCISE 139.

Parse :—

1. The house-martin makes his nest against the sides of houses. 2. Round and round the sounds were cast. 3. The unfortunate are loud and loquacious in their complaints. 4. The less kind I found Fortune at one time, the more I expected from her at another.

5. Weave the warp, and weave the woof,
The winding-sheet of Edward's race.

6. By the rushy-fringed bank,
Where grows the willow, and the osier dank,
My sliding chariot stays.

328. Rule XXXIII. The distinguishing adjective *the* is omitted before proper nouns, and before nouns used in a general sense : as, Men are mortal.

EXPLANATION.—If the distinguishing adjective *the* were placed before *men*, the sense would be restricted and the statement would be that some particular "men are mortal."

Obs.—*The* may be used before proper nouns tending to common : as, He is *the* Nestor of the party. *The* is always placed before proper nouns when a common noun is understood : as, *The* Thames=*the* river Thames.

EXERCISE 140.

Parse :—

1. Liege is the Birmingham of Belgium. 2. The Royal George sank. 3. Homer was the greatest epic poet. 4. He is the Homer of his country.

5. We read the lives of the Cæsars. 6. The Volga flows into the Caspian Sea.

329. Rule XXXIV. When two or more nouns denoting the same person or thing come together, the distinguishing adjective is placed before the first only: as, Cicero was *an* orator and statesman.

EXPLANATION.—*Orator* and *statesman* denote the same person, hence the distinguishing adjective *an* is only placed before *orator*.

Obs. 1.—If two nouns are applied to the same person by way of comparison, only one distinguishing adjective is used: as, He was *a* better poet than painter.

Obs. 2.—When several adjectives qualifying one noun refer to the same person or thing, the distinguishing adjective is placed before the first adjective only: as, What *a* wretched and peevish fellow is this king of England!

EXERCISE 141.

Parse:—

1. In this glorious and well-foughten field, we kept together in our chivalry. 2. The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd these waters from me. 3. An ancient and venerable father now appeared. 4. Trevor was the secretary and treasurer of the company. 5. He was a better scholar than statesman.

6. Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour
Unto the weary and all-watched night.

330. Rule XXXV. When two or more nouns denoting distinct persons or things come together, the same distinguishing adjective is placed before each: as, *The* horse and *the* ox are useful to man.

EXPLANATION.—*Horse* and *ox* denote distinct animals, hence the distinguishing adjective *the* is placed before each.

Obs.—When several adjectives qualifying one noun refer to different persons or things, the distinguishing adjective is used with each of them: as, *A* vigilant and *a* stealthy foe are alike to be dreaded.

EXERCISE 142.

Parse:—

1. I planted this rose and this lily. 2. A tame and a wild elephant were placed in the same enclosure. 3. The noble and the lowly born are both alike to him. 4. The trumpets sound the charge and the retreat. 5. A horse and an ass were jogging along together. 6. The pope and the emperor were at variance.

331. Rule XXXVI. The distinguishing adjectives *this* and *that* limit nouns in the singular number; and the distinguishing adjectives *these* and *those* limit nouns in the plural number: as, *This* house is empty; *These* houses are empty.

EXPLANATION.—The distinguishing adjective *this* limits the noun *house* in the singular number; the distinguishing adjective *these* limits the noun *houses* in the plural.

Obs. 1.—*This* and *these* refer to the nearer: *that* and *those* to the farther.

Obs. 2.—*This* and *that* are joined to nouns in the plural denoting an aggregate: as, *This* twenty years.

EXERCISE 143.

Parse :—

1. That is a difficulty next to impossible. 2. How fit is this retreat for uninterrupted study ! 3. Nothing can give that to another which it hath not itself. 4. This world is a region of danger, in which perfect safety is possessed by no man. 5. That is another of your odd notions.

I had rather be a kitten and cry, mew !

Than one of these same metre ballad-mongers.

332. Rule XXXVII. The distinguishing adjectives *yon*, *yonder*, *same*, and *self-same* limit nouns in both numbers : as, *Yon tree* is an oak ; *Yon trees* are oaks.

EXPLANATION.—In the first example, the distinguishing adjective *yon* limits the noun *tree* in the singular number ; in the second example, the distinguishing adjective *yon* limits the noun *trees* in the plural number.

EXERCISE 144.

Parse :—

1. Through yonder valley a shower is passing. 2. At the same time the waters in the river began to swell again. 3. His servant was healed in the self-same hour.

4. The same fond mother bent at night,

O'er each fair sleeping brow.

5. But, look, the morn in russet mantle clad,

Walks o'er the dew of yon high eastern hill.

6. Pray, Alice, pray, my darling wife,

That we may die the self-same day.

Place of the Adjective.

333. Rule XXXVIII. The adjective is generally put immediately before the noun it qualifies or limits : as, He is an *earnest* scholar.

The exceptions to this rule are :—

1. When the adjective is used predicatively : as, The oracles are *dumb*.

2. When the adjective is used as a title : as, Philip the *Fair* ; Henry the *Sixth*.

3. When some word or phrase is joined to the adjective to explain its meaning : as, He was a man *fertile* in resource.

4. When time, number, or space is mentioned : as, A tower eighty feet *high* stands in the centre of the square.

5. When several adjectives are connected with the same noun : as, The queen, *fearless* and *resolute*, at once advanced.

6. When the adjective is preceded by an adverb : as, He is a man exceedingly *wary*.

7. When the adjective is factitive : as, You think him *humble*—God accounts him *proud*.

8. Certain adjectives never precede their nouns, viz., *Adry*, *afloat*, *afraid*, *aghast*, *akin*, *alert*, *alike*, *alive*, *alone*, *amiss*, *ashamed*, *askew*, *asleep*, *athirst*, *averse*, *awake*, *aware*, *awry*, *deroid*, *else*, *loth*, *poorly*, *pursuant*, *regnant*, *unwell*, *well*, and *worth*. The adjectives *apparent*, *presumptive*, and *rampant*, often follow their nouns.

9. The adjectives *all* and *both* may be separated from their nouns by *the*: as, *All* the efforts proved in vain.

10. The adjectives *such*, *many* and *what*, and those preceded by *as*, *how*, *so* and *too*, are separated from their nouns by *an* or *a*: as, *What* a gloom hangs all around!

11. When the adjective is emphatic, it is sometimes placed at the beginning of the sentence, and at some distance from the noun it qualifies: as, *Delighted* beyond measure am I at your success.

12. When poetic licence is used: as, They wrapped the ship in splendour *avild*.

EXERCISE 145.

Parse:—

1. The smaller birds were not afraid of me. 2. The poor man is hungry and athirst. 3. Beautiful it is to understand and know that a thought did never yet die. 4. Last noon beheld them full of lusty life. 5. The star-led wizards haste with odours sweet. 6. O, what a noble mind is here o'erthrown! 7. It is a beauteous evening calm and free.

8. But pangs more cruel, more intensely keen,
Wound and distract their sympathetic Queen.

9. Who o'er the herd would wish to reign,
Fantastic, fickle, fierce, and vain?

10. Broad shadows o'er their passage fell,
Deeper and narrower grew the dell.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 317—333.

1. What does every adjective qualify? 2. How are adjectives used attributively? 3. How are adjectives used predicatively? 4. Give an example in which an adjective qualifies an infinitive. 5. Give an example in which an adjective is used as an adverb. 6. Give an example of an adjective qualifying a compound formed of an adjective and a noun. 7. Give an example of a noun used as an adjective. 8. What degree is used in comparing two objects? 9. What degree is used in comparing more than two objects? 10. Show how the comparative may be used instead of the superlative? 11. When is the comparative followed by *than*? 12. When is the comparative followed by *of*? 13. What is the rule about the use of double comparatives and superlatives? 14. In what number do adjectives of quantity in bulk or mass qualify nouns? 15. In what number do definite cardinal numeral adjectives qualify nouns? 16. In what number does *one* qualify nouns? 17. In what number do *no* and *none* qualify nouns? 18. In what number do definite ordinal numeral adjectives qualify nouns? 19. What is the difference between *the three first* and *the first three*? 20. In what number do indefinite numeral adjectives qualify nouns? 21. What indefinite numeral adjectives may qualify nouns in the singular? 22. In what number does *another* always qualify nouns? 23. Explain the phrase *many a hill*. 24. In what number do the distributive numeral adjectives qualify nouns? 25. What does *each* denote? 26. What does *every* denote? 27. What does *either* denote? 28. What does *neither* denote? 29. Which distributive always qualifies a noun expressed? 30. In what number does *an* or *a* limit nouns? 31. Give an example in which *an* or *a* means "each." 32. What is the difference between *a few days* and *few days*? 33. What is the difference between *a little bread* and *little bread*? 34. When is *an* or *a* omitted? 35. When is *an* or *a* used before a proper noun? 36. In what number does *the* limit nouns? 37. Give an instance of *the* before an adjective when the noun is understood. 38. What part of speech is *the* when used with comparatives? 39. When is *the* omitted? 40. When is *the* used before proper nouns? 41. When two or more nouns denoting the same person or thing come together, where is the distinguishing adjective placed? 42. When two or more nouns denoting distinct persons or things come together, where is the distinguishing adjective placed? 43. In what number do *this* and *that* limit nouns? 44. In what number do *these* and *those* limit nouns? 45. What is the difference in meaning between *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*? 46. When are *this* and *that* used with plural nouns? 47. In what number do *yon*, *yonder*, *same* and *self-same* limit nouns? 48. Where is the adjective generally placed? 49. What are the exceptions to this rule?

CHAPTER III.—SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

[*Parsing*, pp. 123—127.]

1. Personal Pronouns.

334. Rule XXXIX. Personal pronouns must agree in gender, number, and person with the nouns for which they are used : as, O, my offence is rank, *it* smells to heaven.

EXPLANATION.—The noun *offence* is neuter gender, singular number, third person ; therefore the personal pronoun *it* which is used for *offence* is neuter gender, singular number, third person.

Obs. 1.—A pronoun is used instead of the equivalents of a noun :—

(a) An adjective used as a noun : as (1), The poor had endured great privations ; *they* became very turbulent : (2) Four of the ringleaders were seized ; *they* were thrown into prison.

(b) A verb in the infinitive mood : as, *It* is disgraceful to steal. (See § 121, *Obs.* 1.)

(c) An infinitive phrase : as, *It* was his great ambition to succeed in the undertaking ; *It* is excellent to have a giant's strength.

(d) A verbal noun or gerund : as, The boy loves fencing, therefore let him practise *it*.

(e) A sentence : as, *It* now happens that the king returned from France.

Obs. 2.—When the pronoun is used for a clause or part of a sentence, it is neuter gender, singular number, third person : as, "That I have ta'en away this old man's daughter, *it* is most true."

Obs. 3.—The pronoun must be singular number when it stands for a collective noun conveying unity of idea : as, The army was on *its* way to the scene of action. The pronoun must be plural number when it stands for a collective noun conveying plurality of idea : as, The Council are divided in *their* opinions.

Obs. 4.—When a noun denotes a child or an animal without regard to sex, the pronoun is neuter gender : as, The child cries for *its* mother ; The sparrow builds *its* nest.

Obs. 5.—The plural *we* is used for the singular by sovereigns, reviewers, editors, etc., and is then parsed as "singular number, plural form" : as, *We* (King Henry the Fifth) do salute you, Duke of Burgundy. The plural form *you* is used instead of *thou* in respectful address, and is then parsed as "singular number, plural form" : as, Do *you* like me, Kate ?

Obs. 6.—The same or a similar form of the pronoun should be preserved throughout a sentence : as,

And if *you* do, *you* will but make it blush,
And glow with shame of *your* proceedings, Hubert.

EXERCISE 146.

Parse :—

1. Sweet to the miser are his glittering heaps. 2. Deep is the sleep of the dead, low their pillow of dust. 3. Can the Ethiopian change his skin or the leopard his spots ? 4. Behold how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity. 5. The assembly then resumed their places. 6. Lapland and Iceland have their historians, their critics, and their poets. 7. The improvidence of the Esquimaux often reduces them to terrible straits.

8. Friend of my soul ! this goblet sip,
'Twill chase that pensive tear.

9. Nought shall make us rue
If England to itself do rest but true.

10. The western waves of ebbing day
Roll'd o'er the glen their level way.

335. Rule XL. Two or more nouns joined by *and* require the pronoun which is used for them to be in the plural : as, He asked for the widow and her son ; *they* were gone.

EXPLANATION.—The nouns *widow* and *son* are joined by *and* ; hence the pronoun *they*, which is used for them, is in the plural.

Obs.—The pronoun is in the singular, if two singular nouns joined by *and*

(1) Describe the same person or thing : as, My faithful friend and companion is gone ; *he* will return no more.

(2) Are contrasted : as, The butler, and not the baker, was restored to *his* office.

(3) Are preceded by *each* or *every* : as, Every flower and every herb has *its* time to wither.

EXERCISE 147.

Parse :—

1. Saul and Jonathan were lovely and pleasant in their lives, and in their death they were not divided : they were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions. 2. The two sons of Alexius, John and Isaac, maintained the fraternal concord, the hereditary virtue of their race. 3. Simeon and Levi are brethren ; instruments of cruelty are in their habitations. 4. The sword and the dagger have done their work. 5. Famine and pestilence stalked through the land ; thousands were destroyed by them.

6. Foxglove and night-shade, side by side,
Emblems of punishment and pride,
Grouped their dark hues with every stain
The weather-beaten crags retain.

336. Rule XLI. Two or more singular nouns joined by *or* or *nor* require the pronoun to be in the singular : as, The page or the gardener must lend *his* aid.

EXPLANATION.—The singular nouns *page* and *gardener* are joined by *or* ; hence the pronoun *his* is in the singular.

Obs.—When a plural noun and a singular noun are joined by *or* or *nor*, the pronoun must be in the plural : as, Either the teacher or his pupils have produced this result by *their* neglect.

EXERCISE 148.

Parse :—

1. Either the captain or the sailor will lose his life in this fearful struggle. 2. Literature or art has had its influence on this poet's mind. 3. A hero or a demi-god may, by his example, have incited the heathen to noble deeds. 4. Neither the king nor the emperor governed his subjects well. 5. Either Lucy or Caroline has lost her purse. 6. A senator or a counsellor must not overstep his duty.

337. Rule XLII. When a pronoun refers to more than one noun or pronoun of different persons, it must be of the first person plural in preference to the second, and of the second person plural in preference to the third : as, You and I have finished *our* work ; You and James have finished *your* work.

EXPLANATION.—*Our* (first person) is used, because it refers to *you* (second person) and *I* (first person) ; *your* (second person) is used because it refers to *you* (second person) and *James* (third person).

EXERCISE 149.

Parse :—

1. You and I have met at last ; we must now our quarrel settle. 2. He and I have done our best. 3. My servant and I fought our way through the crowd. 4. My son and I do bequeath to you our faithful services. 5. You and your brother have thus far followed the bent of your own inclinations. 6. You and Frederick seem to live by your wits.

338. Rule XLIII. When singular pronouns of different persons are used, the second precedes the others, and the third precedes the first : as, *You* and *he* must come ; *He* and *I* must come.

EXPLANATION.—The second person *you* precedes the third person *he*, and the third person *he* precedes the first person *I*.

EXERCISE 150.

Parse :—

1. You and I must say farewell. 2. You and he must take your chance. 3. She and I gathered flowers in the wood. 4. Even for that he and I thank you. 5. Let thee and me this feat attempt. 6. Such was the kindness they showed to her and me.

339. Rule XLIV. When plural pronouns of different persons are used, the first precedes the second, and the second precedes the third : as, *We*, *you*, and *they* are invited.

EXPLANATION.—The first person plural *we* precedes the second person plural *you*, and *you* precedes the third person plural *they*.

EXERCISE 151.

Parse :—

1. Be assured you and they will be set free. 2. The wise (virgins) answered, saying, "Not so ; lest there be not enough for us and you." 3. We and they have acted as you desired. 4. We, you, and they must denounce this villany. 5. You and they seem to mock us. 6. He has showered benefits on you and them.

340. Rule XLV. The personal pronoun is often employed and the noun for which it is used omitted, if the noun is assumed to be well known : as, Blessed are *they* that mourn.

EXPLANATION.—The noun *people*, for which the pronoun *they* stands, is omitted.

Obs. 1.—The nouns for which pronouns of the first and second persons stand are not expressed : as, *I* smile to hear the assertion ; *You* tell *me* what *I* knew before.

Obs. 2.—The pronoun *it* has many peculiar uses :—

(1) With impersonal verbs : as, *It* snows.

(2) Before the verb *to be* and some other copulative verbs when the real subject follows : as, *It* is I ; *It* is pleasant to wander through the woods ; *It* is clear that you do not know him. *It* is even used when a plural follows : as, *It* was the Romans that introduced the custom. *It* may represent a pronoun of any person ; as, *It* is I ; *It* is you ; *It* is he.

(3) To express a general state or condition : as, How is *it* with you ?

(4) Indefinitely after intransitive verbs : as, They frisk *it* from bough to bough.

(5) In questions, when the person or thing is altogether unknown : as, Who is *it* ? Which is *it* ? What is *it* ?

(6) To represent a noun in the masculine or feminine gender : as, *It* was Peter who denied his Master.

EXERCISE 152.

Parse :—

1. It had pleased Heaven, he said, to bless him with three sons. 2. O, it is excellent to have a giant's strength : but it is tyrannous to use it like a giant. 3. It can be no more sin to ask what God grants. 4. It was her fingers which gave the pickles their peculiar green. 5. I am not what you take me for. 6. Who are you? You know me. 7. Your son has not used me well. 8. They that sow in tears shall reap in joy. 9. The colony is under personal obligations to you.

10. We look before and after,
And pine for what is not.

Place of the Personal Pronoun.

341. Rule XLVI. Personal pronouns generally come after the words for which they are used : as, The animal becomes too large for *its* habitation.

Obs.—The pronoun sometimes comes first : as, Hark ! *they* whisper, angels say. This is especially the case with *it* : as, *It* was William who gave the signal.

EXERCISE 153.

Parse :—

1. The sun himself withheld his wonted speed. 2. The priests had a portion assigned them. 3. Men befool themselves. 4. The boy's eye is fixed towards Heaven, and his young heart on Him who reigns there. 5. Bruce was in front of his own line, arranging his men. 6. A man who dedicates his life to knowledge becomes habituated to pleasure which carries with it no reproach. 7. Many tribes of Indians are indebted to the bison for their means of living. 8. The path is narrow ; and it narrows still. 9. The great skill of a teacher is to get and keep the attention of his scholar.

10. It was the time of roses,—
We pluck'd them as we pass'd.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 334—341.

1. How must personal pronouns agree with nouns? 2. Of what gender, number, and person is a pronoun used for a clause or sentence? 3. Of what number is a pronoun which stands for a collective noun conveying unity of idea? 4. Of what number is a pronoun which stands for a collective noun conveying plurality of idea? 5. Of what gender is a pronoun which denotes a child or animal without regard to sex? 6. When is *we* singular? 7. How is it parsed? 8. When is *you* singular? 9. How is it parsed? 10. When two or more nouns are joined by *and*, what is the number of the pronoun? 11. What are the exceptions to this rule? 12. When two or more singular nouns are joined by *or* or *nor*, what is the number of the pronoun? 13. When a plural and a singular noun are joined by *or* or *nor*, what is the number of the pronoun? 14. When a pronoun refers to nouns or pronouns of different persons, which person is it of? 15. When singular pronouns of different persons are used, which person has the precedence? 16. When plural pronouns of different persons are used, which person has the precedence? 17. Give an example in which a pronoun is used when the noun for which it stands is omitted. 18. Name the peculiar uses of the pronoun *it*. 19. What is the position of personal pronouns? 20. Give an example in which the pronoun precedes the noun for which it stands.

2. Relative Pronouns.

342. Rule XLVII. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person : as, The man *who* found the purse restored it.

EXPLANATION.—The antecedent *man* is masculine gender, singular number, and third person, therefore the relative *who* is masculine gender, singular number, and third person.

Obs. 1.—*Who* is applied to persons, *which* to the lower animals and things; *that* is used for *who* or *which*: as, At last a Scotch sailor *who* was on board called to me; You have killed a tiny bird *which* flew not till to-day; There are here divers trees *which* are not to be found elsewhere; The man *that* hath done this thing shall surely die; The fish *that* leapt up was a salmon; This I take to be a great cause *that* hath hindered the progression of learning.

Obs. 2.—*That* should be used instead of *who* or *which* after

(1) The interrogative *who*: as, Who, *that* has looked on the meek, deer-like face of a kangaroo, would imagine that any danger could attend a combat with so gentle a creature?

(2) The words *all, any, none, nothing, same*: as, He was not the same *that* had given permission; You shall know *all that* you are like to know.

(3) The superlative degree: as, Adrian, his successor, was the most curious man *that* lived.

(4) Two antecedents, the one requiring *who* and the other *which*: as, The shepherd and the dog *that* were seen on the mountain perished in the snow.

(5) A collective noun: as, The crowd *that* surrounded his chariot greeted him with exulting cries.

(6) An incomplete antecedent, *i.e.*, one which needs to be defined: as, There is yet one in the world *that* will never forsake thee.

Obs. 3.—A collective noun followed by a singular verb is neuter gender and requires *which* or *that*; but when it is followed by a plural verb, it is masculine, feminine, or common gender, and requires *who* or *that*.

Obs. 4.—(1) If no nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is nominative case to the verb: as, I had a dream *which* was not all a dream.

(2) But if a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the preposition preceding it or by the verb or noun following it: as, The first misfortune of my life, *which* you all know, is great.

Obs. 5.—The relative, when in the objective case, is sometimes omitted: as,

The light of the heaven (which) she came from
Still lingered and gleamed in her hair.

Obs. 6.—The antecedent, when it is third person, is sometimes omitted: as, Handsome is *that* handsome does.

Obs. 7.—The relative *which* has sometimes a sentence for its antecedent: as, Mrs. Arnold politely offered to send a couple of her footmen for my son's baggage, *which* he at first seemed to decline.

Obs. 8.—The relative is sometimes used as an adjective: as, All *which* miseries, at length, by God's providence, had their end 16th November, 1558.

Obs. 9.—The relative is sometimes omitted, and the antecedent attracted into the case of the relative: as,

Him I accuse,
The city ports by this has entered.

Obs. 10.—The relative *that* is never preceded by a preposition: as, This is the house *that* I dwelt in = this is the house in which I dwelt.

Obs. 11.—The relative pronouns *who, which, and that*, have both a restrictive use and a co-ordinative or conjunctive use.

(a) They have a restrictive use when they are used to introduce a clause which limits, defines, or explains the antecedent: as, "He *that* dies pays all debts;" "O, how wretched is that poor man *who* hangs on princes' favours;" "Is this a dagger *which* I see before me?"

All such relative clauses are called adjective clauses, inasmuch as they are similar to adjectives in limiting and defining nouns.

(b) They have a co-ordinate use when they connect two co-ordinate sentences: as, "Her pet lamb died last night, *which* (=and this) has caused her much grief;" "The boy, seeing the danger, ran to his father, *who* (=and he) lost no time in removing him from the place;" "I met a friend *that* (=and he) told me of the occurrence."

In the restrictive use of the relative, the practice of the best idiomatic writers is to prefer *that* to *who* or *which*: "He *that* goes a borrowing goes a sorrowing;" ". . . the thousand natural shocks *that* flesh is heir to;" "France had no infantry *that* dared to face the English bows and bills;" "All is not gold *that* glitters."

Obs. 12.—The infinitive, the participle, "and this," "and he," etc., "if," "wherein," "whereon," "whereby," "whereupon," etc., may be used as substitutes for the relative.

(a) *The infinitive*: He was the first to hear that sound = He was the first *who heard* that sound.

(b) *The participle*: The men *waiting* outside are artisans *seeking* relief = The men *who wait* (or *who are waiting*) outside are artisans *who seek* (or *who are seeking*) relief.

(c) *And this*: I asked the boatman to land me, *and this* he refused to do. (. . . *which* he refused to do.)

(d) *And she*: The child ran to his mother, *and she* immediately caught him up and soothed and caressed him. (. . . *who* immediately, etc.)

(e) *If*: If a man studies revenge he keepeth his own wounds green = The man *that* studies revenge keeps his own wounds green.

(f) *Wherein*: Nor can I rid me of the bonds *wherein* (= *in which*) I lie alone.

(g) *Whereon*: The feet *whereon* (= *on which*) he flies betray him.

(h) *Whereby*: Sorrow is the ground *whereby* (= *by which*) the heart doth pine in deadly woe.

(i) *Whereupon*: When a carver makes an image, he shapes only that part *whereupon* (= *upon which*) he worketh.

EXERCISE 154.

Parse:—

1. The husbandman pays respect to the redbreast, which predicts fine weather. 2. Then must you speak of one that lov'd not wisely, but too well. 3. He then requested her to stand on the straw, which she did. 4. My mistress gently chides the fault I made. 5. None love their country but who love their home. 6. Thrice is he arm'd that hath his quarrel just. 7. Cork is the outer bark of a large oak which grows in the countries around the Mediterranean. 8. Let not men think there is no truth but in the sciences that they study, or the books that they read. 9. Who will, may pant for glory. 10. It was reserved for Portugal to tear aside the veil which hung over the greater part of Africa. 11. Every joint in the animal frame can be shown to be exactly suited to the function which it has to perform. 12. In this manner we spent the forenoon till the bell summoned us to dinner, where we found the manager of the strolling company that I mentioned before, who was come to dispose of tickets for the "Fair Penitent," which was to be acted that evening—the part of Horatio by a young gentleman who had never appeared on any stage. 13. I have revealed the discord which befel.

14. It was the English, Kaspar cried,
That put the French to rout.

15. We, ignorant of ourselves,
Beg often our own harms, which the wise powers
Deny us for our good.

343. Rule XLVIII. When the relative is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, it generally agrees in person with the one next it: as, I am he *who* sings the victor's praise.

EXPLANATION.—The relative *who* is third person to agree with *he* the antecedent next it.

Obs.—But the relative often agrees with the first antecedent. The meaning is not, however, the same. Thus, "I am the man who command you" = I, your commander, am the man: "I am the man who commands you" = I am your commander.

EXERCISE 155.

Parse:—

1. Thou art the man that should guide the ship. 2. You are the person who was implicated in the conspiracy. 3. I am the unfortunate victim who has felt the tyrant's injustice. 4. The deliverer on that occasion was

I, who am still ready to be your leader. 5. Thou art he who points out to us the path of duty. 6. I am she who devotes herself willingly to this sacred cause.

344. Rule XLIX. When *as* is used as a relative, the verb agrees in number and person with the noun to which *as* refers: as, Such *as* do evil will be punished.

EXPLANATION.—*Do* is plural number third person, agreeing with *persons* to which *as* refers. It is, however, better to supply the ellipsis and parse *as* as a conjunction: thus, Such persons as [the persons are who] do evil will be punished. [*Parsing*, pp. 35, 162.]

EXERCISE 156.

Parse :—

1. Such as our motive is, our aim must be. 2. Such curiosities on the way as could be seen for nothing, he was ready enough to look at. 3. This is not such a liquor as Homer speaketh of, which ran from Venus' hand, when it was pierced by Diomedes. 4. Such as were so disposed might give themselves to histories, modern languages, books of policy, and civil discourses. 5. He followed the same line of action as his predecessor.

6. In at this gate none pass
The vigilance here plac'd but such as come
Well known from heaven.

345. Rule L. The relative *who* is used in the objective case after the conjunction *than*: as, Aristotle, than *whom* a greater philosopher never lived, was tutor to Alexander.

EXPLANATION.—*Whom* is objective case after *than*. In this case *than* must be considered a preposition. The construction, which seems to have arisen from the Latin ablative after a comparative, is not to be imitated.

Place of the Relative Pronoun.

346. Rule LI. The relative follows its antecedent, and, to prevent ambiguity, should be as near it as possible: as,

We heard the distant and random gun
That the foe was sullenly firing.

Obs. 1.—The relative sometimes precedes the antecedent: as,
Whom Fortune favours, him the envious hate.

Obs. 2.—The relative being a connecting word does not admit a conjunction, and therefore always stands first in the sentence to which it belongs: as, There is not an heroic scribbler in the nation *that* has not his admirers *who* think him a great genius.

EXERCISE 157.

Parse :—

1. He was buried beside his father, who had died but a few months before. 2. My account is rather of what I saw than what I did. 3. Of all the affections which attend human life, the love of glory is the most ardent. 4. He that has a mind to believe has half assented already; and he that, by often arguing against his own sense, imposes falsehoods on others, is not far from believing himself. 5. The population of St. Petersburg is the most varied and motley that mind can imagine.

6. Southward a mountain rose with easy swell,
Whose long, long groves eternal murmurs made.
7. For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,
Which is both healthful and good husbandry.
8. And in his hand he shakes the brand
Which none but he can wield.
9. To climb steep hills
Requires slow pace at first : anger is like
A full hot horse, who being allowed his way,
Self-mettle tires him.
10. Love had he found in huts where poor men lie ;
His daily teachers had been woods and rills,
The silence that is in the starry sky,
The sleep that is among the lonely hills.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 342--346.

1. How does the relative agree with its antecedent? 2. What is *who* applied to?
3. What is *which* applied to? 4. How is *that* used? 5. When is *that* used instead of *who* or *which*? 6. When does a collective noun require *which* or *that*? 7. When does a collective noun require *who* or *that*? 8. In what way may the case of a relative be known? 9. Give an example in which the relative is omitted. 10. Give an example in which the antecedent is omitted. 11. Give an example in which the antecedent is a sentence. 12. Give an example of the relative used as an adjective. 13. Which relative is never preceded by its governing preposition? 14. When have the relatives *who*, *which*, and *that* a restrictive use? 15. When have the relatives *who*, *which*, and *that* a co-ordinative use? 16. What words are used as substitutes for relatives? 17. When the relative is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, with which does it agree? 18. Explain the difference between "I am the man who command you" and "I am the man who commands you." 19. When *as* is used as a compound relative, with what does the verb agree? 20. How should *as* in this case be parsed? 21. Explain the construction *than whom*. 22. What is the place of the relative?

3. Interrogative Pronouns.

347. Rule LII. An interrogative pronoun is of the same gender, number, person, and case as the noun or pronoun which is expected as the answer to the question : as, *Who* told you? Henry (told me).

EXPLANATION.—*Who* is masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case, because *Henry* is.

Obs.—The interrogative is sometimes used as an adjective : as, *What* passion cannot music raise and quell?

EXERCISE 158.

Parse :—

1. What do you want? 2. Who knows what may happen? 3. Ah, who the melodies of morn can tell? 4. Who hath not lost a friend? 5. Who shall decide when doctors disagree? 6. Who is here so base that would be a bondman? If any, speak ; for him have I offended. Who is here so rude that would not be a Roman? If any, speak ; for him have I offended. 7. What bird is this? 8. Whoever gazed upon the broad sea without emotion? 9. What were my orders? 10. After whom is the king of Israel come out?

Place of the Interrogative Pronoun.

348. Rule LIII. The interrogative pronoun is always the first word in the sentence to which it belongs : as, *What* has he left that he can yet forego?

EXERCISE 159.

Parse :—

1. What warmth is there in your affection towards any of these princely suitors? 2. Who goes there? 3. What is most like thee? 4. Watchman, what of the night? 5. Which way went he? 6. Who is on our side? 7. What ill request did Brutus make to thee? 8. What's your pleasure, sir?

9. What hope or fear or joy is thine?

Who talketh with thee, Adeline?

10. And still as I comb'd I would sing and say,
"Who is it loves me? Who loves not me?"

QUESTIONS ON §§ 347, 348.

1. With what does an interrogative pronoun agree? 2. What is the place of the interrogative pronoun?

CHAPTER IV.—SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

[*Parsing*, pp. 128—141.]

1. Concord.

349. Rule LIV. The verb agrees with its nominative in number and person : as, The kite *flies* ; The kites *fly*.

EXPLANATION.—The verb *flies* is singular number, third person, to agree with its nominative *kite* : the verb *fly* is plural number, third person, to agree with its nominative *kites*.

Obs. 1.—The verb *to be* does not necessarily agree with the nominative following : as, Ye *are* the salt of the earth ; A penny *is* four farthings. In the sentence "The wages of sin *is* death," we must either consider *death* to be the subject, or *wages* to be singular.

Obs. 2.—Some nouns with plural endings take singular verbs : as, Great pains *was* taken. It is generally better to use a plural verb, Great pains *were* taken.

Obs. 3.—The plural title of a single work may have a singular verb : as, "The Last Days of Pompeii" *was* written by Bulwer Lytton.

Obs. 4.—The plural is used when number is thought of : as, Seven women *were* in the field. When quantity is thought of, even when expressed in number, the singular is used : as, Forty shillings *is* the price.

Obs. 5.—When the subject is an infinitive mood, a sentence, or any part of speech (other than a pronoun) used as a noun, the verb is in the singular number, third person : as, To obey *is* better than sacrifice ; That you have been deceived *is* evident ; Green *is* a colour.

Obs. 6.—The nominative is often omitted (1) before a verb in the imperative, as, *Come*=come ye ; (2) in poetry, as, *Lives* there who loves his pain ? (3) after the conjunction *than*, as, He *is* better than *was* expected.

Obs. 7.—The same form of the verb, whether simple, progressive, or emphatic, should be preserved throughout the sentence.

Obs. 8.—The impersonal verbs *methinks*, *me seems*, and *me listeth* are said to have no nominative. In reality, the nominative follows—*e.g.*, *Me thought* I was at home=[I was at home] seemed to me.

Obs. 9.—When *you* is nominative the verb is always of the plural form.

EXERCISE 160.

Parse :—

1. The reindeer is tractable and easily tamed. 2. The marmot absconds in winter. 3. Ripe apples drop about my head. 4. The allies of Rome were slaves. 5. The native inhabitants of Greenland are true Esquimaux. 6. Warwick is hoarse with calling thee to arms. 7. The smallest worm

will turn, being trodden on. 8. Things ill-got had ever bad success. 9. Ill blows the wind that profits nobody. 10. The panting herds repose. 11. One touch of nature makes the whole world kin. 12. Wisdom cries out in the streets, and no man regards. 13. I can call spirits from the vasty deep. 14. Two stars keep not their motion in one sphere. 15. The better part of valour is discretion. 16. We must be brief when traitors brave the field. 17. Fling away ambition. 18. But to throw one's self into cold spring water, when the body has been heated by the exercise of the sun, is an imprudence which may prove fatal. 19. The Lives of the Chancellors is a voluminous work. 20. Methought I saw the grave where Laura lay.

350. Rule LV. Two or more singular nominatives joined by *and* require a verb in the plural: as, Sorrow and silence *are* strong.

EXPLANATION.—*Sorrow* and *silence* being joined by the conjunction *and* form a plural nominative and require the verb *are* in the plural.

Obs. 1.—The conjunction *and* is frequently understood: as, Birds, beasts, insects, there abound.

Obs. 2.—If the nouns joined by *and* are in apposition, the verb is singular: as, The great orator and statesman *is* dead.

Obs. 3.—When two or more singular nouns are joined by *and* expressed or understood and qualified by the adjectives *each*, *every*, *no*, the verb must be singular: as, Every sheep and every lamb *enters* the fold.

Obs. 4.—When two nouns are joined by *and* so as to form a compound—which is regarded as singular, the verb must be singular: as, Bread-and-cheese *was* his chief food.

Obs. 5.—Sometimes when the verb precedes the nominatives it agrees with the first, and is understood with the rest: as,

Ah! then and there *was* hurrying to and fro,
And gathering tears and tremblings of distress.

EXERCISE 161.

Parse:—

1. Innocence and independence make a brave spirit. 2. Both he and she are still within my power. 3. At one point the Danube and the Rhine are only twelve miles apart. 4. A piece of bread and a draught of water were often his sole and evening repast. 5. Wolfe, Monckton, and Murray landed with the first division. 6. I heard the wrack as if earth and sky would mingle. 7. Sheba and Raamah border the Persian Gulf. 8. Copper and tin are soft metals.

9. Rocks, torrents, gulfs, and shapes of giant size,
And glittering cliffs on cliffs and fiery ramparts rise.

10. Here I and sorrow sit:
Here is thy throne, bid kings come bow to it.

351. Rule LVI. Two or more singular nominatives joined by *or* or *nor* require a verb in the singular: as, *He* or his friend has been here.

EXPLANATION.—*He* and *friend* being joined by the conjunction *or* require the verb *has been* in the singular.

Obs. 1.—Singular nominatives joined by *as well as* must always have the verb in the singular: as, In the time of Caesar, the reindeer, as well as the elk and wild bull, *was* a native of the Hercynian forest.

Obs. 2.—When a singular and plural nominative are joined by *or* or *nor* the verb agrees with the nearest nominative: as, Neither stone, nor brick, nor tiles, *were* employed in these habitations.

EXERCISE 162.

Parse :—

1. Pride or passion will carry a man to great lengths. 2. No nook or corner was left unexplored.
3. There was neither sound nor sight
To serve them for a guide.
4. No other noise, or people's troublous cries,
As still are wont to annoy the wallèd town,
Might there be heard ;—but careless quiet lies,
Wrapt in eternal silence,—far from enemies.
Whether love
Or victory thy royal thoughts did move,
Each was a noble cause.
6. The breezy call of incense-breathing morn,
The swallow twittering from the straw-built shed,
The cock's shrill clarion, or the echoing horn,
No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed.

352. Rule LVII. When the nominative is a collective noun conveying unity of idea, the verb is singular ; but when it is a collective noun conveying plurality of idea, the verb is plural : as, *The crowd is silent ; The crowd are excited.*

EXPLANATION.—When *crowd* conveys unity of idea, it requires the verb to be singular, *is* ; *The crowd* (as one body) *is* silent. When *crowd* conveys plurality of idea, it requires the verb to be plural, *are excited* ; *The crowd* (as separate persons, each of them) *are excited*.

EXERCISE 163.

Parse :—

1. The council, being awakened by the serjeant-at-arms, rubbed their eyes. 2. The jury were discharged. 3. The multitude were divided in opinion. 4. The Parliament has elected its Speaker. 5. The meeting has chosen a president. 6. The House of Commons were well agreed in passing the bill.

353. Rule LVIII. When nominatives of different persons are joined by *and*, the verb is plural and agrees with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third : as, *He and I (=we) are well ; You and he (=you) are well.*

EXPLANATION.—*He* (third person) and *I* (first person) are joined by *and*, hence the verb *are* is plural number, first person. *You* (second person) and *he* (third person) are joined by *and*, hence the verb *are* is plural number, second person.

EXERCISE 164.

Parse :—

1. My father and I have lived here fifteen years. 2. We and they landed yesterday. 3. The bishop and I undertook the work. 4. You and she might pass for sisters. 5. You and I must protect these orphans. 6. You and they are now in a position to pay the debt.

354. Rule LIX. When nominatives of different persons are joined by *or* or *nor* the verb agrees in person with the nearest : as, *Either you or I am wrong.*

EXPLANATION.—*You* (second person) and *I* (first person) are joined by *or*, hence the verb *am* is first person agreeing with *I*. The full construction is :—Either you [are wrong] or I am wrong.

Obs.—When two or more nominatives of different persons are in apposition in a sentence which contains only one statement, the verb agrees in number and person with the first nominative : as, *I*, your father, *bid* you go.

EXERCISE 165.

Parse :—

1. Neither you nor he has witnessed the new play. 2. Either she or I am deceived. 3. Either you or Lovell has been at the masquerade. 4. Neither you nor I can realise the appalling truth. 5. Neither you nor the priest was in the right. 6. Either he or I am sadly changed.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 349—354.

1. With what does a verb agree? 2. Give an example in which a verb does not agree with a nominative following. 3. Explain the construction “The wages of sin is death.” 4. Give an example of a singular verb after a nominative having the plural form. 5. Give an example of a singular verb with the plural title of a work. 6. Of what number and person are the verb when the nominative is an infinitive mood, a sentence, or any word (not a pronoun) used for a noun? 7. When is the nominative often omitted? 8. What verbs are said to have no nominative? 9. When *you* is nominative, of what number is the verb in form? 10. When two or more singular nominatives are joined by *and*, of what number is the verb? 11. Give an example in which *and* is understood between two nominatives. 12. In what cases do two or more nominatives joined by *and* take a verb in the singular? 13. When two or more singular nominatives are joined by *or* or *nor*, of what number is the verb? 14. When the nominatives are joined by *as well as*, of what number is the verb? 15. When a singular and plural nominative are joined by *or* or *nor*, which does the verb agree with? 16. Of what number is the verb when the nominative is a collective noun? 17. When nominatives of different persons are joined by *and*, what is the person of the verb? 18. When nominatives of different persons are joined by *or* or *nor*, what is the person of the verb?

2. The Subjunctive Mood.

355. Rule LX. The subjunctive mood is always preceded by a conjunction expressed or understood : as, *O* give it me, lest thy hard heart *do steel* it; *Had* I not *known* those customs, I should have been beholden to your paper.

EXPLANATION.—*Do steel* is subjunctive mood, and is preceded by the conjunction *lest*; *had known* is subjunctive mood, and is preceded by the conjunction *if* understood.

Obs. 1.—The verb is often made to precede its nominative in order to indicate that the sign of the subjunctive has been suppressed : as,

Were there hope to conquer them again,
My sword should shed hot blood, mine eyes no tears.

Obs. 2.—Certain words with a conjunctive force precede the subjunctive : as, Such levity, whatsoever *be* the motive, is unworthy of a legislator and a man.

Obs. 3.—*That* and *lest*, preceded by a command or wish, or denoting a purpose or consequence, are followed by the subjunctive mood : as, Pity me then and wish (that) *I were renew'd*.

Obs. 4.—The subjunctive may be used for the potential : as, That *were* a state fit for his holiness = that *would be* a state fit for his holiness.

Obs. 5.—The potential mood has sometimes the conditional or subjunctive form : as,

If *I could* write the beauty of your eyes,
And in fresh numbers number all your graces
The age to come would say, this poet lies,

356. The conjunctions and other words which precede a verb in the subjunctive mood are as follows :—

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Albeit. | He will fail albeit the duke be on his side. |
| Although. | Her father is no better than an earl, Although in glorious titles he excel. |
| An (=if). | An he be content, why, so am I. |
| Before. | Thus is his cheek the map of days out-worn, When beauty liv'd and died as flowers do now, * * * Before the golden tresses of the dead, The right of sepulchres, were shorn away. |
| Ere. | Now timely sing, ere the rude bird of hate Foretell my hapless doom from some grove nigh. |
| Except. | Ye shall not go hence except your youngest brother come hither. |
| How. | Let him look into the errors of Phocion, and he will beware how he be obstinate or inflexible. |
| If. | If the king-wolf lose the scent, how will the pack hold it ? |
| Lest. | Mend your speech a little lest it mar your fortune. |
| Provided. | Provided the chieftain pay the tribute, he will not be molested. |
| Provided that. | I will do it provided that he will give me leave. |
| So. | So we be rid of them, do with 'em what thou wilt. |
| Suppose. | Suppose the field be won, what will be the gain to us ? |
| Supposing. | Supposing this be true, we must e'en look to it. |
| That. | It is necessary to the progression of sciences that readers be of the most able and sufficient men. |
| Though. | Let it fall rather, though the fork invade the region of my heart. |
| Till. | Till the eye have vision the whole members are in bonds. |
| Unless. | Public censure speaks a public foe, Unless a zeal for virtue guide the blow. |
| Until. | If so, gaze on, and grovel on thy face, Until thy head be circled with the same. |
| Whether. | I doubt whether there be a city on the globe that can show anything equal to the beauty of one of these boat-excursions on the Neva, during a fine summer night. |
| Whoever. | I shall humble him whoever he be. |
| However. | "However that be," cried I, "the most vulgar ballad of all generally pleases me more than the fine modern odes." |
| Whatever. | Whatever were the fruits of their industry, their patron and his family inherited the third part, or even the whole of their fortune. |

EXERCISE 166.

Parse :—

1. If you touch one, you touch all. 2. Life is no trifle, howsoever short it seem. 3. What though no real voice nor sound amid their radiant orbs

be found? 4. Though they to one be ten, be not amazed. 5. He will not come till she be gone. 6. If I were a king it should be otherwise. 7. Though all the winds of doctrine were let loose to play upon the earth, so Truth be in the field, we do injuriously by licensing and prohibiting, to misdoubt her strength. 8. In whatsoever shape he lurk, I'll know.

9. Saw I that insect on this goblet's brim,
I would remove it with an anxious pity.
10. This sword hath ended him; so shall it thee,
Unless thou yield thee as my prisoner.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 355, 356.

1. What is the subjunctive preceded by? 2. When the sign of the subjunctive is suppressed, where is the nominative placed? 3. When are *that* and *lest* followed by the subjunctive? 4. Give an example in which the subjunctive is used for the potential. 5. Give an example in which the potential has the conditional or subjunctive form. 6. What words precede the subjunctive mood?

3. The Imperative Mood.

357. Rule LXI. The imperative mood is sometimes used absolutely: as, Some horsemen, *say* twenty, passed this way.

EXPLANATION.—*Say* is imperative mood used absolutely. We may supply an ellipsis—*Let us say*.

Obs. 1.—The expression *have done* is an instance of an imperative mood, perfect tense.

Obs. 2.—The imperative may be used in the first and third persons: as, *Return* we to the subject: Long *live* the king. In the latter case an ellipsis may be supplied: "*May* the king live long," or "*Let* the king live long."

EXERCISE 167.

Parse:—

1. Now let us sing "Long live the king." 2. The people shouted "God save the king." 3. The hostile army is immense, consisting of, say, one hundred thousand men. 4. The distance is great, say fifteen thousand paces. 5. Many nobles, say fifty, were in the assembly.
6. And be the Spartan's epitaph on me—
"Sparta hath many a worthier son than he."

QUESTIONS ON § 357.

1. Show how the imperative mood may be used absolutely. 2. Explain the form *have done*. 3. Give examples of imperatives of the first and third persons

4. The Infinitive Mood.

358. Rule LXII. The infinitive mood is governed by a verb, an adjective, or a noun: as, (1) He strives *to learn*; (2) He is anxious *to learn*; (3) He shows great anxiety *to learn*.

EXPLANATION.—In (1) *to learn* is governed by the verb *strives*; in (2) *to learn* is governed by the adjective *anxious*; in (3) *to learn* is governed by the noun *anxiety*.

Obs. 1.—The infinitive sometimes had a preposition before it: as, He stood up *for* to read. This usage is obsolete: hence *for* should never be used before the infinitive.

Obs. 2.—The infinitive sometimes denotes the object, and sometimes a purpose: as, He loves *to read* (Object); He comes *to read* (Purpose). When the infinitive denotes purpose it is called the Gerundial Infinitive.

EXERCISE 168.

Parse :—

1. The Bailie found a way to make them speak English. 2. The bishops agreed to proceed. 3. Newton has learned to see what Kepler saw. 4. He was ready to die in her defence. 5. The bishop consented to reply. 6. They agreed to give four shillings in the pound for one year. 7. The voice of that one man is able to put more life in us. 8. I drew my knife and began to pick the flint. 9. It is no time to joke. 10. Sir Henry was advised to defer his attack. 11. He rather liked to talk. 12. When the mourner had gone thus far in his story, he stopped to pay Nature her tribute, and wept bitterly. 13. She dropped her glove to prove his love, then looked at him and smiled.

14. Thy triumphs, Rome, I shall not see,
For I return to die.

15. Where's the coward that would not dare
To fight for such a land ?

359. Rule LXIII. The infinitive mood is sometimes used absolutely : as, *To conclude*, I shall point out an important lesson.

EXPLANATION.—*To conclude* is the infinitive absolute, because it is not governed by any other word. We may, however, supply an ellipsis : as, [As I am] to conclude, I shall point out an important lesson.

EXERCISE 169.

Parse :—

1. To do her justice, she was a good-natured, notable woman. 2. To say the truth, I was tired of being always wise. 3. To confess the truth, this man's mind seems fitted to his station. 4. To say the truth, I don't know that they imitate anything at all. 5. It is an admirable sword, to be sure.

6. To be short, for not appearance, and
The king's late scruple, by the main assent
Of all these learned men she was divorced.

360. Rule LXIV. *To*, the sign of the infinitive mood, is omitted after the verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *shall*, *will*, *bid*, *dare*, *do*, *feel*, *have*, *hear*, *let*, *make*, *need*, *see*, and sometimes after *observe*, *watch*, *keep*, *know*, *behold*, *mark*, *find*, and *perceive* : as, We see the sun *rise*.

EXPLANATION.—The infinitive *rise* omits its sign after the verb *see*.

Obs. 1.—After the passive the sign *to* must be used : as, The sun is seen *to rise*.

Obs. 2.—Some of these verbs are occasionally followed by *to*. *Dare* (when signifying *to challenge*), *bid* (in the phrase *bids fair*), *feel* (intrans.), *need* (intrans.), and *have* (implying possession or obligation) are followed by *to* : as, I dare thee *to contest* the prize.

EXERCISE 170.

Parse :—

1. My gentle Phœbe did bid me give you this. 2. The English vessels saw their prey pass by. 3. At first I heard every man say, "Let us hang the priest." 4. I dare assure you, sir, 'tis almost two. 5. You can hear him swing his heavy sledge. 6. Let go thy hold when a great wheel runs downhill. 7. I never knew one of them find fault with it. 8. The good-

natured girl let fall a tear at this account. 9. I bid you spurn the gilded bait they bear.

10. The bleak wind of March
Made her tremble and shiver,
But not the dark arch
Or the black-flowing river.

361. Rule LXV. The infinitive mood is really a verbal noun, and generally does the work of a noun: as, *To die* is the lot of man.

EXPLANATION.—The infinitive *to die* is a verbal noun, and forms the nominative to the verb *is*.

Obs. 1.—The infinitive mood may be (1) the subject, as, *To smite* the poor is treason against God; (2) the object, as, The sun begins *to rise*; (3) qualified by an adjective, as, *To pluck* flowers is delightful; (4) in apposition, as, He found it inconvenient *to be* poor.

Obs. 2.—The particle *to* is really no part of the infinitive: its use has arisen from a confusion of the real infinitive which ended in *an* and the gerundial infinitive which ended in *anne* and had *to* prefixed.

Obs. 3.—The infinitive usually denotes the object after verbs expressing passions or powers of the mind: as, *Love, hate, loathe, wish, desire, learn, mean, intend, design, purpose, propose, offer, expect, hope, fear, remember, forget, think, like, seek, resolve, delay, cause, make, teach*, and the like.

EXERCISE 171.

Parse:—

1. To measure life learn thou betimes. 2. The trees began to whisper and the wind began to roll. 3. To have an open ear, a quick eye, and a nimble hand, is necessary for a cut-purse. 4. It is noble to seek truth, and it is beautiful to find it. 5. 'Tis a cruelty to load a falling man. 6. How hard it is to hide the sparks of nature. 7. It is not safe to play with error and dress it up to ourselves or others in the shape of truth. 8. I thought to stand where banners waved.

9. To copy beauties forfeits all pretence to fame;
To copy faults is want of sense.

10. To gild refined gold, to paint the lily,
To throw a perfume on the violet,
To smooth the ice, or add another hue
Unto the rainbow, or with a taper light
To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 358—361.

1. By what is the infinitive mood governed? 2. What is said of the sentence, "He stood up for to read"? 3. Give an example of the infinitive of purpose. 4. What is the infinitive absolute? 5. After what verbs is the sign of the infinitive omitted? 6. What is the real function of the infinitive mood? 7. Show how the infinitive does the work of a noun. 8. How has the use of *to* with the infinitive arisen? 9. After what verbs does the infinitive denote the object?

5. Participles.

362. Rule LXVI. All participles refer to nouns or pronouns: as, *Smiling faintly*, he pointed upward.

EXPLANATION.—The participle *smiling* refers to the pronoun *he*, which it qualifies.

Obs. 1.—Participles are really verbal adjectives; they are often used as simple adjectives of quality, in which case they precede the noun: as, A *loving* parent.

When participles are used as simple adjectives they admit of degrees of comparison : as, *Loving, more loving, most loving.*

Obs. 2.—Participles with the prefix *un* often become adjectives. If the verb has the prefix, its participle retains its verbal character and does not necessarily become an adjective. [*Parsing*, pp. 121, 122.]

Obs. 3.—A participle sometimes refers to a whole sentence : as, *Owing* to the numerous failures that attended his efforts, his spirit of enterprise was completely crushed.

Obs. 4.—The past or complete participle and not the past tense should be used after the verbs *have* and *be* : as, He has *broken* (not *broke*) the law ; The enemy was *smitten* (not *smote*). Generally, the past or complete participle must not be used for the past tense, nor the past tense for the past or complete participle.

EXERCISE 172.

Parse :—

1. Fanned by a fresh breeze, the blaze rose into the sky. 2. So, purposing each moment to retire, she linger'd still. 3. Being apprised of our approach, the whole neighbourhood came out to meet their minister, dressed in their fine clothes, and preceded by a pipe and tabor. 4. Birds of calm sit brooding on the charmed wave. 5. Hope deferred maketh the heart sick. 6. A living dog is better than a dead lion. 7. Thou art unseen, but yet I hear thy shrill delight.

8. We wander o'er a sunburnt thirsty soil,
Murmuring and weary of our daily toil.

9. Waiting till the west-wind blows,
The freighted clouds at anchor lie.

10. Then came fair May, the fairest maid on ground,
Deck'd all with dainties of her season's pride,
And throwing flowers out of her lap around.

363. Rule LXVII. A present or incomplete participle is sometimes used absolutely : as, Generally *speaking*, they live very quietly.

EXPLANATION.—The participle *speaking* is said to be used absolutely. This idiom may be explained by supplying an ellipsis : as [If we were] speaking generally, [we would say that] they live very quietly. [*Parsing*, p. 134]

Obs.—This is an adverbial use.

EXERCISE 173.

Parse :—

1. Generally speaking, this physician rises at five in the morning. 2. Considering by what means he gained his ends, he must be condemned. 3. Seeing the straits to which he was pushed, it was natural for him to invoke your aid. 4. Judging at random, there are threescore and ten kine in the meadow. 5. Generally speaking, Godfrey excels his rivals. 6. Speaking in round numbers, this happened three centuries ago.

364. Rule LXVIII. The present or incomplete and the perfect participles of transitive verbs govern the objective case : as, *Clasping* her hands, she prayed ; The wolves, *having regained* their feet, sprang directly towards me.

EXPLANATION.—The present or incomplete participle *clasping* governs *hands* in the objective case : the perfect participle *having regained* governs *feet* in the objective case.

EXERCISE 174.

Parse :—

1. Lamenting the barren superfluity of materials, I have studied to compress the narrative of these uninteresting transactions. 2. Elated by his recent success, he despatched a herald with a bold defiance to the camp of the Romans, requesting them to fix a day of battle. 3. Manifestoes were diligently circulated, exhorting the Persians to assert their freedom against an odious and contemptible tyrant. 4. I shook each tenderly by the hand, and leaving them my blessing, proceeded forward without meeting any further interruption. 5. Having thus instructed him, and settled the rest, I walked down to the common prison. 6. From my study I see the lamplight descending the broad hall-stair.

7. Waving wide her myrtle wand,
She strikes a universal peace through sea and land.
8. Whispering pleasure as they fly,
Cool zephyrs, through the clear blue sky
Their gathered fragrance fling.
9. We buried him darkly at dead of night,
The sods with our bayonets turning.
10. 'Twas vain ; the loud waves lashed the shore,
Return or aid preventing.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 362—364.

1. To what do participles refer? 2. What are participles really? 3. What is said of participles with *un* prefixed? 4. Give an example in which a participle refers to a sentence. 5. Which part of the verb is used after *have* and *be*? 6. Give an instance of a participle used absolutely. 7. Which participles govern an objective case?

6. Verbal nouns in -ing.

365. Rule LXIX. When the verbal form in *-ing* is preceded by *an*, *a*, or *the*, it is a verbal noun and is generally followed by the preposition *of*: as, It is the *displaying* of the glory of learning in sovereignty that I propound to myself.

EXPLANATION.—The verbal noun *displaying* is preceded by *the* and followed by *of*.

Obs. 1.—When *an*, *a*, or *the* does not precede the form in *ing*, *of* should not follow: as, Accident provided the means of *ending* them.

Obs. 2.—The gerund in *ing* being really a noun may be used as the subject or object of a verb: as,

“ *Binding* themselves by these terms was imprudent.”

“ She hated *spending* money.”

Obs. 3.—The gerund in *ing* may also be governed by a preposition: as, “ He lashed his slender means to the utmost in *educating* him for a learned and distinguished career”: “ Nature pays no heed to birth or condition in *bestowing* her favours.”

Obs. 4.—An action is expressed by a gerund without reference to the time of the act or to the agent.

Obs. 5.—A gerund derived from a transitive verb may take an object: as, “ I had no opportunity for *seeing* him;” “ I thank thee, Jew, for *teaching* me that word.”

Obs. 6.—The preposition *in*, together with its older forms *on* and *an*, was often used with the gerund in *ing*: as, *an hunting*, *on going*, *in telling*. The shortened form *a* of the preposition also occurs: e.g., “ *a coming* home;” “ burst out *a crying*;” “ fell *a weeping*;” “ go *a hunting*.” In many cases the *a* was omitted: as, The book is *printing*.

Obs. 7.—Such forms as *being* loved, *having* heard, *having been* wounded, *having been* reading, etc., are, when used as nouns, called **Compound Gerunds**.

EXERCISE 175.

Parse :—

1. Once I remember carrying my own bread under my arm. 2. My sensations were ever too violent to permit my attempting her rescue. 3. By taking the current a little farther up, the rest of the family got safely over. 4. Talking is not always to converse. 5. I did not consider the impropriety of my being in such company till I saw a mob gather about me. 6. I comforted myself with reflecting that London was the mart where abilities of every kind were sure of meeting distinction and reward. 7. Captain Hardy congratulated him on having gained a complete victory. 8. Upon Mr. Thornhill's entering, he seemed, at seeing my son and me, to start back. 9. Upon the bleeding of his wounds, he called unto him one of his flatterers. 10. We rode over Castlewood Downs before the breaking of dawn.

QUESTIONS ON § 365.

1. When *an*, *a*, or *the* precedes a verbal noun in *ing*, what follows? 2. What follows the verbal form in *ing* if *an*, *a*, or *the* does not precede? 3. Give an example of the gerund as subject. 4. Give an example of the gerund as object. 5. Give an example of the gerund governed by a preposition. 6. In what way is an action expressed by a gerund? 7. When does a gerund take an object? 8. Which preposition was often used with the gerund? 9. What are compound gerunds?

Place of the Verb.

N.B.—For rules as to the place of the finite verb, see §§ 301, 313.

366. Rule LXX. The infinitive mood and the gerund* in *ing* have the place of a noun (see §§ 361, 365): the participle usually follows the noun to which it refers.

Obs.—When used as an adjective, the participle takes the place of an adjective.

EXERCISE 176.

Parse :—

1. Cassius hath a lean and hungry look. 2. Maidens still wear their Norman caps. 3. One devious step at first may lead into a course of habitual vice. 4. Icebergs are of various sizes. 5. Sir John Moore, while earnestly watching the result of the fight, was struck on the left breast by a cannon shot. 6. 'Tis one thing to be tempted, Escalus, another thing to fall.

QUESTIONS ON § 366.

1. What is the place of the finite verb? 2. What is the place of the infinitive mood and verbal noun? 3. What is the place of the participle?

CHAPTER V.—SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

[*Parsing*, pp. 142--147.]

367. Rule LXXI. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: as, He acted *wisely*; He is *very* tall; He spoke *most* eloquently.

EXPLANATION.—The adverb *wisely* modifies the verb *acted*; the adverb *very* modifies the adjective *tall*; and the adverb *most* modifies the adverb *eloquently*.

Obs. 1.—The adverbs *yes*, *yea*, *ay*, *no*, *nay* are used independently. Each of these words is equivalent to a sentence. *Amen* (=so be it) is a similar kind of word.

* Or verbal noun.

Obs. 2.—Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs in poetry: as, *Slow* sail'd the weary mariners. This usage should be avoided in prose.

Obs. 3.—Adverbs are sometimes used as adjectives: as, The *then* premier addressed the House on the subject. The expression is elliptical for "The then (acting) premier," etc.

Obs. 4.—Some adverbs and adjectives are alike in form: as, *Hard, long, fair, loud,* etc.

Obs. 5.—Adverbs are sometimes used as nouns: as, *Now* is the time.

Obs. 6.—The adverbs *hence, thence, and whence* should not be preceded by *from*, because they already contain the meaning of motion from.

Obs. 7.—Sometimes an adverb modifies a phrase or a whole sentence: as, He arrived *just* at midnight; *Unfortunately*, he thinks too highly of himself.

Obs. 8.—Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative, and therefore should not be used when negation is intended. In Old English writers the negative is doubled or even trebled for the purpose of adding emphasis: as, Nor never seek prevention of thy foes.

Obs. 9.—"The termination *ly* was originally adjectival. At present it is a derivational syllable, by which we convert an adjective into an adverb. When, however, an adjective ends in *ly* the formation is awkward. 'I eat my *daily* bread' is unexceptionable. 'I eat my bread *dailyly*' is exceptionable. One of two things must here take place: the two syllables *li-ly* are packed into one, or else the construction is that of an adjective deflected."—*Latham*.

Obs. 10.—In some imperative sentences the adverb seems to supply the place of a suppressed verb: as, *Down* with him.

Obs. 11.—It is not strictly correct to use the adverbs of "rest in a place," *here, there,* and *where*, instead of the adverbs of motion towards a place, *hither, thither, whither*.

EXERCISE 177.

Parse:—

1. Where shall we sometimes meet? 2. He speaks like a man. 3. I had almost forgotten him. 4. Command me absolutely not to go. 5. Instances of longevity are chiefly among the abstemious. 6. Act well your part, there all the honour lies. 7. The storm bursts overhead. 8. Penn dealt justly and kindly with the Indians. 9. I missed him all day long, and knew not till then how much I had loved him. 10. Smoothly, but quickly, as an arrow's flight, he glides over, and is seen no more. 11. Now my weary lips I close. 12. He had always loved books, and they were now necessary to him. 13. Where is the mother that looked on my childhood? 14. Whence come you? 15. A thing of beauty is a joy for ever. 16. They strolled up and down the terrace walks, talking incessantly. 17. She did not know him.

18. Yea, slimy things did crawl with legs
Upon the slimy sea.

19. Touch her not scornfully,
Think of her mournfully,
Gently and humanly.

20. Swiftly, swiftly flew the ship,
Yet she sailed softly too:
Sweetly, sweetly blew the breeze,
On me alone it blew.

Place of the Adverb.

368. Rule LXXII. The adverb is generally placed as near as possible to the word which it modifies. It usually precedes an adjective or another adverb, and follows a verb: as, The well is *exceedingly* deep; He spake *very* harshly; He wrote *well*.

There are many exceptions to this rule :—

1. If a verb is transitive with an object following, the adverb follows the object : as, The burning paper lighted it *up*.

2. The adverb is often placed between the last auxiliary and the verb : as, You have *always* been a very good friend to me.

3. For emphasis the adverb may precede the verb : as, *Blithely* the gay bells sound.

4. When the verb is a single word, the adverb *not* always follows and the adverb *never* always precedes : as, Tell it *not* in Gath, publish it *not* in the streets of Askelon ; He *never* denied it.

5. *Enough* is placed after the adjective it modifies, and both adjective and adverb after the noun : as, This is a ship large *enough* for our purpose. *Enough* also follows the adverb it modifies : as, He acted vigorously *enough*.

6. Interrogative adverbs stand first in the sentence : as, *Where* is he ?

7. The adverb may stand in any part of the sentence, but its meaning usually varies with its position. Mistakes often occur in placing the words *even* and *only*. The following examples show the different meanings of the latter word :—

1. *Only*, the peacock displays his glittering plumage on the lower hills. *Only* is equivalent to *but*, and is a conjunction : “We see few interesting sights here, *only* (but) the peacock displays,” etc.

2. The peacock-*only* (alone) displays his glittering plumage on the lower hills. No other bird displays its plumage.

3. The peacock *only*-displays his glittering plumage on the lower hills. The peacock does nothing else.

4. The peacock displays *only*-his-glittering plumage on the lower hills. The peacock displays his glittering plumage and no other.

5. The peacock displays his glittering plumage-*only* on the lower hills. He displays nothing else.

6. The peacock displays his glittering plumage *only*-on-the-lower-hills. He displays it nowhere else.

7. The peacock displays his glittering plumage on the *only*-lower-hills. The only hills that are lower than some hills implied.

EXERCISE 178.

Parse :—

1. Then ceased the storm. 2. His hands were enormously large. 3. I linger yet with nature. 4. Put not your trust in princes. 5. How came it there? 6. To thine own self be true, and it must follow, as the night the day, thou canst not then be false to any man. 7. I cry out too late to save. 8. Duncan comes here to-night. 9. They were soon overtaken.

10. Merrily, merrily goes the bark
On a breeze from the northward free.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 367, 368.

1. What do adverbs modify? 2. Name adverbs which are equivalent to sentences. 3. Give an example of an adjective used as an adverb. 4. Give an example of an adverb used as an adjective. 5. Mention some adjectives and adverbs which are alike in form. 6. Give an example of an adverb used as a noun. 7. Give an example of an adverb modifying a phrase or sentence. 8. What is the usual place of the adverb? 9. What are the exceptions to this rule? 10. Show, by examples, the various meanings of *only*.

CHAPTER VI.—SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

[*Parsing*, pp. 148—155.]

N.B.—Prepositions govern the objective case (§ 312) : as, I come *from* haunts *of* coot and hern. The word governed by the preposition is often

omitted : as, He is not a pleasant man to deal *with* (=with whom) ; The heavens *above* (=above us).

369. Rule LXXIII. The preposition is often joined to an intransitive verb, to make what is called the preposition-verb : as, He *boasted of* his descent.

EXPLANATION.—The preposition *of* is joined to the intransitive verb *boasted*, and forms with it the transitive preposition-verb *boasted-of*. [*Parsing*, pp. 69—148.]

Obs.—Prepositions are sometimes joined in this way to transitive verbs to vary the meaning : as, To meet *with*, to pick *up*.

EXERCISE 179.

Parse :—

1. He spoke of the Queen of Scots. 2. He spake to a deaf audience. 3. He spoke of many strange places. 4. We despair even of life. 5. The voyagers met with many disasters on the way. 6. The rustics wondered at his agility. 7. We bitterly thought of the morrow. 8. The prince affected to complain of the insincerity of the Greeks. 9. The king sided with the bolder party. 10. The governor of the castle connived at his escape.

370. Rule LXXIV. Certain words and phrases must be followed by appropriate prepositions : as, They *expelled* the deserter *from* the ranks.

EXPLANATION.—*From* appropriately follows the verb *expelled* ; no other preposition would be suitable.

N.B.—The following is a list of words with appropriate prepositions :—

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Abhorrence <i>of</i> . | Change <i>for</i> . |
| Abound <i>in, with</i> . | Clear <i>of, from</i> . |
| Abridge <i>of</i> . | Compatible <i>with</i> . |
| Accede <i>to</i> . | Compliance <i>with</i> . |
| Accord <i>with, to</i> . | Confer <i>on, upon, with</i> . |
| Accuse <i>of</i> . | Confide <i>in, to</i> . |
| Acquiesce <i>in</i> . | Conformable <i>to</i> . |
| Acquit <i>of</i> . | Congenial <i>to</i> . |
| Adapt <i>to, for</i> . | Conscious <i>of</i> . |
| Adequate <i>to</i> . | Consonant <i>to, with</i> . |
| Admonish <i>of</i> . | Convenient <i>to, for</i> . |
| Affinity <i>to, between</i> . | Conversant <i>with, in</i> . |
| Agree <i>with, to</i> . | Convince <i>of</i> . |
| Agreeable <i>to</i> . | Correspond <i>with, to</i> . |
| Alienate <i>from</i> . | Deficient <i>in</i> . |
| Alight <i>from, by</i> . | Deficiency <i>of</i> . |
| Ambitious <i>of</i> . | Depend <i>on, upon</i> . |
| Antipathy <i>to, against</i> . | Deprive <i>of</i> . |
| Assent <i>to</i> . | Derogate <i>from</i> . |
| Attend <i>to, upon</i> . | Derogatory <i>to</i> . |
| Averse <i>to, from</i> . | Desirous <i>of</i> . |
| Avert <i>from</i> . | Devolve <i>on, upon</i> . |
| Bestow <i>upon</i> . | Die <i>of, by</i> . |
| Blush <i>at, for</i> . | Differ <i>with, from</i> . |
| Boast <i>of</i> . | Difference <i>with, between</i> . |
| Call <i>on, for</i> . | Difficulty <i>in</i> . |
| Capable <i>of</i> . | Diminution <i>of</i> . |

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Disappointed <i>of</i> . | Observance <i>of</i> . |
| Disapprove <i>of</i> . | Opposite <i>to</i> . |
| Discouragement <i>to</i> . | Overwhelmed <i>with, by</i> . |
| Dissent <i>from</i> . | Prejudice <i>against</i> . |
| Distinguished <i>from, by</i> . | Prejudicial <i>to</i> . |
| Eager <i>in</i> . | Profit <i>by</i> . |
| Enamoured <i>of</i> . | Proud <i>of</i> . |
| Endeared <i>to</i> . | Provide <i>for, with, against</i> . |
| Endowed <i>with, by</i> . | Pursuance <i>of</i> . |
| Enjoin <i>upon</i> . | Pursuant <i>to</i> . |
| Exception <i>to, from</i> . | Reconcile <i>to</i> . |
| Exclusive <i>of</i> . | Recreant <i>to, from</i> . |
| Expert <i>at, in</i> . | Reduce <i>to</i> . |
| Fall <i>under, from, upon, into, in, etc.</i> | Reflect <i>on, upon</i> . |
| Fawn <i>on, upon</i> . | Regard <i>for, to</i> . |
| Foreign <i>to</i> . | Rejoice <i>at, with</i> . |
| Free <i>from</i> . | Relevant <i>to</i> . |
| Frown <i>at, on</i> . | Rely <i>upon</i> . |
| Glad <i>of</i> . | Remind <i>of</i> . |
| Greedy <i>after, of</i> . | Repine <i>at</i> . |
| Grieve <i>at</i> . | Replete <i>with</i> . |
| Guilty <i>of</i> . | Resemblance <i>to</i> . |
| Ignorant <i>of</i> . | Resolve <i>on, upon</i> . |
| Incapable <i>of</i> . | Significant <i>of</i> . |
| Inculcate <i>upon</i> . | Similar <i>to</i> . |
| Independent <i>of</i> . | Smile <i>at, upon</i> . |
| Indifferent <i>to</i> . | Swerve <i>from</i> . |
| Initiate <i>into, in</i> . | Sympathize <i>with</i> . |
| Inseparable <i>from</i> . | Taste <i>of, for</i> . |
| Insist <i>upon</i> . | Think <i>of, on</i> . |
| Intent <i>on, upon</i> . | Thirst <i>for, after</i> . |
| Inured <i>to</i> . | Triumph <i>over</i> . |
| Made <i>of, for</i> . | True <i>to, of</i> . |
| Marry <i>to</i> . | Trust <i>in, to</i> . |
| Martyr <i>for, to</i> . | Versed <i>in</i> . |
| Militate <i>against</i> . | Wait <i>on, at, for, in</i> . |
| Mistrustful <i>of</i> . | Want <i>of</i> . |
| Need <i>of</i> . | Warn <i>of</i> . |
| | Worthy <i>of</i> . |

Obs. 1.—The preposition *to* or *for* is used with verbs of motion before names of places: as, (1) They marched *to* Rome; (2) The archbishop and the prefect embarked *for* Cyprus.

Obs. 2.—The preposition *in* is generally used with verbs of rest before the names of countries, cities, and large towns, and the preposition *at* before the names of small towns, villages, and foreign cities: as, (1) My friend lives *in* London; his brother is *at* Vienna; (2) The vine grows *in* France; (3) Cotton is manufactured *at* Manchester.

EXERCISE 180.

Append suitable prepositions to these words:—

Regard, worthy, resolve, confer, avert, averse, deficient, correspond, triumph, accuse, devolve, dissent, differ, glad, bestow, warn, expert, profit, sympathy, smile.

EXERCISE 181.

Parse :—

1. He was ignorant of letters. 2. The hero could not depend on the faith of a tyrant. 3. He was beheaded at Nice. 4. He was deprived of his only friend. 5. The fugitives of Palestine were entertained at Alexandria. 6. I am not worthy of the least of all these mercies. 7. The insidious smile upon the cheek would warn him of the canker in the heart. 8. The title of Lord Protector was bestowed on Cromwell. 9. Do not acquiesce in every opinion. 10. If they had waited for him, their troops would have deserted. 11. I have found a history that has great resemblance to hers. 12. She came to Paris. 13. When our visit was ended, he called for his hat. 14. Many are desirous of testifying their respect by attending. 15. The great beauty of both depends on the contrast between splendour and obscurity.

Place of the Preposition.

371. Rule LXXV. Prepositions stand before the words they govern : as, We watched her breathing *through* the night.

There are exceptions to this rule :—

1. The preposition never precedes the relative *that* : as, Behold the stream *that* I told you *of*.

2. The preposition is sometimes placed at the end of interrogative and relative sentences : as, What have you been playing *at*? This is the horse which I asked *for*. In relative sentences this usually occurs when the relative is omitted : as, To have no screen between the part he played and him he played it *for*.

3. In poetry the preposition may follow the governed word : as,

No war or battle's sound
Was heard the world *around*.

This also occurs when emphasis is required : as, Such conduct I am at a loss to account *for*.

4. In some cases two prepositions come together : as,

From before the lustre of her face,
White break the clouds away.

A noun may be supplied after the first preposition : as, From *the place* before, etc.

EXERCISE 182.

Parse :—

1. On fickle wings the minutes haste. 2. A father bends o'er him with looks of delight. 3. I steal by lawns and grassy plots. 4. The gorse is yellow on the heath. 5. The tradesman that you were acquainted with has failed. 6. I have you fast in my fortress. 7. Echo walks steep hills among. 8. With what a glory comes and goes the year !

9. Thou wast a bubble once—a cup and ball
Which babes might play with.

10. Around their sovereign, on the verdant ground,
Sweet airy forms in mystic measures bound.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 369--371.

1. How are preposition-verbs formed? 2. Mention words and phrases followed by appropriate prepositions. 3. Which preposition is used with verbs of motion before names of places? 4. Which prepositions are used with verbs of rest before names of places? 5. What is the place of the preposition? 6. What are the exceptions to the general rule,

CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

[*Parsing*, pp. 156—158.]

372. Rule LXXVI. Conjunctions generally join the same cases of nouns and pronouns and the same moods and tenses of verbs: as, He forsook his father *and* me; He reads *and* writes well.

EXPLANATION.—*Father* and *me*, which are joined by *and*, are both objective case: *reads* and *writes*, which are joined by *and*, are both indicative mood, present tense. It must be carefully borne in mind that conjunctions join *sentences*; hence the above are elliptical. (1) He forsook his father and [he forsook] me; (2) He reads [well] and [he] writes well.

Obs.—Conjunctions do not always join the same moods and tenses of verbs: as, *As it was* in the beginning, *is* now, and ever *shall be*; He *has gone* away, but he *should have remained* here.

EXERCISE 183.

Parse:—

1. The wolves howled and whined. 2. Ill news is winged with fate and flies apace. 3. Thou wert my guide, philosopher, and friend. 4. He was a scholar and a good one. 5. Many were in tears, and many knelt before him and blessed him as he passed. 6. Shame greatly hurts or greatly helps mankind.

7. He plied his work, and Lucy took
The lantern in her hand.

8. In vain doth valour bleed,
While avarice and rapine share the land.

9. He looks to her and rushes on
Where life is lost or freedom won.

10. Here, in cool grot and mossy cell,
We rural fays and fairies dwell.

373. Rule LXXVII. The conjunction *than* takes the same case after it as before it: as, Peace hath her victories no less renowned *than* War.

EXPLANATION.—The noun *War* after the conjunction *than* is nominative case, like the noun *Peace* before it, the construction being “*than* War [hath its victories].”

Obs.—*Than* is said to govern the relative in the objective. The construction *than* *whom* has probably arisen from the Latin ablative after a comparative. We must consider *than* to be a preposition in this case.

EXERCISE 184.

Parse:—

1. No person ever had a better knack of hoping than I. 2. My skill in music availed me nothing in a country where every peasant was a better musician than I. 3. They wrote faster than I. 4. The frigate-bird is little more than wings; he has scarcely any body. 5. I love you better than he. 6. I love you better than him.

374. Rule LXXVIII. Some conjunctions have their corresponding conjunctions: as, Thou shalt *neither* vex a stranger *nor* oppress him.

EXPLANATION.—The conjunction *neither* has its corresponding conjunction *nor*.

Obs.—Conjunctions of this kind are called *correlative*. For list see § 191.

EXERCISE 185.

Parse :—

1. Hesiod was either contemporary with Homer or lived immediately after him. 2. He understands how to manage both public and private concerns. 3. 'Tis neither here nor there. 4. Though her father be the king of Naples, Duke of Anjou and Maine, yet is he poor. 5. I could neither read nor write with satisfaction. 6. Whether is the lion or the ox the stronger? 7. As the lion reigns in Africa, so the tiger is lord and master of the Indian jungles. 8. Though it does not seem to move, yet it slowly forces its way down the valley till it reaches the sea.

9. The crow doth sing as sweetly as the lark,
When neither is attended.

10. The Romans, in Rome's quarrel,
Spared neither land nor gold,
Nor son nor wife, nor limb nor life,
In the brave days of old.

Place of the Conjunction.

375. Rule LXXIX. Conjunctions stand between the sentences which they join: as, The rain fell again *and* the wind howled.

There are exceptions to this rule :—

1. When contraction occurs, the conjunction stands between one sentence and the fragment of the other: as, John writes *and* reads.

2. The conjunction *that* sometimes stands first in a sentence: as, *That* you have wronged me doth appear in this.

3. The conjunction *that* is sometimes omitted: as, I wish [that] all men did heartily believe so much of this as is true.

4. *Neither*, *nor*, and *either*, *or*, are placed next the words to which they refer: as, There would be *neither* moon *nor* star.

EXERCISE 186.

Parse :—

1. The warders waved their caps and cheered, but the crowd looked on impassively. 2. Our soldiers performed such feats as they are not able to express. 3. The bay is wide, but dangerous from shoals. 4. He took her soft hand ere her mother could bar. 5. Wrath is cruel and anger is outrageous, but who is able to stand before envy? 6. Be swift to hear, but cautious of your tongue, lest you betray your ignorance. 7. To-morrow let us do or die. 8. They also serve who only stand and wait.

9. The cold sweat melted from their limbs,
Nor rot nor reck did they.

10. Lives of great men all remind us
We can make our lives sublime.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 372—375.

1. What do conjunctions join? 2. Which case follows the conjunction *than*? 3. Explain the construction *than whom*. 4. Give an example of a corresponding or correlative conjunction. 5. What is the place of the conjunction? 6. What are the exceptions to this rule?

CHAPTER VIII.—THE INTERJECTION.

[*Parsing*, pp. 86, 159.]

376. Rule LXXX. Interjections are independent of syntax, but certain interjections take after them the objective case of the first personal pronoun and the nominative case of the second personal pronoun : as, *Ah me ! O thou !*

EXPLANATION.—*Me*, objective case of the first personal pronoun, follows the interjection *Ah !* *Thou*, nominative case of the second personal pronoun, follows the interjection *O*. *Ah me !* is elliptical, the full sense being “Ah, pity me,” or “Ah (alas) for me,” or “Ah, what grief awaits me.”

Obs.—Interjections, being independent of syntax, may be introduced in any part of a sentence.

EXERCISE 187.

Parse :—

1. Alas ! how little can be known.
2. Oh, that these lips had language !
3. Oh ! take the wanderer home.
4. Alas ! how soon thy little course will end.
5. My cheek is cold and white, alas !
6. O brother, say not so !
7. Ah me, how wearily pass the hour.
8. O, lift me from the grass !
9. Lo, the lilies of the field !
How their leaves instruction yield.
10. Ah, well-a-day ! what evil looks
Had I from old and young !

CHAPTER IX.—FIGURES.

1. Figures of Syntax.

377. The principal figures of syntax are *Ellipsis*, *Enallage*, *Hyperbaton*, *Pleonasm*, and *Zeugma*.

378. Ellipsis (Greek *elleipsis*, an omission) is the omission of some word or words in a sentence for the sake of brevity or elegance : as, Either you or I must go = Either you [must go] or I must go. Words thus omitted are said to be understood or implied.

379. Enallage (Greek *enallagē*, change) is the use of one part of speech for another : as, Drink *deep* or taste not the Pierian spring. The adjective *deep* is used for the adverb *deeply*.

380. Hyperbaton (Greek, transgression) is the transposition of words : as, No haughty feat of arms I tell.

381. Pleonasm (Greek *plonasmos*, fulness) is a redundancy of words : as,

Now tell us what 'twas all about,
Young Peterkin *he* cries.

382. Zeugma (Greek, a joining) is that form by which a verb that grammatically belongs to two or more nouns is, as to its meaning, applicable only to one : as, They wear a garment like the Seythians, but a language peculiar to themselves. This figure is extremely rare in English.

2. Figures of Rhetoric.

383. The principal figures of rhetoric are *Allegory*, *Antithesis*, *Apostrophe*, *Climax*, *Hyperbole*, *Irony*, *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Prosopopœia*, *Simile*, and *Synecdoche*.

384. Allegory (Greek *allēgoria*, from *allos*, other, and *agoreuō*, I speak) is a figure in which the primary object is described by means of a secondary one to which it bears resemblance. It is a continuation of metaphors. Under allegories are included *parables* and *fables*.

385. Antithesis (Greek, from *anti*, against, and *tithēmi*, I place) is a figure by which words and ideas are contrasted : as, Wit laughs at things ; humour laughs with them.

386. Apostrophe (Greek *apo*, from, *strophē*, a turning) is a figure by which the speaker turns from the subject of discourse and addresses some other person or thing : as, Then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death ! where is thy sting ?

387. Climax (Greek *klimax*, a ladder) is a figure by which a subject rises step by step from a lower to a higher interest : as, And the messenger answered and said, Israel is fled before the Philistines, and there hath been also a great slaughter among the people, and thy two sons also, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead, and the ark of God is taken.

Anti-climax is a figure by which a subject descends step by step from a higher to a lower interest : as, Die, and endow a college or a cat.

388. Hyperbole (Greek, excess) is a figure by which more is expressed than is literally true : as, I shall strike the stars with my crown.

389. Irony (Greek *eirōnia*, from *eirōn*, a dissembler in speech) is a figure by which a meaning is conveyed quite contrary to the literal meaning of the words : as, And it came to pass at noon that Elijah mocked them, and said, Cry aloud : for he is a god ; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be waked.

390. Metaphor (Greek *metaphora*, change) is a figure by which one object is designated by the name of another object to which it bears some resemblance or analogy : as, the minister was the pillar of the state. It is a simile without the sign of comparison *like* or *as*.

Obs.—The term metaphorical is often extended to figurative language in general.

391. Metonymy (Greek *metōnumia*, a change of name) is a figure which puts the name of one thing for that of another which is connected with it, as (1) the cause for the effect, (2) the effect for the cause, (3) the sign for the thing signified, (4) the container for the thing contained : as, Now swarms the village o'er the joyful mead.

392. Prosopopœia (Greek *prosōpon*, a person, and *poieō*, I make) or Personification (Latin *persona*, a person, and *facio*, I make) is a figure by means of which inanimate objects and qualities are regarded as living persons : as, —

Winter, like a pilgrim old,
Shakes his silver beard with cold.

393. Simile (Latin *similis*, like) is a figure by which we express a comparison founded on resemblance : as, Charity, like the sun, brightens every object on which it shines. It is always known by the sign *like* or *as*.

394. Synecdoche (Greek *sunekdoche*, a taking together) is a figure by which the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole : as, He gets his bread by his labour.

Obs.—Synecdoche is closely allied to metonymy.

EXERCISE 188.

Mention the figures of speech :—

1. Gray hairs should be respected. 2. A fleet of twenty sail left the harbour. 3. In peace thou art the gale of spring ; in war, the mountain storm. 4. They read Milton. 5. What a piece of work is man ! How noble in reason ! How infinite in faculties ! In form and moving how express and admirable ! In action, how like an angel ! In apprehension, how like a god ! 6. They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions. 7. He waged more wars than others had read ; conquered more provinces than others had governed ; and had been trained up from his youth to the art of war, not by the precepts of others, but by his own commands ; not by miscarriages in the field, but by victories ; not by campaigns, but triumphs. 8. It is highly criminal to bind a Roman citizen ; to scourge him is enormous guilt ; to kill him is almost parricide ; but by what name shall I designate the crucifying of him ? 9. The Roman people hate private luxury, but love public grandeur. 10. He bought thirty head of cattle. 11. Cicero should be read by all lovers of eloquence. 12. No fair Penelopes enchant the eye. 13. The kettle boils. 14. Hannibal killed forty thousand Romans at the battle of Cannæ. 15. He drank the frothing bowl.

16. There's a beauty for ever unchangingly bright,
Like the long sunny lapse of a summer day's light.

17. Many a night I saw the Pleiads, rising through the mellow shade,
Glitter like a swarm of fire-flies tangled in a silver braid.

18. The sky is changed !—and such a change ! Oh, night,
And storm and darkness, ye are wondrous strong,
Yet lovely in your strength.

19. Love took up the glass of Time and turned it in his glowing hands ;
Every moment, lightly shaken, ran itself in golden sands.
Love took up the harp of Life, and smote on all the chords with
might ;
Smote the chord of Self, that, trembling, pass'd in music out of
sight.

20. There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to Fortune ;
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows and in miseries.
On such a full sea are we now afloat ;
And we must take the current when it serves,
Or lose our ventures.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 377—394.

1. Name the chief figures of syntax. 2. What is ellipsis ? 3. What is enallage ? 4. What is hyperbaton ? 5. What is pleonasm ? 6. What is zeugma ? 7. Name the chief figures of rhetoric. 8. What is allegory ? 9. What is antithesis ? 10. What is apostrophe ? 11. What is climax ? 12. What is anti-climax ? 13. What is hyperbole ? 14. What is irony ? 15. What is metaphor ? 16. What is metonymy ? 17. What is prosopopœia ? 18. What is a simile ? 19. What is synecdoche ?

395. Specimen Parsing.

A. Who steals my purse, steals trash ; 'tis something, nothing ;
'Twas mine, 'tis his, and has been slave to thousands :

But he that filches from me my good name,
 Robs me of that which not enriches him,
 And makes me poor indeed.

- Who— A relative pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent "he" understood, nominative case to the verb "steals"
- steals— An irregular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "who."
- my— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, possessive case, governed by the noun "purse."
- purse— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb "steals."
- steals— An irregular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "he" understood.
- trash— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb "steals."
- it— A personal pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb "is."
- is— An irregular intransitive verb, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "it."
- something— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case after the verb "is."
- nothing— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case after the verb "is" understood. (*It is nothing.*)
- It— A personal pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb "was."
- was— An irregular intransitive verb, indicative mood, past tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "it."
- mine— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, possessive case, governed by the noun "purse" understood.
- it— A personal pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb "is."
- is— An irregular intransitive verb, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative "it."
- his— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, governed by the noun "purse" understood.
- and— A copulative conjunction, joining the sentences "'tis his" and "it has been slave to thousands."
- has— An auxiliary verb to "been," indicating perfect tense.
- been— A past participle from the intransitive verb "to be," referring to "it" understood.

- has been— An irregular intransitive verb, indicative mood, perfect tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “it” understood.
- slave— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, nominative case after the verb “has been.”
- to— A preposition, showing the relation between “slave” and “thousands.”
- thousands— A common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition “to.”
- But— A disjunctive conjunction, joining the sentences “he steals trash” and “he robs me of that.”
- he— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case to the verb “robs.”
- that— A relative pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent “he,” nominative case to the verb “filches.”
- filches— A regular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “that.”
- from— A preposition, showing the relation between “filches” and “me.”
- me— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, objective case, governed by the preposition “from.”
- my— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, possessive case, governed by the noun “name.”
- good— An adjective of quality, positive degree, qualifying the noun “name.”
- name— A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “filches.”
- Robs— A regular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “he.”
- me— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “robs.”
- of— A preposition, showing the relation between “robs” and “thing” understood.
- that— A distinguishing adjective limiting the noun “thing” understood.
- which— A relative pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent “thing” understood, nominative case to the verb “enriches.”
- not— An adverb of mood (negation), modifying the verb “enriches.”
- enriches— A regular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “which.”
- him— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “enriches.”

- And— A copulative conjunction, joining the sentences “he robs me of that” and “*he robs me of that.*” (He robs me of that which not enriches him, and *he robs me of that which* makes me poor indeed.)
- makes An irregular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with its nominative “which” understood.
- me— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “makes.”
- poor— An adjective of quality, positive degree, qualifying the pronoun “me” or the noun “man” understood. (Makes me *to be a poor man.*)
- indeed— An adverb of degree, modifying the adjective “poor.”

B. I can show the scars of those wounds which I have received by facing the enemies of my country.

- I— A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, nominative case to the verb “can.”
- can— An irregular intransitive verb, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, first person, agreeing with its nominative “I.”
- show— An irregular transitive verb, active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, governed by the verb “can.”
- Or
- | | |
|-----------|---|
| I— | A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, nominative case to the verb “can show.” |
| can— | An auxiliary verb to “show,” indicating potential mood, present tense. |
| show— | An irregular transitive verb, active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, governed by “can.” |
| can show— | An irregular transitive verb, active voice, potential mood, present tense, singular number, first person, agreeing with its nominative “I.” |
- the— A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun “scars.”
- scars— A common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “show.”
- Or
- | | |
|--------|--|
| scars— | A common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive verb “can show.” |
|--------|--|
- of— A preposition, showing the relation between “scars” and “wounds.”
- those— A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun “wounds.”
- wounds— A common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition “of.”
- which— A relative pronoun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent “wounds,” objective case, governed by the transitive verb “have received.”

| | |
|----------------|--|
| I— | A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, nominative case to the verb "have received." |
| have— | An auxiliary verb to "received," indicating perfect tense. |
| received— | A past participle from the transitive verb "to receive," referring to "which." |
| have received— | A regular transitive verb, active voice, indicative mood, perfect tense, singular number, first person, agreeing with its nominative "I." |
| by— | A preposition, showing the relation between "have received" and "facing." |
| facing— | A gerund from the transitive verb "to face," neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition "by." |
| the— | A distinguishing adjective, limiting the noun "enemies." |
| enemies— | A common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, objective case, governed by the transitive gerund "facing." |
| of— | A preposition, showing the relation between "enemies" and "country." |
| my— | A personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, first person, possessive case, governed by the noun "country." |
| country— | A common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition "of." |

[*Parsing*, pp. 87—99.]

EXERCISE 189.

MISCELLANEOUS PARSING EXAMPLES.

(*Selected from Examination Papers.*)

1. But I should ill become this throne, O Peers,
And this imperial sov'reignty, adorn'd
With splendour, armed with power, if aught propos'd
And judg'd of public moment, in the shape
Of difficulty or danger, could deter
Me from attempting. Wherefore do I assum
These royalties, and not refuse to reign,
Refusing to accept so great a share
Of hazard as of honour, due alike
To him who reigns, and so much to him due
Of hazard more, as he above the rest
High honour'd sits?
2. When first thine eyes unveil, give thy soul leave
To do the like ; our bodies but forerun
The spirit's duty ; true hearts spread and heave
Unto their God, as flowers do to the sun.
3. There is none of you so mean and base
That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.
I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips
Straining upon the start.

4. But some of Cicero's friends found means to give him early notice of it, upon which he set forward presently, with his brother and nephew, towards Astura, the nearest villa, which he had upon the sea, with the intent to transport themselves directly out of the reach of their enemies. But Quintus being wholly unprepared for so long a voyage, resolved to turn back with his son to Rome, in confidence of lying concealed there till they could provide money and necessaries for their support abroad.

5. But thou

Revisit'st not these eyes, that roll in vain
To find thy piercing ray, and find no dawn ;
So thick a drop serene hath quench'd their orbs,
Or dim suffusion veil'd. Yet, not the more
Cease I to wander where the Muses haunt
Clear spring, or shady grove, or sunny hill,
Smit with the love of sacred song ; but chief
Thee, Sion, and the flowery brooks beneath,
That wash'd thy hallow'd feet, and warbling flow,
Nightly I visit.

6. Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once more ;

Or close the wall up with our English dead !
In peace, there's nothing so becomes a man
As modest stillness and humility :
But when the blast of war blows in our ears
Then imitate the action of the tiger,
Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,
Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage :
Then lend the eye a terrible aspect ;
Let it pry through the portage of the head
Like the brass cannon ; let the brow o'erwhelm it,
As fearfully as doth a galled rock
O'erhang and jutty his confounded base,
Swill'd with the wild and wasteful Ocean.
Now set the teeth, and stretch the nostril wide ;
Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit
To his full height ! on, on, you noblest English
Whose blood is fet* from fathers of war-proof.

7. Imagination in a poet is a faculty so wild and lawless, that it needs to have some check put upon it, lest it outrun the judgment. The great easiness of blank verse renders the poet too luxuriant ; he is tempted to say many things which might better be omitted, or at least shut up in fewer words. But when the difficulty of artful rhyming is interposed, where the poet confines his sense to his couplet, and must contrive that sense into such words, that the rhyme shall naturally follow them, not that the rhyme ; the fancy then gives leisure to the judgment to come in, which, seeing so heavy a tax imposed, is ready to cut off all unnecessary expenses.

8. There love and freedom we'll in peace enjoy,
No Spaniards will that colony destroy :
We to ourselves will all our wishes grant,
And nothing coveting can nothing want.

4.—PERSONAL PRONOUN.

| | | | | |
|-------------|--|--|--|--|
| Pers. Pron. | <div> <div> { Mas. Fem. Com. Neut. } Gen. </div> <div> Sing. Plu. } Num. </div> <div> 1st 2nd 3rd } Per. </div> </div> | <div> To the verb —. </div> <div> After the verb —. (To be, etc.) </div> <div> In apposition with —. </div> <div> Of address. </div> <div> Absolute. </div> <div> Exclamatory. </div> <div> Governed by the noun —. </div> <div> In apposition with —. </div> <div> Governed by the trans. verb —. </div> <div> Governed by the trans. partpl. —. </div> <div> Governed by the trans. gerund —. </div> <div> Governed by the prep. —. </div> <div> In apposition with —. </div> <div> After the verb —. (To be, etc.) </div> | | |
| | | | | |
| Nom. case | | | | |
| Poss. case | | | | |
| Obj. case | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

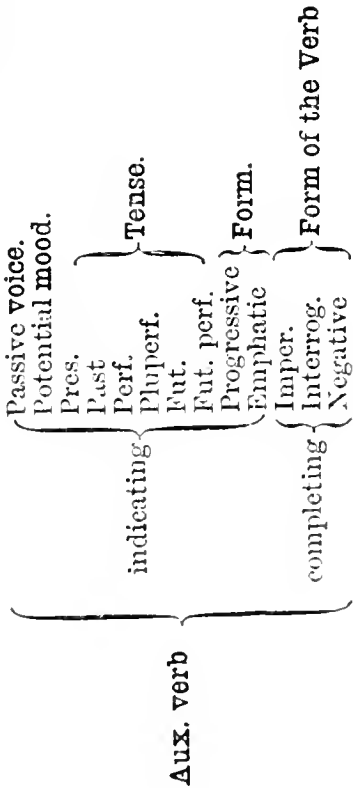
5.—RELATIVE PRONOUN.

| | | | | | |
|------------|---|---|---|---|--|
| Rel. Pron. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mas.} \\ \text{Fem.} \\ \text{Com.} \\ \text{Neut.} \end{array} \right\} \text{Gen.}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing.} \\ \text{Plu.} \end{array} \right\} \text{Num.}$ | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{1st} \\ \text{2nd} \\ \text{3rd} \end{array} \right\} \text{Per.}$ | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Agreeing} \\ \text{with its} \\ \text{antecedent} \end{array} \right\} \text{—}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nom. case.. To the verb —.} \\ \text{Poss. case.. Governed by the noun —.} \\ \text{Obj. case} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Governed by the trans. verb —.} \\ \text{Governed by the trans. partpl. —.} \\ \text{Governed by the trans. gerund —.} \\ \text{Governed by the prep. —.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| | | | | | |

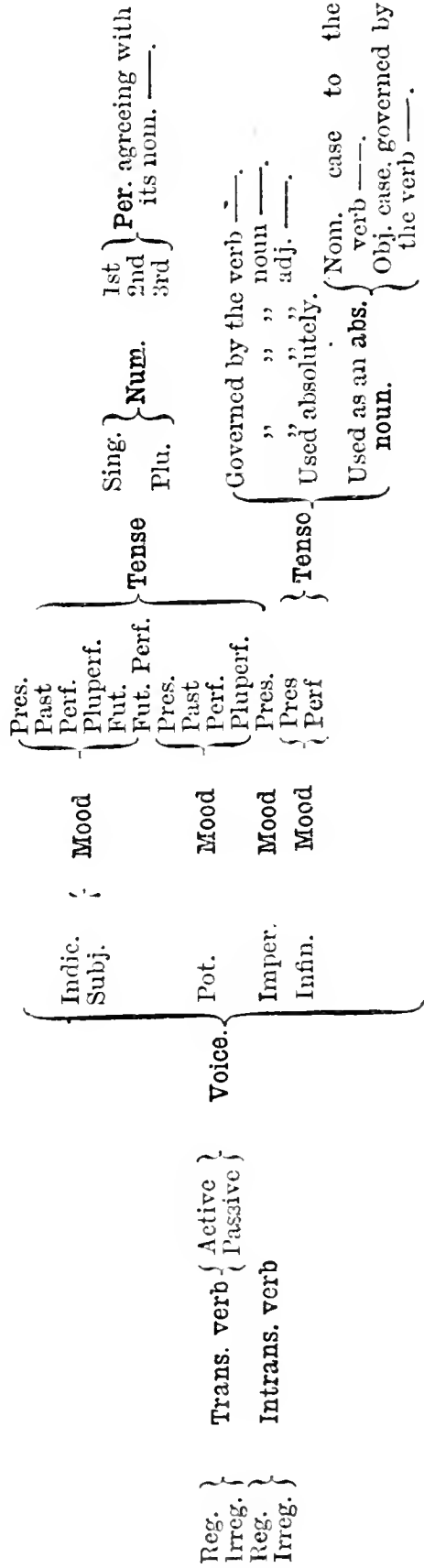
6.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Interrog. Pron. | { <div> Mas. Fem. Com. Neut. </div> Gen. | Sing. } Num. Plu. | 1st } Per. 2nd 3rd | Nom. case... To the verb —. Poss. case... Governed by the noun —. Obj. case { Governed by the trans. verb —. Governed by the prep. —. |
| | | | | |

7.—AUXILIARY VERB.



3.—VERB.



9.—PARTICIPLE.

| | | | | |
|-------------------|--|--------|--|--|
| Pres. } Past } | partpl. from the trans. } intrans. } | Verb — | { Ref. to —. Ref. to — used as an abs. noun Used absolutely. | { Nom. case to the verb —. Obj. case, governed by the verb —. " " " prep. —. |
|-------------------|--|--------|--|--|

10.---ADVERB.

10.

| | | | | | |
|------------------|---|---------------|-------------|------|----|
| Time | { | Modifying the | { | Verb | —. |
| Place | | | | Adj. | —. |
| Manner | | | | Adv. | — |
| Degree | | | | | |
| Measure | | | | | |
| Order and Number | { | { | Affirmation | | |
| Mood | | | Negation | | |
| | | | Probability | | |
| Cause | | | | | |

Adverb of

11.—PREPOSITION.

Prep. showing the relation between $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Noun} \text{ and } \textit{noun.} \\ \textit{Verb} \text{ and } \textit{noun.} \\ \textit{Adj.} \text{ and } \textit{noun.} \end{array} \right.$

“To”—a particle indicating infin. mood.

12.—CONJUNCTION.

12.—CONJUNCTION.

| | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|-------|--------------------------|----------|---|-------|----|
| Cop. | { | Conj. | joining the sentences | — and —. | { | Conj. | —. |
| Disj. | | Conj. | Introducing the sentence | —. | | Adv. | —. |
| Cop. | { | Conj. | Joining the sentences | — and — | { | Adj. | —. |
| Disj. | | Conj. | correlative to the | | | | |

13.—INTERJECTION.

Interjection.

B. Analysis of Sentences.

CHAPTER I.—DEFINITIONS.

397. A Sentence is a thought expressed in words.

Obs.—A sentence, as to its form, may be *Assertive, Interrogative, Imperative, Optative, Exclamatory, or Conditional.*

1. Assertive or Declarative :—

(a) Affirmative : as, I am writing.

(b) Negative : as, I am not writing.

2. Interrogative : as, Whither goest thou ?

3. Imperative : as, Call my men.

4. Optative : as, May you have health and long life !

5. Exclamatory : as, How are the mighty fallen !

6. Conditional : as, If he should grieve.

398. Sentences are of three kinds, *Simple, Complex, and Compound.*

399. A Simple Sentence contains one subject and one finite verb : as, The wind moans.

400. A Complex Sentence not only contains a principal subject and its verb, but has other dependent or subordinate sentences, which have subjects and verbs of their own : as,

I dreamed that, as I wandered by the way,
Bare winter suddenly was changed to spring.

401. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more principal or independent sentences connected by a co-ordinative conjunction : as,

A sensitive plant in a garden grew,
And the young winds fed it with silver dew.

402. To analyse a sentence is to take it to pieces in order to show the parts of which it is made up.

Every sentence consists of two parts :—

1. **Subject**, which expresses the thing about which we are speaking.

2. **Predicate**, which expresses that which is said about the subject.

Subject.
Ravens

Predicate.
croak.

EXERCISE 190.

Attach a predicate to each of the following subjects :—

The heather, the fish, the wood, the bell, the ship, the sea, the spring, the boy, the star, the angel, the snow, the river, the forest, the night, the branches, the lion, the Thames, the sand, the reaper, the lamp, the door, the fields, the blossom, the drum, the man, the eye, the wind, the king, the glass, the leaves, the sun, the lance.

EXERCISE 191.

Put a subject before each of the following predicates :—

Swings, hangs, was heard, shakes, breaks, falls, rose, shone, awakes, came, stood, decays, were laid, grasps, blows, bloom, moves, shouts, blushes, speak, grow, crows, gaze, lives, sailed, open, smites, tremble, ring, struck.

EXERCISE 192.

Divide each sentence into subject and predicate :—

1. She paused. 2. The hall was cleared. 3. He woke. 4. The bark glides. 5. The dog barked. 6. The maid replied. 7. The war-pipes ceased. 8. The boatman rows. 9. The lightning flashes. 10. Time flies. 11. The doe awoke. 12. The blackbird warbled. 13. The fold was guarded. 14. The shout was hushed. 15. Wolves howl. 16. The lark carols. 17. The rose blooms. 18. The father called. 19. The bull was slain. 20. The bows are bent.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 397—402.

1. What is a sentence? 2. What forms may a sentence assume? 3. What are the three *kinds* of sentences? 4. What is a simple sentence? 5. What is a complex sentence? 6. What is a compound sentence? 7. What is meant by analysing a sentence? 8. Of what parts does every sentence consist? 9. What is the subject? 10. What is the predicate?

CHAPTER II.—THE SUBJECT.

1. Simple Subject.

403. Subjects are of two kinds, *Simple* and *Enlarged*.

404. The **Simple Subject** is either a noun, or a word or phrase equivalent to a noun, in the nominative case. Thus, it may be :—

1. A noun : as, *Flowers* fade.
2. A pronoun : as, *They* wither.
3. An adjective used as a noun, or with a noun understood : as, *The beautiful* wins admiration ; *The good* (men) die first.
4. (a) A verb in the infinitive mood : as, *To err* is human.
(b) An infinitive phrase : as, *To walk in the fields* is pleasant.
5. (a) A verbal* noun or gerund : as, *Reading* is useful.
(b) A gerundial† phrase : as, *Reading good books* is useful.
(c) A participle with a noun understood : as, *Around lay the dying and the dead*.
6. A quotation : as, "*To arms !*" resounded through the plain.
7. A sentence : as, *That the crops will be large* is evident.

Obs.—Such a sentence is not simple, however, but complex. When the subject is a sentence, that sentence is a noun sentence (§ 428).

405. The subject usually precedes the predicate. For exceptions, see § 301.

* Or *participial*.

† Or *participial*.

EXERCISE 193.

Mention each subject, and say of what it consists :—

1. The lands are bought. 2. The skipper had taken his little daughter to bear him company. 3. This is a sorry sight. 4. The storm sweeps over the land. 5. The ship glides over the stream. 6. They did their work well. 7. She felt for Pelagia. 8. A charming prophetic trance you've had! 9. I led him to a lonely field. 10. To delay longer is unsafe. 11. How are the mighty fallen! 12. "Dust thou art, to dust returnest," was not spoken of the soul. 13. A boat was on the shore. 14. The dew is on the grass. 15. Each did well in his degree. 16. That bower and its music I never forget. 17. What constitutes a state? 18. Roaming among the hills is pleasant. 19. Many are called. 20. The sleeping were suddenly aroused. 21. To dream of the past is my fate. 22. They steal their way from stair to stair. 23. To yield to remedies is half the cure. 24. Their sleep lasted for several hours. 25. I know him by his bearing.

2. Enlarged Subject.

406. The simple subject is **enlarged** when it has one or more qualifying words or phrases added to it.

407. The simple subject may be enlarged by :—

1. An adjective : as, *The mother weeps* ; *The wintry hedge was black*.
2. A noun in apposition : as, *Cicero, the orator, wrote many books* ; *It is wise to be circumspect*.
3. A noun or pronoun in the possessive case : as, *Timour's front was covered with a line of Indian elephants* ; *His designs were lost*.
4. (a) An infinitive : as, *The time to speak was come*.
(b) An infinitive phrase : as, *A desire to excel in music animated him*.
5. A prepositional phrase : as, *The tidings of misfortune fly with a rapid wing*.
6. (a) A participle : as, *The sailor, diving, recovered the treasure*.
(b) A participial phrase : as, *The dog, seizing the man by the collar, dragged him out* ; *United with the Pope, Frederic continued his march* ; *Having wandered far, he sat down to rest*.
7. A sentence : as,

The breath whose might I have invoked in song
 Descends on me.

N.B.—A sentence of this kind is called an adjective sentence (§ 430).

Obs. 1.—*An* or *a* and *the* are, by some, treated not as enlargements but as parts of the simple subject.

Obs. 2.—When *it* precedes a verb as subject, and a phrase or sentence follows explaining *it*, this phrase or sentence is in apposition : as, *It is wise to be circumspect* = *It, viz., to be circumspect, is wise*.

Obs. 3.—It is sometimes said that an adverb may form an enlargement : as, *The castle here is very old*. This is equivalent to "The castle which is here is very old." [*Parsing*, pp. 142, 143.]

408. The above methods of enlarging the subject may be repeated or combined : as,

Dear, gentle, patient, noble Nell was dead.

Every kind of industry has been developed with wonderful rapidity in the United States.

No trees of any magnitude are to be seen.

Our neighbour's son, having ventured too near the river's edge, fell into the stream.

EXERCISE 194.

Point out the enlargements of the subject, and say of what they consist :—

1. Then was there heard a most celestial sound of dainty music. 2. The gentleness of heaven is on the sea. 3. The rising moon has hid the stars. 4. The Garden of Gethsemane those aged olive trees are shading yet. 5. Benedict Bellefontaine, the wealthiest farmer of Grand-Pré, dwelt on his goodly acres. 6. The Genius, being moved with compassion towards me, bid me quit so uncomfortable a prospect. 7. The rose of England bloomed on Gertrude's cheek. 8. Some men's tempers are quickly weary of any one thing. 9. A fire, breaking out in the cellar, consumed the whole house. 10. Feeling it chilly, I went below. 11. Musing upon many things, I sought the woodlands wide. 12. 'Tis sweet to see the evening star appear.

13. The sable mantle of the silent night
Shut from the world the ever-joyous light.
14. Rich fruitless war from wanton glory waged,
Is only splendid murder.
15. This ruthless tiger in her jungle raging,
Is dreadful to the shepherd and the flock.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 403—408.

1. What is a simple subject? 2. Of what kinds of words may a simple subject consist? 3. What is the usual place of the subject? 4. When does the subject follow the predicate (§ 301)? 5. How is the simple subject enlarged? 6. What kinds of words are used as enlargements? 7. Which adjectives are sometimes treated as parts of the simple subject? 8. Explain the construction of the sentence, "It is wise to be circumspect." 9. Explain the sentence, "The castle *here* is very old."

CHAPTER III.—THE PREDICATE.

409. The Predicate consists of :—

1. A finite verb : as, *Hope remains* ; The king *was slain* ; the messenger *may have been deceived*.

Obs.—A *finite verb* is a verb which has number and person. Infinitives and participles, therefore, cannot of themselves form a predicate.

2. The verb *to be* followed by :—

- (a) An adjective : as, *Food is necessary*.
- (b) A noun in the nominative case : as, *Thou art the man*.
- (c) A pronoun in the nominative case : as, *It is I*.
- (d) A gerundial* phrase : as, *Procrastination is putting off from time to time*.
- (e) An infinitive : as, *To labour is to worship*.
- (f) An adverb : as, *The shepherd is here*.
- (g) A phrase : as, *Goliath was of gigantic stature*.

* Or *participial*.

3. Any copulative verb (§ 296, and *Parsing*, pp. 65, 66) followed by :—

(a) An adjective : as, The brave man *turned pale*.

(b) A noun in the nominative case : as, Elizabeth *became queen*.

(c) A pronoun in the nominative case : as, He *seems himself* again.

(d) A phrase : as, The matter *was deemed of great importance*.

Obs. 1.—The verb *to be* cannot by itself form a predicate unless it means “to exist :” as, God *is*, i.e., God *exists*.

Obs. 2.—The predicate denotes (1) what a person or thing is or becomes, (2) what a person or thing does, or (3) what is done to a person or thing.

Obs. 3.—When the predicate consists of the verb *to be* or other copulative verb followed by some other word or words, the words following the verb are called, by some, the **Complement**. Thus, in the sentence, “Mars is a planet,” *planet* is called the complement. When the predicate consists of the verb *to be* or other copulative verb followed by a noun or pronoun, the noun or pronoun is called the **Complementary Nominative**, and, by some, the *Nominative Completion*.

Obs. 4.—Verbs which of themselves do not form a predicate but require some other words to complete the sense are called *Verbs of Incomplete Predication*. Among these are included certain intransitive verbs, as, *feel, grow, taste, smell*, etc. : as, They *feel warm*.

Obs. 5.—The verb *to be* and other copulative verbs often take a prepositional phrase as part of the complementary nominative, the noun in such cases being understood : as, (1) The field *is of vast extent*=The field is [a field] of vast extent ; (2) The man *remained of unsound mind*=The man remained [a man] of unsound mind.

EXERCISE 195.

Mention the predicate, and say of what it consists :—

1. Her goodly armour seemed a garden green.
2. Blessings are plentiful.
3. The door stood always open.
4. Our life is short.
5. The fairest action of our human life is scorning to revenge an injury.
6. The doors are open.
7. I am no pilot.
8. We are of that sort ourselves.
9. Work is of a religious nature.
10. His design had always been to land in the Highlands.
11. The clouds were gathering.
12. Are you good men and true?
13. The broken sheds look'd sad and strange.
14. The whole army was in a deplorable condition.
15. A man convinced against his will
Is of the same opinion still.

EXERCISE 196.

Divide each sentence into subject and predicate : thus,

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> |
| The pleasant place | is glad. |

1. The mob recoiled.
2. Fierce cries arose.
3. The French appeared to be resting.
4. She was of the blood royal of England.
5. The sky grew black.
6. Death is bitter.
7. Life is sweet.
8. The dykes were frozen.
9. The marriage was to pass quietly.
10. The weather was wild.
11. It is a day of rain.
12. Glory built on selfish principles is shame and guilt.
13. Work is of a brave nature.
14. The moon is down.
15. To-day is ours.

410. The predicate is enlarged by any word or words standing in the objective or adverbial relation : as, The traveller heard *the shout* ; The squire lives *there*. Words in the objective relation are said to **complete** the predicate, and words in the adverbial relation are said to **extend** the predicate.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 409, 410.

1. Of what may the predicate consist? 2. What is a finite verb? 3. When can the verb *to be* form a predicate by itself. 4. What does the predicate denote? 5. What is the complement? 6. What is the complementary nominative or nominative completion? 7. What are verbs of incomplete predication? 8. How is the predicate enlarged? 9. How is the predicate completed? 10. How is the predicate extended?

CHAPTER IV.—THE COMPLETION OF THE PREDICATE.

411. The predicate, when it consists of a transitive verb active voice, is completed by expressing the word or words which are in the objective relation to the verb. Sometimes, however, another term is required to be expressed before the sense of the predicate is completed.

412. Hence there are two kinds of objects, the *Direct Object* and the *Indirect Object*.

1. The Direct Object.

413. The **Direct Object** is either a noun, or a word or phrase equivalent to a noun, in the objective case. Thus, it may be:—

1. A noun : as, The bee forsakes the *flower*.
2. A pronoun : as, A soldier caught *him*.
3. An adjective used as a noun, or with a noun understood : as, The poet loves the *Beautiful* ; We pity the *poor* [people].
4. (a) A verb in the infinitive mood : as, He learns *to write*.
(b) An infinitive phrase : as, The Commons promised *to defend the country*.
5. (a) A verbal* noun or gerund : as, He regretted *speaking*.
(b) A gerundial† phrase : as, We enjoy *roaming along the shore*.
(c) A participle with a noun understood : as, The nurses cheer the *moaning* [persons] ; They soothe the *tortured* [persons].
6. A quotation : as, "*Try not the pass !*" the old man said.
7. A sentence : as, He hath decreed *that thou shouldst cheat the malice of the grave*.

N.B.—A sentence of this kind is called a noun sentence (§ 428).

Obs. 1.—Those verbs (§ 307) which in the active voice take two objects, retain a direct object in the passive voice : as,

Active : My father taught *me music*.

Passive : I was taught *music* by my father.

Obs. 2.—Many intransitive verbs take an object of kindred meaning called the *cognate object* : as, He lived a noble *life*.

EXERCISE 197.

Mention the direct object, and say of what it consists :—

1. Thou still hast feared me.
2. Pity left the field.
3. One cried, "God bless us."
4. Cæsar, I crave to have my cause deferred.
5. "To

* Or *participial*.

† Or *participial*.

arms!" cried Mortimer. 6. I have loved thee, Ocean. 7. Virtue alone outbuilds the pyramids. 8. He betrayed his benefactor. 9. Continual dropping wears away stones. 10. The slightest alarm will betray them. 11. Imitate the prudent. 12. They loved to hear my counsel. 13. He practises giving alms. 14. We admire the brave.

15. Still achieving, still pursuing,
Learn to labour and to wait.

414. The direct object may be enlarged by:—

1. An adjective: as, I bring *fresh* showers.
2. A noun or pronoun in apposition: as, Crowds followed Peter the *Hermit*; I visited the stranger, *him* [whom Geoffrey mentioned].
3. A noun or pronoun in the possessive case: as, He seized the *boatman's* hand; Its weight resisted *her* strength.
4. (a) An infinitive: as, They saw a house *to let*.
(b) An infinitive phrase: as, The queen indicated the course *to be pursued by her ministers*.
5. A prepositional phrase: as, He saw the fire *of the midnight camp*.
6. (a) A participle: as, We remembered him *standing*.
(b) A participial phrase: as, My predecessor had made a seat *overshaded by a hedge of hawthorn and honeysuckle*.
7. A sentence: as, She plucked the flowers *which grew on the river's brink*.

N.B.—A sentence of this kind is called an adjective sentence (§ 430).

Obs.—An infinitive, a phrase, or sentence may be in apposition with *it* as object: as, Thou think'st it much *to tread the ooze of the salt deep*.

415. The above methods of enlarging the object may be repeated or combined: as,

She obeys *her grave parents' wise* commands.
Each scene of many colour'd life he drew.
Freckled nest eggs thou shalt see
Hatching in the hawthorn tree.

EXERCISE 198.

Mention the enlargements of the object, and say of what each consists:—

1. The lark now leaves his watery nest. 2. I had most need of blessing.
3. He doth bear a gold bow. 4. I never saw a fairer mortal. 5. Canst thou find a way to measure out the wind?
6. Open wide the mind's cage door. 7. They could render no help. 8. Richardson kept his shop. 9. What modest thoughts the violet teaches!
10. I see a field to mow. 11. Mark the quick kite. 12. The soldiers dropped the points of their lances. 13. No stealth of time has thinned my flowing hair. 14. He opened the door communicating with the prince's room.
15. The hunter, coming in to help his wearied hounds,
He desperately assails.

2. The Indirect Object.

416. The indirect object may be:—

1. **Factitive**, when it is used together with a direct object after factitive verbs, or those which contain the idea of *making* by thought, word, or deed (§§ 296, 309; *Parsing*, p. 66): as, I'll call thee *Hamlet*.

Obs. 1.—An adjective is frequently used as an indirect object after factitive verbs, but in all such cases a noun (understood) may be supplied : as, Success made him *bold* (*man* understood).

Obs. 2.—Some writers call the factitive object a complement and place it in the predicate : as,

| Subject. | Predicate. | Object. |
|----------|------------------|---------|
| I | will call—Hamlet | thee. |

Obs. 3.—In the passive voice factitive verbs become copulative : consequently the noun or pronoun (or adjective with noun understood) which follows them, being then a complementary nominative and not an indirect object, forms part of the predicate. In the first of the two following examples, "[to be] *bold* [man]" is an indirect object, and in the second, it is a complementary nominative :—

| Subject. | Predicate | Direct Object. | Indirect Object. |
|------------|----------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. Success | made | him | bold [man]. |
| 2. He | was made bold [man]. | — | — |

Obs. 4.—When the conjunction *as* has the force of *to be*, some writers regard it as redundant, while others treat it as an appositive conjunction joining two words. The best way, however, is to supply the ellipsis : as, They counted him *as* a prophet = They counted him as [they counted] a prophet.

Obs. 5.—The preposition *for* is occasionally found with the sense of *to be* : as, They counted him *for* a prophet. Some writers regard *for* as redundant. In analysing, call "for a prophet" the indirect object.

2. Infinitive, especially after transitive verbs denoting authority : as, They induced him *to leave the realm* ; The king required his subjects *to arm*.

Obs. 1.—The infinitive may follow an intransitive verb, as, They appeared *to agree* ; or an adjective preceded by a copulative verb, as, He was anxious *to learn*.

Obs. 2.—Instead of the infinitive we sometimes find a participle with an ellipsis of the infinitive *to be* : as, We saw women [to be] *grinding corn* ; I feel myself [to be] *forced to obey*.

Obs. 3.—The verbs *hear*, *feel*, etc. (§ 360), take the infinitive as an indirect object, the particle *to* being omitted : as, He made her [to] *weep* ; I heard every man [to] *speak*.

Obs. 4.—When the infinitive denotes purpose, it is an extension and not an indirect object : as, Working parties remained *to bury the dead*.

Obs. 5.—The name of **Double or Compound Object** is given by some writers to the direct object and infinitive in such sentences as, We ordered *him to leave*. It resembles the Latin construction of accusative with infinitive.

3. Dative or Personal, when it denotes the person [or thing] to whom something is given or for whom something is done. The preposition *to* or *for* is either expressed or understood : as, Give the cloak *to me* ; Give [to] thy *thoughts* no tongue.

Obs. 1.—The verbs which take a dative or personal object are given in § 307.

Obs. 2.—The dative sometimes denotes advantage : as, Knock *me* at the gate = Knock for me.

4. Genitive, when it consists of a noun or pronoun governed by the preposition *of* after :—

(1) Verb : as, They accused the stranger *of theft*.

(2) Adjective : as, He was guilty *of great cruelty*.

Obs.—The genitive object is found after verbs and adjectives which denote :—

(1) Power : as, The pioneers were capable *of great exertion*.

(2) Impotency : as, Anger is incapable *of self-restraint*.

(3) Accusation : as, He is accused *of murder*.

(4) Innocence : as, He is innocent *of the crime*.

(5) Condemnation : as, The thief was convicted *of felony*.

(6) Acquittal : as, His brother was acquitted *of fraud*.

(7) Memory : as, This reminds us *of our duty*.

(8) Forgetfulness : as, The negro was unmindful *of the kindness*.

5. Object after Preposition-Verbs (§ 369) : as, They laughed *at the news* ; They complained *of him* ; The physician despaired *of his patient's life*.

Obs. 1.—If the verb and preposition are taken together as a transitive verb, the object following will be direct and not indirect.

Obs. 2.—We find this object after expressions equivalent to preposition-verbs. Such expressions consist of the verb *to be* or other copulative verb followed by an adjective : as, He is fond *of learning*. The adjectives which are used in this way are either derived from verbs or denote some mental state.

N.B.—The indirect object is, by some, analysed as the complement.

EXERCISE 199.

Mention every object, and say whether it is direct or indirect :—

1. I heard the owl scream. 2. It will make us mad. 3. He lent me counsel. 4. I lent him eyes. 5. The officers bade me accompany them in their search. 6. It beckons you to go away with it. 7. In eight days I'll make an old man of fourscore a child. 8. I saw her dash with rapid wing. 9. Let my ear your music catch. 10. We find the apostle John living in exile. 11. God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb. 12. I hear the echoes through the mountains throng. 13. Hardy saw three men raising him up. 14. Williams owed his landlord no rent. 15. We gave him a hearty welcome. 16. Let me bear the blame for ever. 17. Verus abandoned the cares of empire to his wiser colleague. 18. Too much sleep makes us dull.

19. I heard the trailing garments of the night
Sweep through her marble halls.

20. I see the lights of the village
Gleam through the rain and the mist.

EXERCISE 200.

Mention each indirect object :—

1. I will speak to thee. 2. Sir, I have heard of your misfortunes. 3. He was forced to temporise. 4. He seemed to sleep. 5. We are fully acquainted with the tenets of Irenæus. 6. He is worthy of the trust. 7. The reader may judge for himself. 8. He directs the younger men to be obedient to the elders. 9. He thought of the past. 10. We read of the fleet's coming to Portsmouth. 11. You were guilty of robbery. 12. He has met with his match. 13. I think of my own native land. 14. I've heard of fearful winds. 15. A present was given to him.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 411—416.

1. When does a predicate require completion? 2. How many kinds of objects are there? 3. What is the direct object? 4. Of what does the direct object consist? 5. Which verbs in the passive voice retain an object? 6. What is the cognate object? 7. How may the direct object be enlarged? 8. Name the different kinds of indirect objects. 9. What is the factitive object? 10. What is a factitive adjective? 11. What do factitive verbs become in the passive voice? 12. Explain the construction of the sentences, "Success made him bold" and "He was made bold." 13. Explain the force of *as* in the sentence, "They counted him *as* a prophet." 14. Give an example in which the preposition *for* has the sense of *to be*. 15. What does the infinitive object follow? 16. What sometimes takes the place of this infinitive? 17. After which verbs is the sign of the infinitive omitted? 18. What is the infinitive of purpose? 19. What is meant by the double or compound object? 20. What is the dative or personal object? 21. After which verbs is the dative object used? 22. What is the genitive object? 23. After what words is the genitive object found? 24. Give examples of objects after preposition-verbs. 25. What expressions are equivalent to preposition-verbs? 26. How do some treat the indirect object in analysing?

CHAPTER V.—THE EXTENSION OF THE PREDICATE.

417. The predicate of a sentence may be **extended** or modified by an adverb, or any word or words equivalent to an adverb. Thus, it may be extended by :—

1. (a) An adverb : as, We live *merrily* ; The kitten is *very* playful.
(b) An adverbial phrase : as, We dug *very steadily indeed*.
2. An adjective : as, Come *quick*.
3. (a) A participle : as, He discourses *sitting*.
(b) A participial phrase : as, He sings *sailing on the water*.
4. (a) An infinitive : as, They rose *to go*.
(b) An infinitive phrase : as, I come *to bury Caesar*.
5. A prepositional phrase : as, We *with singing* cheered the way.
6. A noun in the objective case : as, I bless thee *all the livelong day*.
7. A nominative absolute : as, The dim red morn had died, *her journey done*.
8. A sentence : as, The quarrel is a very pretty quarrel *as it stands*.

N.B.—A sentence of this kind is called an adverbial sentence (§ 432).

Obs. 1.—When the extension is a noun in the objective case, it is governed by some preposition understood : as, I bless thee *all the livelong day*=I bless thee *during all the livelong day*.

Obs. 2.—The nominative absolute is equivalent to a sentence : as, The dim red morn had died, *her journey [being] done*=The dim red morn had died, *when her journey was done*.

Obs. 3.—Many writers do not regard the adverb *not* as an extension, but as part of a negative predicate : as, The dog is not of mountain breed. Here they put as predicate, “is-not-of-mountain-breed.”

418. The above methods of extending the predicate may be repeated or combined : as,

Around the fire, one wintry night,

The farmer's rosy children sat.

Here the old burgher would sit in perfect silence.

In those happy days a well-regulated family always rose with the dawn.

His testy master goeth about to take him.

EXERCISE 201.

Mention the extension, and say of what it consists :—

1. A gleam of hope flashed across her mind. 2. How long halt ye between two opinions? 3. Why should we yet our sail unfurl? 4. Let not the sun go down upon your wrath! 5. In a moment, with the wind cutting keenly at him sideways, he was staggering down to his boat. 6. Still clings she to thy side. 7. The violet still grows in the depths of the valleys. 8. The nymphs in twilight shade of tangled thickets mourn. 9. I wander for my sin. 10. The day having dawned, everybody went down to the beach. 11. Again he winds his bugle horn. 12. Now nought was heard beneath the skies. 13. Next morning, being Friday the third day of August, in the year 1492, Columbus set sail, a little before sunrise, in presence of a vast crowd of spectators. 14. To-day I fetched it from the rock.

15. From the cool cistern of the midnight air
My spirit drank repose.

419. All words and phrases which show **when, where, how, or why** an action is performed, are extensions of the predicate. Extensions are accordingly classified as extensions of (1) *Time*, (2) *Place*, (3) *Manner*, and (4) *Cause*.

420. Extensions of Time denote :—

1. Point or Period of Time (*when?*) : as, The dews shall weep thy fall *to-night*.

2. Duration of Time (*how long?*) : as, There *for two winter days* he was left without food.

3. Repetition of Time (*how often?*) : as, *Often* have I stood to hear it sing.

EXERCISE 202.

Mention each extension of time :—

1. How soon doth man decay ! 2. In such a night did Thisbe fearfully o'ertrip the dew. 3. I waited some time. 4. Waters on a starry night are beautiful and fair. 5. In a few moments he was there. 6. I will not leave you this night. 7. At an early hour next morning the Bishop arrived. 8. For three nights the Colonel had not been in bed. 9. He was shot down at the instant. 10. In his early years he had occasionally seen the great. 11. One morning in the month of May I wandered o'er the hill. 12. I feel his absence in the hours of prayer. 13. I for a moment thought the famous hill removed. 14. Upon the north at mid-night hour a mighty noise was heard.

15. Ten years ago, ten years ago,
Life was to us a fairy scene.

421. Extensions of Place denote :—

1. Rest in a Place (*where?*) : as, *Here* will we sit.

2. Motion to a Place (*whither?*) : as, *Thither* the rainbow comes.

3. Motion from a Place (*whence?*) : as, The royal barges came down the Thames *from Richmond*.

EXERCISE 203.

Mention each extension of place :—

1. Thou sitt'st at home safe by thy quiet fire. 2. The heavenly dew was on his garments spread. 3. Who lies in the second chamber ? 4. You came across the sea. 5. Were you in Asia ? 6. At my feet the city slumbered. 7. Wine comes from France. 8. She came into the drawing-room in a great tremour. 9. He ran to the curate's house in Kensington. 10. Sound the loud timbrel o'er Egypt's dark sea. 11. The ministers of death were despatched to Chaldeon. 12. They dragged the emperor from his sanctuary.

13. And round about him many a pretty page
Attended duly, ready to obey.

14. Under a spreading chestnut tree
The village smithy stands.

422. Extensions of Manner denote :—

1. Manner simply (*how?*) : as, The air bites *shrewdly*.

2. Degree (*how much?*) : as, All the maritime schemes of France were *totally* frustrated.

3. Measure (*of what measure?*) : as, The pillar is *three feet* round.
4. Agent (*by whom?*) : as, Sir John Moore had been carried to the town *by a party of soldiers*.
5. Instrument (*with what?*) : as, Richard I. was wounded *by an arrow*.
6. Means (*through what?*) : as, He grew rich *by industry*.
7. Accompanying circumstances (*along with whom?* or, *along with what?*) : as, He landed *with a naked sword in his hand*.

Obs.—There are also extensions of *order* and *number*, and of *mood*, including *affirmation*, *negation*, and *probability* or *doubt*. These extensions are closely allied to extensions of manner.

EXERCISE 204.

Mention the extensions of manner :—

1. Hours had passed away like minutes.
2. He had seen the matter in a wrong light yesterday.
3. Earth fills her lap with pleasure of her own.
4. This harangue was uttered with rapid gesticulations.
5. In silence I grieve.
6. The Assyrian came down like the wolf on the folds.
7. My heart beats fast.
8. I like him very much.
9. We have been loitering pleasantly.
10. He knows well the evening star.
11. With nimble glide the skaters play.
12. One of the Frenchmen, attempting to make his escape down the rigging, was shot by Mr. Pollard.
13. Sir John Moore was struck on the left breast by a cannon shot.
14. They rowed towards the island with their colours displayed.

423. Extensions of Cause denote :—

1. Reason (*why?*) : as, The man died *of grief*; He suffered *from fatigue*.
2. Purpose (*for what purpose?*) : as, Man's hands were formed *for honest labour*; He came *to settle the dispute*.
3. Motive (*with what motive?*) : as, The knight-errant fought *for glory*.
4. Condition (*on what condition?*) : as, *With care* he will recover.
5. Material (*of what material?*) : as, Linen is made *of flax*.
6. Concession or Adversativeness (*notwithstanding what?* or, *in spite of what?*) : as, *In spite of all his efforts* he failed.
7. Source (*from what source?*) : as, I learnt history *from Hume*.

EXERCISE 205.

Mention the extensions of cause :—

1. We weep to see you haste away so soon.
2. The barbarians shouted with delight.
3. Man was not formed to live alone.
4. The green leaves quiver with the cooling wind.
5. My heart fluttered with impatience.
6. My wings are feathered for a lowly flight.
7. I will do penance for offending thee.
8. I come to bring you news.
9. She loved me for myself alone.
10. The natives came daily into the town to sell their goods.
11. Let us not act from fear.
12. Studies serve for delight.
13. Read not to contradict.
14. Notwithstanding all their efforts, the boat sank.
15. With application, he will become a ripe scholar.

N.B.—In analysis, the minute subdivisions of the extensions may generally be disregarded.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 417—423.

1. How may the predicate be extended?
2. Name the *kinds* of words and phrases which may form the extension.
3. When the extension is a noun in the objective case, how is it governed?
4. To what is the nominative absolute equivalent?
5. How is the adverb *not* treated in analysis?
6. How are extensions classified as to their

meaning? 7. What do extensions of time denote? 8. What do extensions of place denote? 9. What do extensions of manner denote? 10. What do extensions of cause denote?

Rules for Analysis.

424. The following rules will help the student to analyse simple sentences :—

- ✓ 1. Find the finite verb and set it down as the predicate.
2. Find the nominative case to this verb and set it down as the subject.
3. With the subject set down all the words which qualify it.
4. If the predicate be a transitive verb, look for its object.
5. See whether there be any indirect object.
6. With the object set down all words which qualify it.
7. Find the words expressing the time, place, manner, or cause of the action, and set them down as extensions.

8. Do not mistake a participle or infinitive mood for a predicate. A participle is really an adjective, an infinitive mood a noun.

9. Remember that the verb *to be* cannot by itself form a predicate unless it means *to exist*.

10. In analysis, disregard :—

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Interjections | } because they stand, as it were, out |
| (2) Nominatives of address |  | } of the sentence. |

Some writers also propose to throw out as redundant :—

(1) *As*, when it is appositive (§ 416, 1, *Obs.* 4).

(2) *For*, when it means *to be* (§ 416, 1, *Obs.* 5).

(3) *There*, when it is an expletive adverb: as, "There is a land." It may be treated as forming part of the predicate.

(4) *It*, when it takes the place of the real subject or object of a verb (§ 407, *Obs.* 2; § 414, *Obs.*).

Some writers treat *not* as part of the predicate, and do not regard *an*, *a*, and *the* as enlargements.

11. Observe carefully the various uses of the infinitive. It may be :—

(1) Subject : as, *To die* is the lot of man.

(2) Enlargement of subject : as, The moment *to strike* had come ;
"Tis sweet *to linger* here.

(3) Part of predicate : as, To desire other men's goods is *to covet*.

(4) Direct object : as, He loves *to dance*.

(5) Enlargement of object : as, We saw a field *to sell* ; He thought it easy *to win* the prize.

(6) Indirect object : as, We heard the lions *roar*.

(7) Extension of cause (purpose) : as, He came *to dwell* in the town.

12. Observe carefully the various uses of the prepositional phrase. When it is equivalent to an adjective, it may qualify a noun in any part of the sentence ; when it is equivalent to an adverb, it may modify a verb, adjective, or adverb in any part of the sentence. Hence it may be :—

(1) Enlargement of the subject : as, A sound *of music* touched mice cars.

(2) Part of the predicate : as, He is *of a desperate character* (§ 409, *Obs.* 5).

(3) Enlargement of complementary nominative : as, This river is a stream *of great depth*.

(4) Enlargement of direct object : as, The most valiant of the Persian army had almost enclosed the small forces *of the Greeks*.

(5) Indirect object : as, They accused Cæsar *of ambition*.

(6) Enlargement of indirect object : as, They crowned him *king of fairy-land*.

(7) Extension of predicate : as, One cruse of water *on his back* he bore.

13. It is often convenient, in analysis, to treat words joined by a pure conjunction as a simple expression : e.g., *Slowly and sadly* we laid him down. Here *Slowly and sadly* may be called a compound extension of manner. The full construction, however, is : Slowly [we laid him down] and sadly we laid him down.

425. EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. For thee a feast the schoolboy strews at eventide.
2. What favouring dream bids you to happier hours awake ?
3. With her dart the flying deer she wounds.
4. In that hour of deep contrition,
He beheld with clearer vision,
Through all outward show and fashion,
Justice, the avenger, rise.

1. Tabular Analysis.

| | <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> | <i>Object.</i> | <i>Extension.</i> |
|----|-------------------------|-------------------|---|--|
| 1. | The schoolboy | strews | a feast (<i>Dir. Obj.</i>) for thee (<i>Indir. Obj.</i>) | at eventide (<i>Time</i>). [*] |
| 2. | What favouring dream | bids | you (<i>Dir. Obj.</i>) [to] awake to happier hours (<i>Indir. Obj.</i>) | |
| 3. | She | wounds | the flying deer | with her dart (<i>Instrument</i>). |
| 4. | He | beheld | Justice, the avenger, (<i>Dir. Obj.</i>) [to] rise (<i>Indir. Obj.</i>) | in that hour of deep contrition (<i>Time</i>) with clearer vision (<i>Manner</i>) through all outward show and fashion (<i>Place</i>). |

2. Detailed Analysis.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. For thee | Indirect object. |
| a | Enlargement of direct object. |
| feast | Direct object. |
| the | Enlargement of subject. |
| schoolboy | Subject. |
| strews | Predicate. |
| at eventide. | Extension (<i>Time</i>). |

* The student need not necessarily insert the *kind* of extension, but it is often useful to do so.

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 2. What | Enlargement of subject. |
| favouring | Enlargement of subject. |
| dream | Subject. |
| bids | Predicate. |
| you | Direct object. |
| [to] awake | Indirect object. |
| to happier hours? | Enlargement of indirect object. |
| 3. With her dart | Extension (<i>Instrument</i>). |
| the | Enlargement of object. |
| flying | Enlargement of object. |
| deer | Object. |
| she | Subject. |
| wounds. | Predicate. |
| 4. In that hour of deep contrition | Extension (<i>Time</i>). |
| He | Subject. |
| beheld | Predicate. |
| with clearer vision | Extension (<i>Manner</i>). |
| Through all outward show and } fashion } | Extension (<i>Place</i>). |
| Justice | Direct object. |
| the avenger | Enlargement of direct object. |
| [to] rise. | Indirect object. |

EXERCISE 206.

Analyse the following sentences :—

1. How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank. 2. But yesterday, the word of Cæsar might have stood against the world. 3. I love to stand by the foaming surge of ocean. 4. He perhaps reads of a shipwreck on the coast of Bohemia. 5. I waited for the train at Coventry. 6. He sat pondering over the strange chances of the day. 7. Peace! Peace! Orestes-like I breathe this prayer. 8. To put the power of sovereign rule into the good man's hand, is giving peace and happiness to millions. 9. We were immediately conducted into the little chapel on the right hand. 10. Having often received an invitation from my friend Sir Roger de Coverley to pass away a month with him in the country, I last week accompanied him thither. 11. Here on timber leg the lame soldier hops painfully along, begging alms. 12. He went on speaking with great animation of gesture.

13. Far in the northern land,
By the wild Baltic strand,
I, with my childish hand,
Tamed the ger-falcon.

14. Oft did the cliffs reverberate the sound
Of parted fragments tumbling from on high.

15. In such a night
Stood Dido, with a willow in her hand,
Upon the wild sea-banks.

CHAPTER VI.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

426. There are three kinds of subordinate sentences, the *Noun Sentence*, the *Adjective Sentence*, and the *Adverbial Sentence*.

427. The connecting words are either conjunctions or relative pronouns.

1. The Noun Sentence.

428. A Noun Sentence is one that stands in the place of a noun. Thus, it may be :—

1. Subject of a sentence : as, *That you have lost your way* is evident.
2. Part of the predicate, forming the complementary nominative : as, His complaint was *that you deceived him*.
3. Direct object after :—
 - (a) Transitive verb, active voice : as, He said *that he could do it*.
 - (b) Transitive verb, passive voice : as, I was taught *that learning is good*.
4. Indirect object : as, We are desirous *that you should succeed* = We are desirous *of your success*.
5. In apposition with :—
 - (a) A noun : as, The fact *that he was with them* is well known.
 - (b) The pronoun *it* : as, It is strange *that you should think so* = It, viz., *that you should think so*, is strange.

Obs.—A noun sentence may be used in place of the double object after factitive verbs : thus, I believe *that he is innocent* = I believe *him to be innocent*.

429. The Connectives of the Noun Sentence are :—

1. *That* : as, I am convinced *that he will go*.
2. *But that* : as, There is no doubt *but that he is a traitor*.
3. Interrogative pronouns, *who, which, what, whether, whoever, whatever* : as, *What caused the tumult* remains a mystery ; I know *who you are*.
4. Other interrogative words, *when, how, why, where, wherefore, etc.* : as, Some asked me *where the rubies grew*.

Obs. 1.—The conjunction *that* is frequently omitted ; and when the sentence is a direct quotation no connective is required : as, I know *he will stay* = I know (that) he will stay ; He said, "*Thou art the man*."

Obs. 2.—The principal sentence is sometimes put parenthetically, and the conjunction is then omitted : as, *His son*, it may be, *dreads no harm* = it may be [that] *his son dreads no harm*. Some writers would analyse the parenthetical sentence separately, without reference to the other sentence, which they treat as the principal one.

Obs. 3.—A noun sentence may be tested by substituting for it the word *something*.

EXERCISE 207.

Mention the noun sentences :—

1. I am afraid they have awaked.
2. I can see whose power condemns me.
3. The truth is I have loved this lady long.
4. He asked again whether supper would be ready soon.
5. The prince cannot say to the merchant, "I have no need of thee."
6. It is to the genius of one man that all this is mainly owing.
7. It was hoped that about noon the rain would slacken.
8. Volumes have been written on the long-disputed point whether the mental powers of women be equal to those of men.
9. They well knew how they could deliver themselves.
10. Let them say what they will, she will do what she list.
11. The design, it seems, is to avoid the dreadful imputation of pedantry.
12. Little white Lily said, "It is good."
13. I wonder how our princely father 'scaped.
14. I tell thee, lady, this aspect of mine
Hath feared the valiant.
15. What you can make her do
I am content to look on ; what to speak,
I am content to hear.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 426—429.

1. What are the three kinds of subordinate sentences? 2. What classes of words are used as connectives? 3. What is a noun sentence? 4. In which parts of the principal sentence may a noun sentence stand? 5. What are the connectives of the noun sentence? 6. When is no connective found with the noun sentence? 7. How are parenthetical sentences treated? 8. By what test may a noun sentence be known?

2. The Adjective Sentence.

430. An Adjective Sentence is one that stands in the place of an adjective. It may qualify a noun or any of its equivalents in any part of the principal sentence. Thus we find an adjective sentence attached to:—

1. The subject : as, The person *who grieves*, suffers his passion to grow upon him.

2. An enlargement of the subject : as, The daring of the plan *which brought on the combat* is unparalleled.

3. The complementary nominative : as,

True love's the gift *which God has given*
To man alone beneath the heaven.

4. The object :—

(a) Direct : as, The man approached the lamp *which was on the table*.

(b) Indirect : as,

Some men make gain a fountain *whence proceeds*
A stream of liberal and heroic deeds.

5. An enlargement of the object :—

(a) Direct : as, We attacked a body of stout apprentices, *who had taken possession of a part of the ground allotted to us for the scene of our diversions*.

(b) Indirect : as, He gave a purse of gold to the son of the man *who had saved his life*.

6. An extension : as, My grandfather received this relation with that coldness of civility *which was peculiar to him*.

431. The Connectives of the Adjective Sentence are :—

1. The relative pronouns, *who, which, that, whoever, whosoever* : as, He breaks the cord *that held him at the rack*.

2. The words *where, when, why, whereon, whereof, whereby*, etc., which have a pronominal character, being each equivalent to a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition. Thus, *where*=in which ; *when*=at which (time) ; *why*=for which ; *whereon*=on which ; *whereof*=of which ; *whereby*=by which ; e.g., He finds the pasture *where his fellows graze*.

Obs. 1.—The relative, when in the objective case, is sometimes omitted : as, The wreath [which] he wore drew down an instant curse.

Obs. 2.—Sometimes the antecedent of an adjective sentence is not expressed : as, *Who steals my purse, steals trash*.

Obs. 3.—A sentence introduced by a compound relative may be resolved into an antecedent noun or pronoun and an adjective sentence. In such a case the antecedent will belong to the principal sentence and the relative to the adjective sentence : as,

(1) Tell me *what you want*=tell to me the thing *which you want*.

(2) *Whoever told you so* spoke falsely=the person spoke falsely *who told you so*.

(3) *Whatever you do*, do well=do the thing well *which you do*.

Obs. 4.—When *but* is equivalent to *who+not*, *that+not*, or *which+not*, it introduces an adjective sentence: as, There is nothing in the world *but was made by God*=There is nothing in the world *which was not made by God*.

Obs. 5.—When the relative pronoun *who* can be turned into *and he*, the sentence that *who* introduces must be considered co-ordinate and not adjective: as, I wrote to your brother, *who replied that you were away from home*=*and he replied*, etc.

Obs. 6.—*Which*, when it does not relate to a noun or pronoun, but to the import of the clause, often connects co-ordinate sentences: as, He heard that the bank had failed, *which was a heavy blow to him*=*and this failure was*, etc.

Obs. 7.—Some writers call *as* after *such*, *same*, *so*, or *as* (§ 82, *Obs. 1*) a relative: as, *Such as differ from them* are unwise. But this sentence is elliptical, being equivalent to "Such [persons] as [the persons are *who*] *differ from them* are unwise." Here "*as the persons are*" is an adverbial sentence (§ 432), and "*who differ from them*" an adjective sentence.

N.B.—Care must be taken to distinguish between noun sentences in which an indirect question is involved and adjective sentences introduced by the conjunctions *how*, *when*, *where*, *why*, etc. An adjective sentence always qualifies a noun (or its equivalent) expressed or understood, *e.g.*, She wanted to know *where he put the letter* (noun sentence).

She wanted to know the place *where* (=in which) *he put the letter* (adjective sentence).

EXERCISE 208.

Mention the adjective sentences:—

1. There was a peculiar relish in these meals which I remember. 2. They have their temples, whereof the chief stands in their metropolis. 3. The man proceeded to this inn, which was the best in the town. 4. Then the other company which is left shall escape. 5. Divers letters were shot into the city with arrows, wherein Solyman's councils were revealed. 6. Fair is the daisy that beside her grows. 7. We were the first that ever burst into that silent sea. 8. I have been found guilty of robbing orchards I never entered. 9. I strongly resembled my father, who was the darling of the tenants. 10. The only accession which the Roman empire received was the province of Britain. 11. It was the time when lilies blow. 12. Thou hadst a voice whose sound was like the sea. 13. It then draws near the season wherein the spirit held his wont to walk.

14. The iron gate is bolted hard
At which I knock in vain.

15. There's not the smallest orb which thou behold'st,
But in his motion like an angel sings,
Still quiring to the young-eyed cherubim.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 430, 431.

1. What is an adjective sentence? 2. What may an adjective sentence qualify? 3. In which parts of the principal sentence may adjective sentences be introduced? 4. What are the connectives of the adjective sentence? 5. When is the connective of an adjective sentence omitted? 6. How may a sentence introduced by a compound relative be resolved? 7. When does *but* introduce an adjective sentence? 8. When does *who* introduce a co-ordinate sentence? 9. When does *which* introduce a co-ordinate sentence? 10. Explain the construction of the sentence, "*Such as differ from them are unwise.*" 11. Show how to distinguish noun sentences and adjective sentences introduced by the same connectives

3. The Adverbial Sentence.

432. An **Adverbial Sentence** is one that stands in place of an adverb, and therefore modifies some verb, adjective, or adverb: as,

1. He began the work *when I came* (modifies verb *began*).

2. He is taller *than I am* (modifies adjective *taller*).
3. He came oftener *than we expected* (modifies adverb *oftener*).

Usually, however, the adverbial sentence is attached to the predicate.

433. Adverbial sentences express *Time, Place, Manner, or Cause*.

434. Adverbial Sentences of Time denote :—

1. Point or Period of Time (*when?*) : as, *When they heard my desperate cries, they came out of the shed.*
2. Duration of Time (*how long?*) : as, *We frolic while 'tis May.*
3. Repetition of Time (*how often?*) : as, *When my arms I stretch, he stretches his.*

435. The **Connectives of Adverbial Sentences of Time** are the subordinative conjunctions *After, as, before, ere, since, till, until, when, whenever, whereupon, while, whilst*, and the compound conjunctions *As soon as, as often as, as long as, just when, no sooner than, the moment that, after that, before that, till that, until that*.

Obs. 1.—When *but* is equivalent to *than*, it introduces an adverbial sentence of time : as, *He had no sooner departed but the rebellion broke out.*

Obs. 2.—When *as* is equivalent to *whilst*, it introduces an adverbial sentence of time : as,

*And as I mounted up the hill
The music in my heart I bore.*

Obs. 3.—An adverbial sentence of time is often abbreviated : as, *He fell whilst walking on the terrace*=*He fell whilst [he was] walking on the terrace.*

EXERCISE 209.

Mention the adverbial sentences of time :—

1. When Greeks joined Greeks, then was the tug of war.
2. When the mourner had got thus far in his story, he stopped to pay Nature her tribute.
3. As they lowered the body into the earth, the creaking of the cords seemed to agonize her.
4. A comrade stood beside him while his life-blood ebbed away.
5. As they looked on him with astonishment the eyes opened.
6. When beggars die there are no comets seen.
7. He whistled as he went for want of thought.
8. O, make a league with me till I have pleased my discontented peers!
9. I am never merry when I hear sweet music.
10. When the ice broke up, Hudson prepared for the homeward voyage.
11. Life has passed with me but roughly since I heard thee last.
12. The Russian gunners, after the storm of cavalry had passed, returned to their guns.
13. As we went up the body of the church, the knight pointed at the trophies upon one of the new monuments.
14. She was a phantom of delight
When first she gleamed upon my sight.
15. When the breeze of a joyful dawn blew free
In the silken sail of infancy,
The tide of time flowed back with me.

436. Adverbial Sentences of Place denote :—

1. Rest in a Place (*where?*) : as, *Where light is, chameleons change.*
2. Motion to a Place (*whither?*) : as, *Whither thou goest, I will go.*
3. Motion from a Place (*whence?*) : as, *He will return whence he came.*

437. The Connectives of Adverbial Sentences of Place are the subordinative conjunctions *Whence, whencesoever, where, wheresoever, wherever, whither, whithersoever*.

EXERCISE 210.

Mention the adverbial sentences of place :—

1. Where ignorance is bliss, 'tis folly to be wise.
2. 'Tis virtue makes the bliss where'er we dwell.
3. Where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.
4. They dug his grave e'en where he lay.
5. The turf looks green where the breakers roll'd.
6. Where the bee sucks, there suck I.
7. Wheresoever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together.
8. Go where thou wilt.
9. Convey me where thou art commanded.
10. I always linger where the violets grow.
11. Bear me where you will.

12. There let it stand,

Where it best fits to be, in Henry's hand.

13. Wheresoe'er thou art in this world's globe,

I'll have an Iris,* that shall find thee out.

14. How would you bear to draw your latest breath

Where all that's wretched paves the way for death?

15. Let the gull'd fool the toils of war pursue

Where bleed the many to enrich the few.

438. Adverbial Sentences of Manner denote :—

1. Likeness : as, *As the snow gathers together*, so are our habits formed.

2. Comparison :—

(a) Equality : as, He was as gentle *as a dove* [*is gentle*].

(b) Inequality : as, Example is better *than precept* [*is good*].

(c) Proportion : as, *The more my knowledge increased*, the more I perceived the injustice of his behaviour.

3. Effect or consequence : as, The torrent between us rolled so violently *that to pass was impossible*.

4. Certainty or Uncertainty : as, *As surely as yonder sun is shining*, I speak the truth.

439. The Connectives of Adverbial Sentences of Manner are the subordinative conjunctions *As, than, that*, and the compounds *As . . as, so . . as, according as, as if, as though, so that*.

Obs. 1.—The predicate of the adverbial sentence of manner is usually omitted : as, *Virtue dreads it as her grave* = *Virtue dreads it as [she dreads] her grave*.

Obs. 2.—Proportionate equality is expressed by the use of the adverb *the* with the comparative : as, *The poorer the guest*, the better pleased he ever is with being treated.

EXERCISE 211.

Mention the adverbial sentences of manner :—

1. Thy lips have shed instruction as the dew.
2. I will use my friend as Moses did his rod.
3. He muzzles a sentence as curs muzzle a bone.
4. The ecstasy of fear was such that, instead of paralysing his tongue, as on ordinary occasions, it even rendered him eloquent.
5. To obey is better than sacrifice.
6. This frank declaration pleased me so much that I pulled out my purse.
7. The more I honour thee the less I love.
8. Unstable as water, thou shalt not excel.
9. It was sad as sad could be.
10. Men deal with life as children with their play.
11. The desert shall blossom as

* The goddess of the rainbow, Juno's messenger.

the rose. 12. Make me thy lyre even as the forest is. 13. Men turned pale as if they had heard of the loss of a dear friend.

14. Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains
Than where castles mounted stand.

15. There are more things in heaven and earth, Horatio
Than are dreamt of in your philosophy.

440. Adverbial Sentences of Cause denote :-

1. Reason : as, I went, *because I was invited*.

2. Condition : as, *If he may have his jest*, he never cares at whose expense.

3. Concession : as, *Though the sea threatens*, it is merciful.

4. Purpose or Motive : as, I'll accost him *that I may learn the news*.

441. The **Connectives of Adverbial Sentences of Cause** are the subordinative conjunctions *Albeit, although, as, because, except, for, however, if, lest, nevertheless, notwithstanding, provided, save, seeing, since, so, that, though, unless, whereas*, and the compounds *Forasmuch as, inasmuch as, in case, in order that, provided that, seeing that, so that*.

Obs. 1.—The conjunction is sometimes omitted : as, *Were you my brother*, I could not do it for you=[If] you were my brother, etc.

Obs. 2.—When the conjunction is omitted, the conditional sentence is often put interrogatively : as, *Is any man cruel*, he is also a coward=[if] any man is cruel he is also a coward.

EXERCISE 212.

Mention the adverbial sentences of cause :—

1. If good fortune came, it came in such a manner that it was almost certain to be abused. 2. If I forget thee, O Jerusalem, let my right hand forget her cunning. 3. Judge not, that ye be not judged. 4. I had my own plan, though I could not broach it. 5. I assented, though I thought it doubtful that my father would give us leave. 6. Although there is little or no rain in Egypt, there are continuous and heavy rains at the sources of the Nile. 7. He was afraid to yield now, lest he should be thought a coward. 8. Wheat is the most valuable of all grains, for of it we make bread. 9. He started up with more of fear than if an armed foe were near. 10. It is a very absurd, because a very incorrect, expression. 11. Shall his law be set at nought that I may live at ease? 12. Though this proposal did not at all suit my inclination, I was afraid of discovering my aversion to it, lest I should disoblige the only friend I had in the world.

13. If parts allure thee, think how Bacon shined,
The wisest, brightest, meanest of mankind.

14. If thou wouldst view fair Melrose aright,
Go visit it by the pale moonlight.

15. Sweet Iser ! were thy sunny realm
And flowery gardens mine,
Thy waters would I shade with elm,
To prop the tender vine.

Connectives of Subordinate Sentences.

442. The following is a complete table of connectives of subordinate sentences :

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|--|---|
| I. Noun Sentence | | { That, but that. | |
| | | { Interrogative pronouns : who, which, etc. | { in in- direct ques- tions. |
| | | { Other interrogative words : when, how, etc. | |
| II. Adjective Sentence | | { Relative pronouns. | |
| | | { When, where, why, etc., being words equivalent to a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition. | |
| | { Time. | { After, as, before, ere, since, till, until, when, whenever, whereupon, while, whilst ; but (= than). | |
| | | { As soon as, as often as, as long as, just when, no sooner than, the moment that, after that, before that, till that, until that. | |
| III. Adverbial Sentence | { Place. | { Whence, whencesoever, where, wheresoever, wherever, whither, whithersoever. | |
| | { Manner. | { As, than, that, the (with comparative). | |
| | | { As—as, so—as, according as, as if, as though, so that. | |
| | | { Cause | { Albeit, although, as, because, except, for, however, if, lest, nevertheless, notwithstanding, provided, save, seeing, since, so, that, though, unless, whereas. Forasmuch as, inasmuch as, in case, in order that, provided that, seeing that, so that. |

Obs. 1.—Compounds like *as if*, *as when*, really introduce two subordinate sentences :
as, 'Tis e'en *as if* an angel shook his wings = 'Tis e'en *as* [it would be] *if* an angel shook
his wings.

Obs. 2.—The word *that* introduces :—

(a) A noun sentence : *as*, I told him *that I had received a small supply of money*.

(b) An adjective sentence : *as*, Art thou the man *that slew him*?

(c) An adverbial sentence of manner (consequence) : *as*, It is seldom danger is
so pressing *that there is not time enough for reason to do its work*.

(d) An adverbial sentence of cause (purpose) : *as*, He put down his weapon
that he might rest awhile.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 432—442.

1. What is an adverbial sentence? 2. What do adverbial sentences modify? 3.
What do adverbial sentences express? 4. What do adverbial sentences of time
denote? 5. What are the connectives of adverbial sentences of time? 6. When does
but introduce an adverbial sentence of time? 7. When does *as* introduce an adverbial
sentence of time? 8. What do adverbial sentences of place denote? 9. What are the
connectives of adverbial sentences of place? 10. What do adverbial sentences of
manner denote? 11. What are the connectives of adverbial sentences of manner?
12. How is proportionate equality expressed? 13. What do adverbial sentences of
cause denote? 14. What are the connectives of adverbial sentences of cause? 15.
What is the full construction of the sentence "'Tis e'en as if an angel shook his
wings"? 16. What kinds of sentences are introduced by *that*?

443. EXAMPLE OF ANALYSIS OF COMPLEX SENTENCES.

Sudden I heard a voice that cried, "Come here
That I may look on thee."

| | <i>Sentence.</i> | <i>Kind of Sentence.</i> | <i>Connective.</i> | <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> | <i>Object.</i> | <i>Extension.</i> |
|-----------|-----------------------------|--|------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>a.</i> | Sudden I heard a voice | Principal sentence to <i>b.</i> | | I | heard | a voice | sudden (<i>Manner</i>) |
| <i>b.</i> | that cried | Adjective sentence to "voice" in <i>a.</i> | <i>Relative pronoun.</i> | that | cried | | |
| <i>c.</i> | Come here | Noun sentence, object to <i>b.</i> | | [thou] | Come | | here (<i>Place</i>) |
| <i>d.</i> | That I may look on thee. | Adverbial sentence of cause (purpose) to <i>c.</i> | That | I | may look | on thee (<i>Indir. Obj.</i>) | |

EXERCISE 213.

Analyse :—

1. The moving light which he beheld had proved that it was the residence of man. 2. Then the road passes straight on through a waste moor, till at length the towers of a distant city appear before the traveller. 3. Our conductor pointed to that monument where there is the figure of one of our English kings without a head. 4. As the evening darkened, Columbus took his station on the top of the castle or cabin in the high poop of his vessel. 5. The bison is so sure-footed that he can pass over ground where no horse could follow. 6. Plants must wait till their food comes to them. 7. Whoever lost his footing in that fierce tumult, never rose again. 8. Every milder method is to be tried before a nation makes an appeal to arms.

9. She struck where the white and fleecy waves
Look'd soft as carded wool.
10. While thus I sing, I am a king,
Although a poor blind boy.
11. Yet some there be, that by due steps aspire
To lay their just hands on that golden key
That opes the palace of eternity.
12. — When thou wouldst solace gather,
When our child's first accents flow,
Wilt thou teach her to say "Father!"
Though his care she must forego?
13. Such were the sounds that o'er the crested pride
Of the first Edward scattered wild dismay,
As down the steep of Snowdon's shaggy side
He wound with toilsome march his long array.
- ✓ 14. O nightingale, that on yon bloomy spray
Warblest at eve, when all the woods are still,
Thou with fresh hope the lover's heart dost fill,
While the jolly hours lead on propitious May.
15. I heard a thousand blended notes,
While in a grove I sate reclined,
In that sweet mood when pleasant thoughts
Bring sad thoughts to the mind.

CHAPTER VII.—THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

444. Co-ordinate sentences are divided into four classes, *Copulative, Disjunctive, Adversative, and Illative or Causative.*

1. Copulative.

445. **Copulative** co-ordinate sentences are those which are simply coupled by a conjunction implying addition: as, The Indians are completely deceived, *and* not a shot is fired.

446. The **Connectives of Copulative Co-ordinate Sentences** are *And, also, besides, likewise, moreover, but also, but likewise, as well as, both—and, not merely—but, not only—but, further, furthermore.*

Obs. 1.—When *nor* (=and not) is not preceded by *neither*, it is copulative : as, Eye hath not seen, *nor* ear heard=*and* ear hath *not* heard. *Neither* is used in the same way when not followed by *nor* : as, They toil not, *neither* do they spin=*and* they do *not* spin.

Obs. 2.—The relative, when equivalent to a co-ordinative conjunction and a personal pronoun, joins copulative co-ordinate sentences : as, I met your brother *who* (=and he) told me that you were here.

Obs. 3.—The pronominal words *when*, *where*, etc., when equivalent to a co-ordinative conjunction and an adverb, join copulative co-ordinate sentences : as, I walked with him to the bridge *where* (=and there) we parted.

Obs. 4.—Copulative co-ordinate sentences are often put together without any connectives : as, The knot had been securely bound ; the victim sank without effort.

EXERCISE 214.

Mention the copulative co-ordinate sentences :—

1. The fair breeze blew, the white foam flew, the furrow followed free.
2. They drew off and encamped.
3. Receive me, and shield my vexed spirit, ye groves.
4. Her little bird—a poor, slight thing the pressure of a finger would have crushed—was stirring nimbly in its cage ; and the strong heart of its child-mistress was mute and motionless for ever.
5. They heard and were abashed.
6. Another ranger dismounted and came to his assistance.
7. He is old ; moreover, he was confided to my care.
8. He is not only bold but he is likewise unscrupulous.
9. He cannot deny it nor will he attempt to do so.
10. They were exposed to an oblique fire from the batteries on the hills on both sides, as well as to a direct fire of musketry.
11. They have been at a feast of languages, and stolen the scraps.
12. His directions were obeyed, and they pulled ashore directly.
13. Your praise the birds shall chant in every grove,
And winds shall waft it to the powers above.
14. The whistling ploughman stalks afield ;
Down the rough slope the ponderous waggon rings ;
Through rustling corn the hare astonished springs ;
Slow tolls the village clock the drowsy hour ;
The partridge bursts away on whirring wings ;
Deep mourns the turtle in sequester'd bower ;
And shrill lark carols clear from her aërial tower.

2. Disjunctive.

447. Disjunctive or Alternative co-ordinate sentences are those which are disconnected in meaning by a conjunction implying exclusion : as, He will *neither* come *nor* send an apology.

Obs.—These are called *alternative* because a choice is offered or denied between two statements.

448. The Connectives of Disjunctive Co-ordinate Sentences are : in affirmative statements, *Either*, *or* ; in negative, *Neither*, *nor*.

Obs. 1.—When *else* and *otherwise* mean *or*, they join disjunctive co-ordinate sentences : as, You must pay my wages, *else* I will not work (=or I will not work) ; Do your duty, *otherwise* you will not be honoured (=or you will not be honoured).

Obs. 2.—The phrase *in other words* is sometimes a connective of disjunctive co-ordinate sentences. It may stand alone or be preceded by *or* : as, He is a liar : *in other words*, he is a man whom no one can trust ; He has gained the throne, *or*, *in other words*, he has purchased for himself a bed of thorns.

Obs. 3.—When *nor*=and not, it joins copulative sentences. The same is the case with *neither* (§ 445, *Obs. 1*).

EXERCISE 215.

Mention the disjunctive co-ordinate sentences :—

1. I did not feel afraid, or sorry, or glad. 2. What's Hecuba to him, or he to Hecuba? 3. Neither a borrower, nor a lender be. 4. He received an appointment or the offer of a commission. 5. Although we cannot discommend, we cannot absolutely approve either willingness to die, or forwardness to die. 6. We had neither a relation nor a friend in the world. 7. Singing he was or flirting all the day. 8. It is either sixteen or seventeen years ago. 9. Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring. 10. Walk quickly, else you will not overtake him. 11. Awake, arise, or be for ever fallen. 12. Let us do or die. 13. Either he is drowned or some passing ship has saved him.

14. Was I deceived, or did a sable cloud
Turn forth her sliver lining on the night?

15. He either fears his fate too much
Or his deserts are small,
Who dares not put it to the touch
To gain or lose it all.

3. Adversative.

449. Adversative or Antithetical co-ordinate sentences are those in which the second stands opposed to, or is contrasted with, the first : as, Pope had perhaps the judgment of Dryden, *but* Dryden certainly wanted the diligence of Pope.

450. The Connectives of Adversative Co-ordinate Sentences are *But* (the principal one), *however*, *nevertheless*, *notwithstanding*, *only*, *still*, *yet*, and the correlatives *Indeed—but*, *now—then*, *at one time—at another time*, *on the one hand—on the other*

Obs.—The connective is sometimes understood : as, Men's evil manners live in brass ; their virtues we write in water (= *but* their virtues we write in water).

EXERCISE 216.

Mention the adversative co-ordinate sentences :—

1. Our wants are many and grievous, *but* quite of another kind. 2. I called him, *but* he gave me no answer. 3. In no wise speak against the truth, *but* be abashed of the error of thy ignorance. 4. Take each man's censure, *but* reserve thy judgment. 5. I will speak daggers to her, *but* use none. 6. His comrade bent to lift him, *but* the spark of life had fled. 7. Hatred stirreth up strifes, *but* love covereth all sins. 8. Some natural tears they dropped, *but* wiped them soon.

9. Men may come and men may go,
But I go on for ever.

10. My hasting days fly on with full career,
But my late spring no bud nor blossom showeth.

11. Not a sound rose from the city at that early morning hour,
But I heard a heart of iron beating in the ancient tower.

12. Fitz-James looked round—yet scarce believed
The witness that his sight received.

13. And her little hand lay lightly, confidingly in mine,
But we'll meet no more at Bingen—loved Bingen on the Rhine.
14. To them his heart, his love, his griefs were given,
But all his serious thoughts had rest in heaven.
15. My thoughts still cling to the mouldering Past,
But the hopes of youth fall thick in the blast,
And the days are dark and dreary.

4. Illative.

451. Illative co-ordinate sentences are those which are joined by conjunctions implying reason and inference. They are of two kinds:—

1. **Illative**, when the first denotes the reason, and the second the inference, logical deduction, or consequence: as, The smoke falls, *therefore* it will rain.

2. **Causative**, when the first denotes the inference, logical deduction, or consequence: as, It will rain, *for* the smoke falls.

Obs. 1.—Causative sentences must be distinguished from adverbial sentences of cause. Thus, in the sentence, "I returned home *because* I was tired," *because* introduces the reason for the previously mentioned action. *Why* did I return home? *Because* I was tired (adverbial sentence of cause). In the sentence "It will rain, *for* the smoke falls," *for* introduces the reason for the inference that it will rain. How do I know that it will rain? By the falling of the smoke, which is not the cause of the rain, but merely the ground of the inference. Hence "It will rain" and "the smoke falls" are illative or causative co-ordinate sentences.

Obs. 2.—Causative sentences transposed become illative and *vice versa*: as, It will rain, *for* the smoke falls (Causative); The smoke falls, *therefore* it will rain (Illative).

452. The Connectives of Illative Co-ordinate Sentences are: (a) **Illative**, *Accordingly, consequently, hence, whence, thence, then, so, and so, therefore, and therefore, wherefore, thereupon, thus, and for, on this account, for this reason*; (b) **Causative**, *For*.

EXERCISE 217.

Mention the illative and causative co-ordinate sentences:—

1. The smoke by no means escaped from its legitimate aperture, for you might observe little clouds of it bursting out of the doors and windows.
2. He blushes; therefore he is guilty.
3. Your rhetoric is too moving, for it makes your auditory weep.
4. Gawtreys seemed wounded, for he staggered forward.
5. Take courage, for this grief availeth nothing.
6. She is a woman, and therefore to be wooed; she is a woman, and therefore to be won.
7. The squire is old, for his hair is silver-grey.
8. It will be fine weather to-day, for the sky is red and lowering.
9. The land is good, for the crop is heavy.
10. The crop is heavy, therefore the land is good.
11. Boast not thyself of to-morrow, for thou knowest not what a day may bring forth.
12. The angles are equal, consequently the sides are equal.
13. His friends must have deserted him; for he was alone in the world.
14. He must have done his duty, for he is a good man.
15. Take the instant way,
For honour travels in a strait so narrow,
Where one but goes abreast.

453. Compound sentences are contracted when the co-ordinate sentences have :—

1. The same subject : as, The moon rose and threw her silvery light upon the sea =

The moon rose
[and] the moon threw her silvery light upon the sea.

2. The same predicate : as, The winds and the waves were still =

The winds were still
[and] the waves were still.

3. The same complementary nominative : as, He neither is nor can be a poet =

[neither] He is a poet
[nor] he can be a poet.

4. The same object :—

(a) Direct : as, John loves and William dislikes the sea =

John loves the sea
[and] William dislikes the sea.

(b) Indirect : as, John lends and William gives him a knife =

John lends (to) him a knife
[and] William gives (to) him a knife.

5. The same extension of the predicate : as, During the daytime owls sleep and men work =

Owls sleep during the daytime
[and] men work during the daytime.

Obs.—Several contractions may occur in the same sentence : as, Such birds as were to search and gather their food, whether herbs or insects, in the bottom of pools and deep waters, have long necks for that purpose.

Connectives of Co-ordinate Sentences.

454. The following is a complete table of the connectives of co-ordinate sentences :—

| | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| I. Copulative. | { | And, also, besides, further, furthermore, likewise, moreover, neither (=and not), nor (=and not). |
| II. Disjunctive. | | But also, but likewise, as well—as, both—and, not merely—but, not only—but. |
| III. Adversative | | Either, or; neither, nor. Else (=or), otherwise (=or), in other words. But, however, nevertheless, notwithstanding, only, still, yet. |
| IV. Illative. | { | Indeed—but, now—then, at one time—at another time, on the one hand—on the other. |
| | | Accordingly, consequently, hence, so, then, thence, therefore, thereupon, thus, whence, wherefore. And so, and therefore, and for, on this account, for this reason. |
| | { | <i>Illative</i> <i>Causative.</i> |
| | | For. |

QUESTIONS ON §§ 444—454.

1. Name the four classes of co-ordinate sentences. 2. What are copulative co-ordinate sentences? 3. Name the connectives of copulative co-ordinate sentences. 4. When is *nor* copulative? 5. When is *neither* copulative? 6. When does the relative join copulative co-ordinate sentences? 7. When do the pronominal words *when*, *where*, etc.,

join copulative co-ordinate sentences? 8. Give an example of copulative co-ordinate sentences with the connective omitted. 9. What are disjunctive co-ordinate sentences? 10. Why are they also called alternative? 11. Name the connectives of disjunctive co-ordinate sentences? 12. When are *else* and *otherwise* connectives of disjunctive co-ordinate sentences? 13. What are adversative co-ordinate sentences? 14. Name the connectives of adversative co-ordinate sentences. 15. Give an example of adversative co-ordinate sentences with the connective omitted. 16. What are illative co-ordinate sentences? 17. When are they called causative? 18. Show how to distinguish between causative co-ordinate sentences and adverbial sentences of cause. 19. Name the connectives of illative and causative co-ordinate sentences. 20. In what ways may compound sentences be contracted?

455. EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

1. Such a one on English ground,
And in the broad highway I met ;
Along the broad highway he came,
His cheeks with tears were wet,
2. When I consider how my light is spent—
Ere half my days, in this dark world and wide,
And that one talent which is death to hide
Lodged with me useless, though my soul more bent
To serve therewith my Maker, and present
My true account, lest he, returning, chide :
“Doth God exact day-labour, light denied?”
I fondly ask : but Patience, to prevent
That murmur, soon replies, “God doth not need
Either man’s work, or his own gifts ; who best
Bear his mild yoke, they serve him best : his state
Is kingly : thousands at his bidding speed,
And post o’er land and ocean without rest ;
They also serve who only stand and wait ”

4

| | Sentence. | Kind of Sentence. | Connective. | Subject. | Predicate. | Object. | Extension. |
|----|--|--|-------------|---|--------------|--------------|--|
| 1. | <i>a.</i> Such a one on English ground [I met] | Principal sentence. | | [I] | [met] | such a one | on English ground (<i>Place</i>) |
| | <i>b.</i> And [such a one] in the broad highway I met | Principal sentence, co-ord. (copulative) to <i>a</i> , <i>c</i> , <i>d</i> . | and | I | met | [such a one] | in the broad highway (<i>Place</i>) |
| | <i>c.</i> Along the broad high- way he came | Principal sentence, co-ord. (copulative) to <i>a</i> , <i>b</i> , <i>d</i> . | | he | came | | along the broad highway (<i>Place</i>) |
| | <i>d.</i> His cheeks with tears were wet | Principal sentence, co-ord. (copulative) to <i>a</i> , <i>b</i> , <i>c</i> . | | His cheeks | were wet | | with tears (<i>Cause</i>) |
| 2. | <i>a.</i> When I consider | Adv. sentence of time to <i>i</i> . | When | I | consider | | |
| | <i>b.</i> how my light is spent in this dark world and wide | Noun sentence, obj. to <i>a</i> . | how | my light | is spent | | in this dark world and wide (<i>Place</i>) |
| | <i>c.</i> Ere half my days [are spent] | Adv. sentence of time to <i>b</i> . | Ere | half my days | [are spent] | | |
| | <i>d.</i> And that one talent lodged with me [is] useless | Noun sentence obj. to <i>a</i> , co-ord. to <i>b</i> . | And | that one ta- lent, lodged with me | [is] useless | | |

| | <i>Sentence.</i> | <i>Kind of Sentence.</i> | <i>Connective.</i> | <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> | <i>Object.</i> | <i>Extension.</i> |
|-----------|---|--|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--|--|
| <i>e.</i> | which is death to hide | Adjective sentence to "talent" in <i>d.</i> | <i>Rel. Pron.</i> | to hide which | is death | | |
| <i>f.</i> | though my soul [is] more bent to serve therewith my Maker | Adv. sentence of cause (concession) to <i>d.</i> | though | my soul | is bent | to serve my Maker there- with (<i>Indir. obj.</i>) | more (<i>Degree</i>) |
| <i>g.</i> | and [my soul is more bent] to present my true account | Adv. sentence of cause (concession) to <i>d</i> , co-ord. to <i>j.</i> | and | [my soul] | [is bent] | to present my true account (<i>Indir. obj.</i>) | [more] (<i>Degree</i>) |
| <i>h.</i> | lest he, returning, chide | Adv. sentence of cause (purpose) to <i>g.</i> | lest | he, returning, | chide | | |
| <i>i.</i> | Doth God exact day- labour, light [being] denied | Noun sentence, <i>obj.</i> to <i>j.</i> | | God | doth exact | day-labour | light [being] denied (<i>Condition</i>) |
| <i>j.</i> | I fondly ask | Principal sentence. | | I | ask | | fondly (<i>Manner</i>) |
| <i>k.</i> | but Patience, to prevent that murmur, soon replies | Principal sen- tence, co-ord. (adversative) to <i>j.</i> | but | Patience | replies | | soon (<i>Time</i>) to prevent that murmur (<i>Cause</i>) |
| <i>l.</i> | God doth not need either man's work | Noun sentence, <i>obj.</i> to <i>k.</i> | either* | God | doth need | man's work | not (<i>Negation</i>) |

* *Either* here is not really a connective, since it does not connect the noun sentence to *k*: it is used to introduce the noun sentence, and is followed by its correlative *or*.

| | <i>Sentence.</i> | <i>Kind of Sentence.</i> | <i>Connective.</i> | <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> | <i>Object.</i> | <i>Extension.</i> |
|-----------|---|--|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|--|
| <i>m.</i> | or [God doth not need] his own gifts | Noun sentence, obj. to <i>k</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> . | or | [God] | [doth need] | his own gifts | [not] (<i>Negation</i>) |
| <i>n.</i> | Who best bear his mild yoke | Adjective sentence to "they" in <i>o</i> . | <i>Rel. pron.</i> | who | bear | his mild yoke | best (<i>Manner</i>) |
| <i>o.</i> | They serve him best | Noun sentence, obj. to <i>k</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> , <i>m</i> . | | they | serve | him | best (<i>Manner</i>) |
| <i>p.</i> | his state is kingly | Noun sentence, obj. to <i>k</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> , <i>m</i> , <i>o</i> . | | his state | is kingly | | |
| <i>q.</i> | thousands at his bidding speed | Noun sentence to <i>k</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> , <i>m</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>p</i> . | | thousands | speed | | at his bidding (<i>Time</i>) |
| <i>r.</i> | And [thousands] post o'er land and ocean with- out rest | Noun sentence to <i>k</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> , <i>m</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>p</i> , <i>q</i> . | and | [thousands] | post | | o'er land and ocean (<i>Place</i>) without rest (<i>Manner</i>) |
| <i>s.</i> | They also serve | Noun sentence to <i>k</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> , <i>m</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>p</i> , <i>q</i> , <i>r</i> . | also | they | serve | | |
| <i>t.</i> | who only stand | Adjective sentence to "they" in <i>s</i> . | <i>Rel. pron.</i> | who | stand | | only (<i>Manner</i>) |
| <i>u.</i> | and [who only] wait | Adjective sentence to "they" in <i>s</i> , co-ord. to <i>l</i> . | and | [who] | wait | | [only] (<i>Manner</i>) |

EXERCISE 218.

Analyse :—

1. The man whom I call worthy of the name, is one whose thoughts and exertions are for others rather than for himself ; whose high purpose is adopted on just principles, and is never abandoned while heaven and earth afford means of accomplishing it. He is one who will neither seek an indirect advantage by a specious road, nor take an evil path to secure a really good purpose.

2. Some blue peaks in the distance rose,
And white against the cold-white sky
Shone out their crowning snows.
One willow over the river wept,
And shook the wave as the wind did sigh ;
Above, in the wind, was the swallow,
Chasing itself at its own wild will ;
And far through the marish green and still,
The water-courses slept,
Shot over with purple, and green, and yellow.

3. The oracles are dumb ;
No voice or hideous hum
Runs through the arched roof in words deceiving.
Apollo from his shrine
Can no more divine,
With hollow shriek the steep of Delphos leaving.
No nightly trance, or breathed spell,
Inspires the pale-eyed priest from the prophetic cell.
4. But yesterday, the word of Caesar might
Have stood against the world : now lies he there,
And none so poor to do him reverence.
Oh, masters ! if I were disposed to stir
Your hearts and minds to mutiny and rage,
I should do Brutus wrong, and Cassius wrong,
Who, you all know, are honourable men.

5. Our young gentleman, by his insinuating behaviour, acquired the full confidence of the doctor, who invited him to an entertainment, which he intended to prepare in the manner of the ancients.

6. Sickness is a sort of early old age ; it teaches us a diffidence in our earthly state, and inspires us with the thoughts of a future, better than a thousand volumes of philosophers and divines.

7. As I looked more attentively, I saw several of the passengers dropping through the bridge into the great tide that flowed underneath it ; and upon further examination, perceived there were innumerable trap-doors that lay concealed in the bridge, which the passengers no sooner trod upon, but they fell through them into the tide, and immediately disappeared.

8. Through the hushed air a whitening shower descends
At first thin, wavering, till at last the flakes
Fall broad, and wide, and fast, dimming the day
With a continual flow. The cherished fields
Put on their winter robe of purest white :
'Tis brightness all, save where the new snow melts
Along the mazy current.

9. The night has been unruly ; where we lay
 Our chimneys were blown down, and, as they say,
 Lamentings heard i' the air, strange screams of death,
 And prophesyings with accents terrible
 Of dire combustions and confused events
 New hatch'd to the woful time : the obscure bird
 Clamour'd the livelong night : some say, the earth
 Was feverous and did shake.
10. Part in the plains, or in the air sublime
 Upon the wing, or in the swift race, contend
 As at th' Olympian games, or Pythian fields ;
 Part curb their fiery steeds, or shun the goal
 With rapid wheels, or fronted brigades form
 As when, to warn proud cities, war appears
 Wag'd in the troubled sky, and armies rush
 To battle in the clouds ; before each van
 Prick forth the airy knights, and couch their spears
 Till thickest legions close ; with feats of arms
 From either end of Heav'n the welkin rings.

PART IV.—PROSODY.

456. Prosody treats of the laws of poetry or verse.

457. Accent is the stress or force which is laid on a particular syllable.

Obs. 1.—All words of more than one syllable are accented. Monosyllables may be accented or not as occasion requires.

Obs. 2.—The stress placed on a particular word in a sentence to distinguish the sense is called *Emphasis*.

458. Quantity is the time which is occupied in pronouncing a syllable.

Obs. 1.—In English, a syllable is long when the vowel is long, and short when the vowel is short. Thus *hate* is long, *hat* is short.

Obs. 2.—English poetry is regulated by accent, and not by quantity.

459. Recurring groups of syllables are called **feet**, from the resemblance which the movement of the voice bears to the motion of the feet in walking.

Rhythm is the regular succession of accented and unaccented syllables.

Metre is a rhythmical arrangement of words, measured off in lines of equal or varying length.

A **verse** is a cycle of feet, forming a line of poetry.

460. A Cæsura (Latin, a cutting off) is a pause in a line of poetry.

Obs.—It is generally near the middle of the line.

461. Versification is the arrangement of a certain number of syllables so that those similarly accented may recur at regular intervals.

Obs.—In prose the accents do not recur at regular intervals.

462. Rhyme is the correspondence in sound of the final syllable of one line with that of another.

Single Rhymes are those of one syllable : as, *dry, try*.

Double Rhymes extend over two syllables : as, *drying, trying*.

Triple Rhymes extend over three syllables : as, *scornfully, mournfully*.

Obs.—The Rules for a Perfect Rhyme are :—

1. That the vowel sound and the parts following it be the same.
2. That the parts preceding the vowel be different.
3. That the rhyming syllables be accented alike.

463. Blank Verse is verse without rhyme, and has always ten syllables in a line.

464. Alliteration is the recurrence of the same letter at short intervals.

Obs.—This is the characteristic of the earliest English poetry, which also has no rhyme. "In two successive short lines, three chief words—two in the first line and one in the other—are made to begin with the same letter. If one of these words has a prefix, the alliteration is with the first letter of the root-word, not that of the prefix. When the chief words begin with vowels, the rule is reversed and the vowels differ"—*c.g.*,

A mous that muche good
Kouthe, as me thoughte
Strook forth sterneley,
And stood bfore hem alle.

465. The different kinds of feet are :—

I. Those consisting of two syllables, viz.,

(a) **Iambic**, in which the first is unaccented and the second accented : as, *confúte, resíde*.

(b) **Trochee**, in which the first is accented and the second unaccented : as, *férvoir, fármer*.

II. Those consisting of three syllables, viz.,

(a) **Anapæst**, in which the first and second are unaccented and the third accented : as, *interfère*.

(b) **Dactyl**, in which the first is accented, and the second and third unaccented : as, *wóndering, clámorous*.

(c) **Amphibrach**, in which the first and third are unaccented, and the second accented : as, *amázement*.

Obs.—There are also the following kinds of two-syllable feet, (1) **Spondee**, consisting of two accented syllables, as, *Amén, fárewéll*; (2) **Pyrrhic**, consisting of two unaccented syllables, as, (*féas-*)*íblë*. Of three-syllable feet, a **Tribrach** consists of three unaccented syllables, as, (*vén-*)*ëräblë*.

466. Verse is called *Iambic, Trochaic, Anapæstic, Dactylic*, or *Amphibrachic*, according to the kind of feet composing it.

467. The Measure of a verse is determined by the number of feet in it.

468. Measures are called *Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, Hexameter, Heptameter*, or *Octometer*, as they have *one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, or eight* feet in a line.

469. A verse which has a syllable too much is called **hypermetrical** or redundant.

A verse which has a syllable too little is called **catalectic** or deficient.

A verse which is complete is called **acatalectic**.

470. Iambic Measures.

The Iambic measure is the most common in English poetry. It sometimes admits of an additional syllable (hypermeter) through whole poems.

ONE FOOT.

The bówl.

A-wáy.

ONE FOOT, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

The moón | loóks.

TWO FEET.

Unheárd, | unknówn.

He mákes | his móan.

TWO FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

No ó | ther pléa | sure

With this | could méa | sure.

Obs.—Iambic monometer and dimeter are only found in combination with other measures.

THREE FEET.

Blow, blów, | thou wín | ter wínd,

Thou árt | not só | unkind.

THREE FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Hew dówn | the bridge, | Sir Cón | sul,

With all the speed ye may.

Obs.—This is sometimes called **Gay's Stanza**.

FOUR FEET.

And máy | at lást | my wéa | ry áge

Find óut | the peáce | ful hér | mitáge.

FOUR FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

I'm trú | ly sór | ry mán's | domín | ion

Has bró | ken Ná | ture's só | eial ún | ion.

FIVE FEET.

The cúr | few tólls | the knéll | of párt | ing dáy,

The lów | ing hérd | winds slów | ly ó'er | the léa.

Obs.—The Iambic pentameter, when written in rhyme, is termed the **Heroic Measure**. Nearly all the epic, dramatic, and descriptive poetry is written in this measure. When without rhyme, it forms our **Blank Verse**.

FIVE FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Would Gód, | that á | ny ín | this nó | ble prés | ence

Were enough noble to be upright judge.

SIX FEET.

If lóve | make mé | forswórn, | how sháll | I swéar | to lóve ?
 O né | ver fáith | could hólđ, | if nóť | to beáun | ty vów'd.

Obs.—This measure is called the **Alexandrine**. It is seldom used, except to complete a Spenserian Stanza (§ 475).

SIX FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Thine éye | Jove's líght | níng seéms, | thy vóice | his dréad | ful thún | der,
 Which not to anger bent is music and sweet fire.

SEVEN FEET.

The kíng | has cóme | to már | shal ús | in áll | his árm | our drést,
 And hé | has bóund | a snów | white plúme | upón | his gál | lant crést.

Obs.—This measure is also written in lines of four feet and three feet alternately, the latter being the rhyming lines. This arrangement is adopted in the metrical psalms, in many hymns, and other lyrical pieces, and is called **Service Metre** or **Common Metre**. From being often employed in ballads, it is also called **Ballad Metre**.

SEVEN FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

So gén | tle Él | len nów | no móre | could máke | this sád | house chée | ry.
 And Má | ry's mél | anchó | ly wáys | drove Éd | ward wild | and wéa | ry.

EIGHT FEET.

O én | ter thén | his gátes | with práise, | appróach | with jóy | his cóurts |
 untó :
 Praise, laúd, | and bléss | his náme | alwáys, | for ít | is seém | ly só | to
 dó.

Obs.—This is now divided into lines of four feet rhyming alternately, and then it is called **Long Metre**.

471. Trochaic Measures.

In trochaic verse an accented final syllable is allowable.

ONE FOOT.

Túrning,
 Búrning.

ONE FOOT, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Chíll'd with | téars,
 Kíll'd with | féars.

TWO FEET.

Héart is | bleéding,
 Áll help | neéding.

TWO FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Gíve the | véngeance | díre
 Tó the | váliant | créw.

THREE FEET.

Nów they | stoód con | fóunded.
 Whíle the | báttle | soúnded.

THREE FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Táke, oh | táke those | líps a | wáy,
 Thát so | swéetly | wére for | swórn.

FOUR FEET.

Gód of | stillness | ánd of | mótion,
Óf the | désert | ánd the | ócean.

FOUR FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Thén me | thóught I | héard a | hóllow | sóund
Gáth'ring | úp from | áll the | lówer | gróund

FIVE FEET.

Vírtue's | bríght'ning | ráy shall | béam for | éver.

FIVE FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Hárk, the | sóund of | gládness | fróm a | distant | shóre.

SIX FEET.

Ón a | móuntain | strétch'd be | néath a | hoáry | willow
Láy a | shépherd | swáin and | víew'd the | rólling | bíllow.

SIX FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Cásting | dówn their | gólden | crówns a | róund the | glássy | sea.

SEVEN FEET.

Hásten, | Lórd, to | rescúe | mé and | sét me | sáfe from | tróuble.

SEVEN FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Ánd I | said, My | cóusin | Ámy, | spéak, and | spéak the | trúth to | mé
Trúst me, | cóusin, | áll the | cúrent | óf my | béing | sés to | thée.

EIGHT FEET.

Whíle I | nódded | néarly | nápping, | súddenly there | cáme a | tápping.

472. Anapæstic Measures.

ONE FOOT.

'Tis in váin
'They complain.

TWO FEET.

In my ráge | shall be seen
The revéngé | of a quéen.

TWO FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

He is góne | on the móun | tain,
He is lóst | to the fór | est.

THREE FEET.

From the cén | tre all róund | to the sea,
I am lórd | of the fówl | and the brúte.

FOUR FEET.

And the éyes | of the sléep | ers wax'd deád | ly and chíll,
And their héarts | but once heáv'd | and for év | er grew stíll.

Obs.—Longer lines than tetrameters are very seldom found in this metre.

FOUR FEET, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE.

Give their róof | to the fláme | and their flésh | to the éa | gles.

473. Dactylic Measures.

ONE FOOT.

Féarfully,
Téarfully.

TWO FEET.

Midnight, as | síst our moan,
Hélp us to | sígh and groan.

FOUR FEET.

Wéary way | wánderer, | lánguid and | síck at heart,
Trávelling | páinfully | óver the | rúgged road.

Obs.—Pentameters and heptameters are seldom met with in this measure.

SIX FEET.

This is the | fórest pri | méval. But | whére are the | héarts that
be | néath it
Leap'd like the | rée when he | héars in the | woódlan the | voice of
the | húntsman?

Obs.—The last foot is a spondee.

474. Amphibrachic Measures.

ONE FOOT.

Hearts béating
At méeting.

TWO FEET.

But nóthing | can vánquish
The touéh that | they díe from.

THREE FEET.

A cónquest | how hárd and | how glórious.

THREE FEET, CATALECTIC.

Allów me | to múse and | to sígh,
Nor talk of | the ehánge that | ye find

FOUR FEET.

I clímb'd the | dark brów of | the míghty | Helvéllyn.

FOUR FEET, CATALECTIC.

O húsh thee, | my bábie, | thy síre was | a kíght,
Thy móther | a lády | both lóvely | and bríght.

Obs.—It is not uncommon to read dactylic or anapaestic lines as amphibrachic, the regular amphibrach metre being rare.

475. Stanzas.

A **Stanza** is the combination of a certain number of lines in rhyme.

A **Couplet** is a stanza of two lines.

A **Triplet** is a stanza of three lines.

A **Quatrain** is a stanza of four lines.

A **Senary** is a stanza of six lines.

Octosyllabics are verses made up each of four iambs, and therefore containing eight syllables.

Elegiacs are quatrains of iambic heptameters, with the rhymes alternate.

Terza Rima is a stanza consisting of heroics, with three rhymes at intervals.

Rhyme Royal is a stanza of seven lines of heroics.

Ottava Rima is a stanza of eight lines of heroics.

Spenserian Stanza is a stanza of nine lines, the first eight heroics, and the last an Alexandrine

A **Sonnet** is a stanza of fourteen lines, each line being an iambic pentameter.

476. Scanning is the dividing of verse into the feet of which it is composed.

Obs.—In scanning, divide the feet by perpendicular lines, name each foot, and then name the measure of the whole line or verse.

EXERCISE 219.

Scan the following :—

1. It was a friar of orders gray
Walk'd forth to tell his beads.
2. 'Tis night, and the landscape is lovely no more ;
I mourn, but, ye woodlands, I mourn not for you.
3. I've seen the smiling
Of fortune beguiling.
4. Bowers, adieu ! where love decoying,
First enthrall'd this heart o' mine.
5. I saw from the beach, when the morning was shining
A bark o'er the waters move gloriously on.
6. Like leviathans afloat
Lay their bulwarks on the brine.
7. Fast they come, fast they come ;
See how they gather.
8. I bring fresh showers for the thirsting flowers,
From the seas and the streams.
9. I have breath'd on the South, and the chestnut flowers
By thousands have burst from the forest bowers.
10. Merrily, merrily shall I live now,
Under the blossom that hangs on the bough.

QUESTIONS ON §§ 456—476.

1. What is prosody? 2. What is accent? 3. What is emphasis? 4. What is quantity? 5. How is the length of a syllable determined? 6. What are feet? 7. What is rhythm? 8. What is metre? 9. What is a verse? 10. What is a cæsura? 11. What is versification? 12. What is rhyme? 13. What are single rhymes? 14.

What are double rhymes? 15. What are triple rhymes? 16. Give the rules for a perfect rhyme. 17. What is blank verse? 18. What is alliteration? 19. Name the different kinds of feet. 20. What is an iambic? 21. What is a trochee? 22. What is an anapæst? 23. What is a dactyl? 24. What is an amphibrach? 25. How is the measure of a verse determined? 26. Name the measures. 27. Explain the terms *hypermetrical*, *catalectic*, and *acatalectic*. 28. Give examples of iambic measures. 29. Give examples of trochaic measures. 30. Give examples of anapæstic measures. 31. Give examples of dactylic measures. 32. Give examples of amphibrachic measures. 33. What is a stanza? 34. What is a couplet? 35. What is a triplet? 36. What is a senary? 37. What are octosyllabics? 38. What are elegiacs? 39. What is terza rima? 40. What is rhyme royal? 41. What is ottava rima? 42. What is the Spenserian stanza? 43. What is a sonnet? 44. What is scanning?

PART V.—PUNCTUATION.

477. Punctuation (Latin *punctum*, a point) is the art of dividing written language into sentences, or parts of sentences, by points or stops, for the purpose of showing the relation of the words, and of indicating the different pauses which the sense requires.

478. The stops used in English are :—

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| The Comma , | The Note of Interrogation ? |
| The Semicolon ; | The Note of Exclamation ! |
| The Colon : | The Parenthesis () |
| The Period or Full Stop . | Quotation Marks “ ” |
| The Dash -- | |

The Comma.

479. Rule I. The subject, predicate, and object, in their simplest forms, or even with simple enlargements, are not separated from each other by any point : as,

The rolling mountains of the deep obey thy strong command.

480. Rule II. When several words (as a noun sentence or an infinitive or participial phrase) are used as the subject, or when the subject has several inseparable enlargements, a comma is sometimes placed before the verb ; but it is often better to omit the comma unless the omission would cause ambiguity : as,

To be indifferent to praise or censure, is a real defect in character. Or (better).
To be indifferent to praise or censure is a real defect in character.

481. Rule III. Subordinate sentences are separated from the principal sentence and from one another by commas : as,

That Careass, which you call dead Society, is but her mortal coil.

Obs.—There are many exceptions to this rule :—

1. When phrases and subordinate sentences are employed in a restrictive sense no comma is used : as,

The Lord is nigh unto them that are of a broken heart.

2. When the subordinate sentence is short and closely connected with the principal sentence, no comma is used : as,

The noise pursues me wheresoo'er I go.

482. Rule IV. The nominative of address, the nominative absolute, the infinitive absolute, the imperative absolute, and the participle used absolutely are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas : as,

(1) Mark, king of Scotland, mark ; (2) The wind being favourable, the squadron sailed ; (3) To be brief, I accuse the prisoner of theft ; (4) Lend me some money, say five pounds ; (5) Generally speaking, one will suffice.

483. Rule V. Adverbs and adverbial phrases are sometimes separated from one another by commas : as,

Afterwards, in the time of Elizabeth, another great change was made.

484. Rule VI. Adverbial phrases and connectives used parenthetically are separated by commas from the rest of the sentence : as,

(1) In sooth, such things have been ; (2) I told him, however, that I should not go.

Obs.—The following words are separated in this way, especially when they begin a sentence : *Again, besides, finally, first, firstly, hence, however, lastly, moreover, namely, nay, now, secondly (thirdly, etc.), so, then, therefore, thus.*

485. Rule VII. Words brought together in the same construction must be separated by a comma : as,

Thus was I, sleeping, by a brother's hand,
Of life, of crown, of queen, at once despatch'd.

486. Rule VIII. When two words are joined by a conjunction, they are not separated by a comma : as,

Ramped and roared the lions, with horrid laughing jaws.

Obs.—But a comma must be used (1) when the conjunction is omitted, as, This, however, was concealed from all except Captain Hardy, the chaplain, and the medical attendants ; (2) when there are several enlargements to the words, as, This nut contains a white fleshy kernel, and a sweet liquor called cocoa-nut milk.

487. Rule IX. When words are joined in pairs by a conjunction, the pairs are separated by a comma : as,

We should be devout and humble, cheerful and serene.

488. Rule X. A comma is used when a word is omitted : as,

Peace brings prosperity ; war, desolation.

489. Rule XI. A comma is sometimes used to separate co-ordinate sentences when the clauses are simple and the connexion close : as,

Now the hungry lion roars,
And the wolf howls the moon.

The Semicolon.

490. Rule XII. A semicolon is used to separate two co-ordinate sentences not so closely connected as those separated by commas : as,

Thou hast her, France ; let her be thine.

Obs.—A semicolon is used to separate subordinate sentences, when each of them depends directly on the principal sentence and has the same relation to it : as, Much

more, sir, is he to be abhorred who, as he has advanced in age, has receded from virtue, and become more wicked with less temptation; who prostitutes himself for money which he cannot enjoy, and spends the remains of his life in the ruin of his country.

The Colon.

491. Rule XIII. When the members or clauses of a compound sentence make a complete sense in themselves and are not joined by a conjunction, they are separated by a colon: as

'Tis mightiest in the mightiest: it becomes
The throned monarch better than his crown.

*merchant of
venice*

492. Rule XIV. The colon is used before a quotation: as,

Saith godly Canynge: "I do weep,
That thou so soon must die."

Obs.—When the quotation closely depends on the preceding sentence, a comma is used: as

Then did she say, "Now have I found the proverb true to prove,
The falling out of faithful friends renewing is of love."

The Period.

493. Rule XV. The period or full stop is put at the end of a sentence, whether simple, complex, or compound: as,

The flame is hollow.

Inside of it is the vapour I told you of just now.

Meantime the French had given way, and were flying in all directions.

The Dash.

494. Rule XVI. The dash is used to mark a break in the sentence: as,

Then returning to me again, he said: "But your father—how came you not to show him what you wrote?"

The Note of Interrogation.

495. Rule XVII. The note of interrogation is put at the end of a direct question: as,

Will he ne'er come again?

The Note of Exclamation.

496. Rule XVIII. The note of exclamation is used after interjections and other exclamatory expressions: as,

(1) Ho! ho! the breakers roared. (2) Oh, for a soft and gentle wind!

Obs.—When the nominative of address is preceded by *O*, it is often followed by a note of exclamation: as, O Heaven! he cried, my bleeding country save!

The Parenthesis.

497. Rule XIX. The parenthesis is used to enclose an explanatory phrase or sentence: as,

A vast number of fascines (bundles of wood) had been employed by the army in conducting the siege.

Quotation Marks.

498. Rule XX. Quotation marks are used to mark the actual words of the speaker or writer : as,

I follow'd him, and said, "My friend,
What ails you? wherefore weep you so?"

QUESTIONS ON §§ 477—498.

1. What is punctuation? 2. Name the stops used in English. 3. Which parts of a sentence are not separated by any point? 4. When may the subject be separated from the verb by a comma? 5. How are subordinate sentences separated from the principal sentence and from one another? 6. State the exceptions to this rule. 7. Name absolute phrases separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. 8. How is the nominative of address separated? 9. How are adverbial phrases separated? 10. Name adverbs and connectives which are usually separated by commas from the rest of the sentence. 11. How are words brought together in the same construction separated? 12. When words are joined in pairs by a conjunction, which stop is used? 13. Give an example in which a comma marks the omission of a word. 14. Give an example in which a comma separates co-ordinate sentences. 15. How is a semicolon used? 16. When is a colon used? 17. Where is a period put? 18. What is the use of the dash? 19. How is a note of interrogation used? 20. Where is a note of exclamation used? 21. How is the parenthesis used? 22. For what purpose are quotation marks used?

PART VI.—ORIGIN AND HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

499. The languages spoken in the world may be divided into the Aryan or Indo-European, the Semitic, the Turanian, the Chinese and Indo-Chinese, the African and the American Indian.

500. The Aryan family of languages comprehends nearly all the languages of Europe and several of those of Asia. The following table shows the relation of the chief Aryan or Indo-European languages.

A. Asiatic.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| I. Indian (or Hindū). | { | 1. Sanskrit (dead). |
| | | 2. Prakrit (dead). |
| | | 3. Pali (dead). |
| | | 4. Modern Indian dialects descended from Sanskrit :— |
| | | (a) Hindī. |
| | | (b) Hindustanī. |
| II. Iranian. | { | (c) Bengālī. |
| | | (d) Mahrattī, etc. |
| | | 5. Cingalese. |
| | | 6. Gipsy dialects (Hindu patois). |
| | | 1. Zend (dead). |
| | | 2. Cuneiform inscriptions of Darius, Xerxes, etc. |
| | { | 3. Modern Persian. |
| | | 4. Armenian. |
| | | 5. Khurdish. |
| | | 6. Afghan. |

B. European.**III. Keltic.**

- a.* Cymric :—
 - (1) Welsh.
 - (2) Cornish (dead).
 - (3) Bas-Breton or Armorican.
- β.* Gadhelic :—
 - (1) Erse or Irish.
 - (2) Gaelic.
 - (3) Manx.

IV. Italian.

- 1. Old Italian dialects :—
 - (*a*) Oscan (dead).
 - (*b*) Umbrian (dead).
 - (*c*) Latin (dead).
- 2. Romance languages descended from Latin :—
 - (*a*) Italian.
 - (*b*) French.
 - (*c*) Provençal.
 - (*d*) Spanish.
 - (*e*) Portuguese.
 - (*f*) Romansch (spoken in the Grisons, a canton of Switzerland).
 - (*g*) Wallachian.

**V. Greek
(or Hellenic).**

- 1. Ancient Greek, comprising the classical Greek dialects :—
 - (*a*) Ionic.
 - (*b*) Doric.
 - (*c*) Æolic.
 - (*d*) Attic.
- 2. Modern Greek or Romaic.

VI. Teutonic.

- a.* Low German :—
 - (1) Mæso-Gothic, formerly spoken in Dacia (dead).
 - (2) Frisian :—
 - (*a*) Old Frisian (dead).
 - (*b*) Modern Frisian, spoken in Friesland.
 - (3) Dutch :—
 - (*a*) Old Dutch (dead).
 - (*b*) Modern Dutch (Holland and Belgium).
 - (4) Flemish :—
 - (*a*) Old Flemish (dead).
 - (*b*) Modern Flemish.
 - (5) Old Saxon, formerly spoken between the Rhine and the Elbe (dead).
 - (6) English :—
 - (*a*) Old English or Anglo-Saxon (dead).
 - (*b*) Modern English.
 - Lowland Scotch.

VI. Teutonic
(continued).

- β. Scandinavian :—
 - (1) Old Norse (dead).
 - (2) Icelandic.
 - (3) Faroic.
 - (4) Danish :—
 - (a) Norwegian.
 - (b) Swedish.
- γ. High German :—
 - (1) Old High German (eighth to eleven century).
 - (2) Middle High German (twelfth to fifteenth century).
 - (3) Modern High German.

VII. Lettic.

- 1. Old Lettic (dead).
- 2. Lettish or Livonian (spoken in Kurland and Livonia).
- 3. Lithuanian (spoken in E. Prussia).

VIII. Slavonic.

- α. South-east Slavonic :—
 - (1) Old Bulgarian (or Ecclesiastical Slavic).
 - (2) Modern Bulgarian.
 - (3) Russian.
 - (4) Illyrian :—
 - (a) Servian.
 - (b) Kroatian.
 - (c) Slovenian (Carinthia and Styria).
- β. Western Slavonic :—
 - (5) Polish.
 - (6) Bohemian or Tchechian.
 - (7) Slovakian (spoken by Slovaks in Hungary).
 - (8) Wendian or Sorbian (Lusatian dialects).
 - (9) Polabian.

Obs. 1.—The word *Aryan* is from the Sanskrit, and means “honourable,” “noble.”

Obs. 2.—The only European peoples not belonging to the Aryan family are the Turks, the Jews, the Lapps, the Finns, the Esths of Esthonia, the Magyars and the Basques (in N. Spain).

501. When the various languages of the Aryan family are examined, it is found that a certain family likeness exists in the words of which they are composed. The law which regulates this correspondence is called Grimm’s Law, and is as follows :—

I. If the same roots or the same words exist in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Keltic, Slavonic, Lithuanian, Gothic, and Old High German, then wherever the Sanskrit or Greek has an *aspirate*, the Gothic has the corresponding *flat* mute, and the Old High German the corresponding *sharp* mute.

II. If in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Lithuanian, Keltic, and Slavonic, we find a *flat* mute, then we find a corresponding *sharp* mute in Gothic, and a corresponding *aspirate* in Old High German.

III. When the six first-named languages show a *sharp* mute, then Gothic shows the corresponding *aspirate*, and Old High German the corresponding *flat* mute.

GENERAL TABLE OF GRIMM'S LAW.

| | I. | II. | III. | IV. | V. | VI. | VII. | VIII. | IX. |
|------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|----|-------|-------|-----------|-------------|
| <i>Sanskrit</i> | bh (h) | dh (h) | gh (h) | b | d | g | p | t | k |
| <i>Greek</i> | φ | θ | χ | β | δ | γ | π | τ | κ |
| <i>Latin</i> | f (b) | f (d, b) | h (f) | b | d | g | p | t | c (qu) |
| <i>Keltic</i> | b | d | g | b | d | g | (p) | t (th) | c (ch) |
| <i>Slavonic</i> | b | d | g (z) | b | d | g (z) | p | t | k |
| <i>Lithuanian</i> | b | d | g (z) | b | d | g (z) | p | t | k |
| <i>Gothic</i> | b | d | g | (p) | t | k | f (b) | th (d) | h, g (f) |
| <i>Old High German</i> | p | t | k | ph (f) | z | ch | f (v) | d | h, g, h |

Obs. 1.—Keltic, Slavonic, and Lithuanian have no distinction between *aspirates* and *flat* mutes.

Obs. 2.—"If it be remembered that *soft*=*flat* and *hard*=*sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word *ASH*, with its varying forms *SNA* or *HAS*, according to the sound which is to come first" (Dr. Morris). Thus the mnemonic word for the first law is *ASH*, for the second *SNA*, and for the third *HAS*.

EXAMPLES OF GRIMM'S LAW.

The following examples are chiefly from Bopp and Max Müller. It will be borne in mind that English follows the changes of the Gothic.

| | <i>Sanskrit.</i> | <i>Greek.</i> | <i>Latin.</i> | <i>Gothic.</i> | <i>Old High German.</i> | <i>English.</i> |
|-------|-------------------------------------|--|---|--|-----------------------------------|---|
| I. | bhanj bhratr bhrī bhavāmi | rhēgnumi phratēr phero phuō | frango frater fero fu (in fui) | brikan brôthar baira — | prēchan pruoder piru pim | break brother bear I am (O.E. beom) |
| II. | — dhr̥ish — madhya | thēr or phēr tharsein or tharreîn themis messos | fera fortis — medius | dius gadaursan dôms midja | tior tarran — miti | deer (O.E. deor) dare doom mid |
| III. | hansa hyas lih — | chēn chthes leîchō cholē | anser heri lingo fel | gans gistra laigō — | kans kêstar lêkôm — | goose yester day lick gall |
| IV.* | kubja | kubos | cubo | hups | huf | hip |
| V. | dvau dru dama uda | duō drūs domos hudōr | duo — domus unda | tvai triu timr vatô | zuei — zimmer wazar | two tree timber water |
| VI. | jnâ jânu jâti jani | gnōmi gonu genos gunē | gnosco genu genus — | kan kniu kuni qinô(qens) | chan chniu chunni chena | ken knee kin queen |
| VII. | pâda panchan pitri pâr'n'a | pous(podos) pente patēr pleos | pes (pedis) quinque pater plenus | fôtus fimf fadar fulls | vuoꝛ vinf vatar vol | foot five father full |
| VIII. | trayas tvam tanus tad | treis tu — to | tres tu tenuis — | threis thu (Old Norse, thunnr) thatā | dri du dunni (Ger. das) | three thou thin that |
| IX. | hrid kās çvan paçu | kardia kos (pos) kuōn pōti | cor(cordis) quis canis pecus | hairtō hvas hunths faihu | hërza wër hund vihu | heart who (O.E. hva) hound fee (cattle) |

* Examples of this class are very rare.

502. The **English language** is a Low German dialect of the Teutonic branch of the Aryan family of languages; and was brought into this country by our ancestors, who originally dwelt on the shores of the Baltic and in the lowlands of Germany.

503. The first **English Settlement** in this country was made in 449. The people called themselves *Ænglisc* or English, and they called the land in which they settled *Ængla-land* or England. The settlers were made up of three tribes, Angles, Saxons, and Jutes.

The following is a list of all the settlements made:—

| | <i>Tribe.</i> | <i>Leader.</i> | <i>Settlement.</i> | <i>Date.</i> |
|----|---------------|-------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. | Jutes | Hengist and Horsa | Kent, I. of Wight, and Hampshire | 449 |
| 2. | Saxons | Ella and Cissa | Sussex | 477 |
| 3. | Saxons | Cerdic and Cynric | Wessex | 495 |
| 4. | Saxons | ..... | Essex | 530 |
| 5. | Angles | ..... | East Anglia | { During reign of Cerdic |
| 6. | Angles | Ida | { Beornicia (between Tweed and Forth) | |

Two other kingdoms, viz., Deira and Mercia, were subsequently established by the Angles.

The language introduced by these settlers was an inflected language, and it was an unmixed language. In course of time, it has lost most of its inflexions, and has borrowed many words from other languages.

The people who inhabited this land prior to the arrival of the English were of **Keltic** race. They spoke a Keltic language. From this the English borrowed some words. The **Romans** had conquered the country, and from their language certain words (such as names of places in *caster*) were adopted. These words form what is called the *Latin of the First Period*.

504. Our English forefathers were **converted to Christianity** in the sixth century. Many Latin words were introduced by ecclesiastics and by English writers who translated Latin works. This is called the *Latin of the Second Period*.

505. At the end of the eighth century, the **Danes** or Northmen ravaged the shores of England and neighbouring countries, and, in the ninth century, they had permanent settlements in England, especially in the kingdoms of

Northumbria, East Anglia, and Mercia. In the eleventh century, Danish sovereigns ruled over all England. The Danish and English were kindred tongues. It is difficult to ascertain precisely from which of the two some of our modern English words are derived.

506. After the **Norman invasion** in 1066, French became the language of the court, the nobility, the clergy, courts of law, schools, and literature. The Norman and English races ultimately coalesced, and the language of the majority, viz., English, prevailed. Through the French, many Latin words were added to the language. This is called the *Latin of the Third Period*. The French words adopted in English are terms having reference to war and the feudal system, to the church, to the law, and to the chase.

507. A great **revival of learning** took place in the beginning of the sixteenth century. This gave rise to the introduction of another large number of Latin words into English. This is called the *Latin of the Fourth Period*.

508. The **advance of science** has led to the introduction of many words, especially from the Greek, and the **spread of commerce** has caused the adoption of words from almost every language in the world.

509. The **number of words** in the language is over 100,000. Most of these are words adopted from other languages. The chief element, however, in our *current* speech is pure English.

510. The **English element** includes :—

1. The parts of speech most extensively used : adjectives of quantity, numeral adjectives, distinguishing adjectives, pronouns, auxiliary and defective verbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and primary adverbs.

2. Words formed by modification : as, irregular verbs, nouns forming their plural by a change of vowel, and primary derivatives (and their roots).

3. Grammatical inflexions : as, the plural endings (*s* and *en*), the possessive ending (*'s*), the person endings of verbs, and the degree endings of adjectives.

4. Many common prefixes and suffixes (§§ 262, 265—269).

5. Most words of one syllable : as, *sun*, *wife*, *home*.

6. Most of the nouns, verbs, and adjectives in most common use.

Obs. 1.—In the last class are included words expressive of natural feelings ; names of objects of natural scenery, heavenly bodies, animals, bodily organs and postures ; words used in earliest childhood, in the business of the shop, market, street, or farm ; words used in proverbs ; terms of satire, contempt, invective, humour, anger, and pleasantry.

Obs. 2.—Notwithstanding the large number of words derived from foreign sources,

it still remains, both in its vocabulary and its grammar, essentially Teutonic. Professor Marsh, in his "Lectures on the English Language," gives the following examples among others:—

Chaucer, in his "Nonnes Preestes Tale," employs of Anglo-

| | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|-----|--------------|
| Saxon words | ... | ... | ... | 93 per cent. |
| Sir Thomas More (in 7 folio pages) | ... | ... | ... | 84 " |
| Spenser (in 1 canto) | ... | ... | ... | 86 " |
| New Testament (in 13 selected chapters) | ... | ... | ... | 93 " |
| Shakespeare (3 Acts) | ... | ... | ... | 89 " |
| Milton ("L'Allegro") | ... | ... | ... | 90 " |
| " ("Paradise Lost," Book VI.) | ... | ... | ... | 80 " |
| Pope ("First Epistle," and "Essay on Man") | ... | ... | ... | 80 " |
| Johnson (Preface to "Dictionary") | ... | ... | ... | 72 " |
| Macaulay ("Essay on Bacon") | ... | ... | ... | 75 " |
| Robert Browning ("Blougram's Apology") | ... | ... | ... | 84 " |
| Tennyson ("Lotus Eaters") | ... | ... | ... | 87 " |
| Ruskin ("Modern Painters") | ... | ... | ... | 73 " |
| Longfellow ("Miles Standish") | ... | ... | ... | 87 " |

511. The **Keltic** element in English is comparatively small and consists of:—

1. Geographical names of:—

(a) Rivers: as, *Trent, Ouse, Avon, Exe* (with the forms *Axe, Esk, Uix, Usk, Ux*, all meaning "water"), *Don, Dee, Thames, Severn*.

(b) Islands: as, *Wight, Arran, Mull, Man, Bute*.

(c) Hills: as, *Mendip, Malvern, Chiltern, Grampian, Cheviot*.

(d) Counties: as, *Kent* (*Cant* = a corner), *Glamorgan, Cornwall, Devon*.

(e) Towns: as, *Penzance, Cardiff, Caerleon, Carlisle*.

2. Components of geographical names:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Aber</i> , a mouth: <i>Aberystwyth, Aberfeldy, Aberwick</i> (Berwick). | <i>Cairn</i> , a heap of stones: <i>Cairngorm, Cairntoul</i> . |
| <i>Al</i> , white: <i>Albyn, Allan</i> . | <i>Cambus</i> , the bend of a river: <i>Cam-buskenneth</i> . |
| <i>Ard</i> , <i>aird</i> , high: <i>Lizard Point</i> (high fort point), <i>Ardnamurchan, Kinnaird, Ardrossan</i> . | <i>Can</i> , a point: <i>Cantire</i> . |
| <i>Ath</i> , ford: <i>Athlone</i> . | <i>Cefn</i> , back, chine: <i>Cheviot, Keynton</i> . |
| <i>Auch</i> , <i>ach</i> , <i>uchin</i> , a field: <i>Auchinleck, Achray, Auchmull</i> . | <i>Coed</i> , a wood: <i>Cotswold</i> . |
| <i>Auchter</i> , a height: <i>Auchterarder, Auchtergaren</i> . | <i>Combe</i> , <i>cwm</i> , a hollow or vale: <i>Wycombe, Ilfracombe, Cwmneath</i> . |
| <i>Bal</i> , <i>bally</i> , a village: <i>Balmoral, Ballygowrie, Ballyshannon</i> . | <i>Craig</i> , <i>carriack, croagh, crick</i> , a crag, a rocky mountain: <i>Craigmillar, Carrickfergus, Croaghpatrick, Crickhovell</i> . |
| <i>Bala</i> , issue of river from lake: <i>Bala, Balloch</i> . | <i>Cul</i> , back or hind part: <i>Culross</i> . |
| <i>Ban</i> , white: <i>Bandon, Banna</i> . | <i>Dal</i> , <i>dol</i> , a plain: <i>Dalkeith, Dalgelly</i> . |
| <i>Beg</i> , little: <i>Ballybeg</i> . | <i>Dhu, dhuibh, duff, du, do, doo, don</i> , black, dark: <i>Rossdhu, Benmuick-duibh, Dufferrin, Duloch, Dov</i> (= Do-avon), <i>Doon</i> (= Doo-avon), <i>Doveran</i> . |
| <i>Ben</i> , a mountain: <i>Ben Nevis, Ben Lomond</i> . | <i>Don</i> , water: <i>Bandon</i> . |
| <i>Blair</i> , a plain or open: <i>Blair Gowrie, Blair Athol</i> . | <i>Dour</i> , water: <i>Darent, Dart, Darwin, Derwent</i> . |
| <i>Brae</i> , a hill or slope: <i>Braemar</i> . | |
| <i>Caer, car</i> , a fort: <i>Caernarron, Carlou</i> . | |
| <i>Cain</i> , white: <i>Ken, Kennet</i> . | |

Drum, a ridge : *Drumcliff*, *Drum-clog*.

Dun, *dum*, *don*, a hill : *Dunfermline*, *Dumbarton*, *Snowdon*.

Esk, water : *Esker*, *Esthwaite*.

Garw, rough : *Garry*, *Yarrow*.

Glen, *glyn*, a narrow valley : *Glencoe*, *Glenshee*, *Glynneath*.

Gorm, blue : *Cairngorm*.

Gwent, a plain : *Winchester*.

Inch, *innis*, *ennis*, *ynys*, an island : *Inchcape*, *Innisbofin*, *Enniskillen*, *Ynysmoch*.

Inver, a mouth : *Inverary*.

Ken, *kin*, a head : *Kenmare*, *Kinross*.

Kil, a cell, chapel : *Kilmarnock*, *Kilkenny*.

Knock, a hill : *Knockmeledown*.

Lin, a pool : *Roslin*, *Linlithgow*.

Lis, a mound : *Lismore*.

Llan, a sacred enclosure : *Llandaff*, *Llandudno*.

Magh, a plain : *Armagh*.

Mor, *more*, *mawr*, great, large : *Morven*, *Strathmore*, *Penmaen-mawr*.

Mor, sea : *Moray*, *Glamorgan*.

Pen, a hill : *Penmaenmawr*, *Penrhyn*, *Pen-y-gant*.

Rath, a mound : *Rathlin*.

Rin, a point : *Penrhyn*.

Ros, *rose*, *ross*, a promontory : *Roslin*, *Melrose*, *Culross*.

Slieve, a hill : *Slieve Bloom*.

Strath, a valley : *Strathmore*, *Strathearn*.

Tam, spreading, broad : *Tamar*, *Thames*.

Tre, a town : *Oswestry* (=town of St. Oswald).

Tulla, *tully*, a height : *Tullamore*, *Tullybardine*.

Wy, water : *Conway*.

3. Names of things (implements, etc.) in common use, and also other familiar terms* :—

Balderdash (*baldorddus*, prating).

Barrow (*berfa*, a mound).

Basket (*basgawd*).

Bill (*biwyell*, a hatchet).

Bran (*bràn*, skin of wheat).

Broider (*brodiar*, to darn, embroider).

Bug, bugbear (*bug*, hobgoblin).

Bully (*byggylu*, to threaten).

Bump (*pump*, round mass).

Button (*botwm*).

Cabin (*cab*, *caban*, hut).

Carol (*carawl*, love-song).

Chine (*cefn*, back).

Clout (*clwt*, a patch).

Coble (*ceubal*, a boat).

Cock, in cockboat (*cuch*, boat).

Cocker (*cockru*, to indulge).

Cower (*cwrian*, to squat).

Cramp, in cramp-iron (*craff*, clasp, brace ; Fr. *agraffe*).

Crimp (*crim*, crimp, ridge).

Crisp (*crisb*).

Crockery (*crochan*, pot).

Crook (*crog*, a hook).

Crouch (*crwcan*, to bend).

Crowd (*crwth*, a fiddle).

Cudgel (*cog*, truncheon ; *cogel*, short staff).

Cull (*cwll*, separation).

Cuts = lots (*cwtws*, lots).

Dainty (*dantaeth*, choice morsel).

Darn (*darn*, patch).

Dock (*tociaw*, to cut short).

Drill (*rhill*, a row).

Drill (*trul*, a borer).

Flannel (*gwlanen*, from *gylan*, wool).

Flaw (*fflaw*, shiver, splinter).

Fleam (*fflaim*, cattle-lancet).

Flip (*gwlyb*, liquor).

Flummery (*llymry*, jelly made with oatmeal).

Frieze (*ffris*, nap of cloth).

Fudge (*fug*, deception).

Funnel (*ffigel*, air-hole, chimney).

Garter (*gardas*, from *gar*, shank, *tas*, tie).

Glen (*glyn*, valley).

Goal (*gryal*, mark).

Goblin (*coblyn*, a sprite).

Gown (*gun*, robe).

Griddle (*greidell*, iron baking-plate).

* Selected from a longer list given by Mr. Garnett in the "Proceedings of the Philological Society," vol. i., p. 171 et seq.

| | |
|---|--|
| Gruel (<i>grual</i>). | Pose, puzzle (<i>posiaw</i> , to interrogate, embarrass). |
| Grumble (<i>grymialu</i> , to murmur). | Pottage (<i>potes</i> , a cooked mess). |
| Gusset (<i>cwysed</i> , from <i>cwys</i> , ridge, furrow). | Puck (<i>puca</i> , hobgoblin). |
| Gyve (<i>gefyn</i> , fetter). | Quay (<i>cae</i> , enclosure, hedge). |
| Harlot (<i>herlawd</i> , youth ; <i>herlodes</i> , a hoyden). | Rail (<i>rhail</i> , a fence, mound). |
| Hackle (<i>heistlan</i> , <i>heisyllt</i> , instrument to dress flax). | Rasher (<i>rhasg</i> , a slice). |
| Hem (<i>hem</i> , a border). | Ridge (<i>rhic</i> , <i>rhig</i> , notch, groove). |
| Hitch (<i>hecian</i> , to halt). | Rim (<i>rhim</i> , raised edge or border). |
| Hog (<i>huch</i> , swine). | Rug (<i>rhuwch</i> , rough garment). |
| Housing (<i>hws</i> , a covering ; <i>hwsan</i> , a hood). | Size (<i>syth</i> , stiffening, glue, etc.). |
| Hoyden (<i>hoeden</i> , a flirt). | Smooth (<i>esmwyth</i> , even, soft). |
| Kex (<i>cecys</i> , hemlock). | Soak (<i>soegi</i> , to steep). |
| Kick (<i>cic</i> , foot ; <i>ciciaw</i> , to strike with the foot). | Solder (<i>sawduriaw</i> , to join, cement). |
| Kiln (<i>cyl</i> , <i>cylyn</i>). | Sough (<i>soch</i> , sink, drain). |
| Knell (<i>cnul</i> , passing bell). | Stook (<i>ystwc</i> , shock of corn). |
| Knob (<i>cnap</i> , button ; <i>cnwb</i> , knob). | Tackle (<i>tacl</i> , instrument, tool). |
| Knock (<i>cnoc</i> , a rap). | Tall (<i>tal</i> , lofty). |
| Knoll (<i>cnòl</i> , hillock). | Tarry (<i>tariau</i> , to loiter). |
| Lad (<i>llawd</i> , youth). | Task (<i>tasg</i> , a job, piece-work). |
| Lass (<i>llodes</i> , girl). | Tassel (<i>tasel</i> , fringe, tuft). |
| Lath (<i>llath</i> , rod). | Ted = to spread hay (<i>teddu</i> , to spread). |
| Lick (<i>llachiau</i> , to cudgel). | Tenter (<i>deintur</i> , frame for stretching cloth). |
| Locker (<i>llogell</i> , drawer, partition). | Tinker (<i>tincerdd</i> , lit. tail-trade, lowest craft). |
| Matter (<i>madredd</i> , pus). | Toss (<i>tosiau</i> , to jerk, throw). |
| Mattock (<i>matog</i>). | Trace (<i>tres</i> , chain or strap for drawing). |
| Mesh (<i>masg</i> , stitch in netting). | Trip (<i>tripiau</i> , to stumble). |
| Mop (<i>mop</i>). | Trudge (<i>troddi</i> , move forward, progress). |
| Muggy (<i>mwyygl</i> , sultry). | Twaddle (<i>chwedleua</i> , to prate, gossip). |
| Nudge (<i>nugiaw</i> , to shake). | Vassal (<i>gwas</i> , youth, servant). |
| Pail (<i>paecol</i> , a pail or pot). | Wain (<i>gwain</i> , a carriage). |
| Pan (<i>pan</i> , cup, bowl). | Wall (<i>gwall</i> , rampart). |
| Park (<i>pare</i> , field, enclosure). | Want (<i>chwant</i> , desire). |
| Paunch (<i>paneg</i> , <i>penygen</i> , entrails). | Wed (<i>gweddu</i> , to yoke, unite, marry). |
| Peck (<i>peg</i> , <i>peged</i> , a measure). | Whap (<i>chwap</i> , smart, stroke). |
| Pellet (<i>peled</i> , little ball, bullet). | Welt (<i>gwald</i> , hem, border). |
| Piggin (<i>picyn</i> , a small hooped vessel). | Wicket (<i>gwiced</i> , little door ; Fr. <i>guichet</i>). |
| Pimple (<i>pwmp</i> , round mass ; dim. <i>pwmpel</i> , knob, etc.). | Wire (<i>gwyfr</i>). |
| Pitch (<i>piciau</i> , to throw). | |
| Pitcher (<i>piser</i> , a jug ; Breton <i>picier</i>). | |

Many Keltic words in English have become obsolete : *cam*, crooked ; *bug*, a ghost ; *pde*, a castle ; *imp*, to engraft ; *kern*, a light-armed Gaelic soldier ; *crowd*, a fiddle ; *crowder*, a fiddler ; *kex*, a reedy plant. Others remain in provincial dialects : *berr*, force (Lanc.) ; *brat*, an apron (Lanc.) ; *brause*, brambles (Lanc.) ; *bree*, to fear (Lanc.) ; *cob*, beat

(North); *cocker*, to fondle (Lanc.); *croo*, a cattle-crib (Lanc.); *flasket*, a basket (Lanc. and Devon); *kephyll*, a horse (Craven in Yorkshire).

4. Words of late introduction:—

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| Bannock. | Druid. | Reel. |
| Bard. | Dudheen. | Shamrock. |
| Bog. | Fillibeg. | Shillelagh. |
| Brogue. | Gag. | Slab. |
| Clan. | Kilt. | Slogan. |
| Claymore. | Pibroch. | Tartan. |
| Clog. | Plaid. | Whisky. |
| Colleen. | Pony. | |

512. The Danish element includes:—

1. Geographical names or components of geographical names (chiefly in the N. and E. of England and round the coast):—

A, ay, an island: Staffa, Cumbray.
Ark, argh, a temple or altar: Arkholme, Grimsargh.
Beck, a brook: Caldbeck, Wansbeck, Beckford.
By, a town: Whitby, Grimsby, Derby.
Dale, a valley: Dovedale, Tweeddale.
Dan, Dane=Danby.
Den, dean hollow valley: Hawthornden, Southdean
Ey, ea, an island: Orkney, Anglesea.
Fell, a rock, hill: Scawfell.
Fleet, flood: Ebbsfleet, Purfleet.
Force, a waterfall: Scale Force, High Force.
Ford, forth, firth, an inlet of the sea: Milford, Seaforth, Pentland Firth.
Garth, guard, an enclosure: Applegarth, Fishguard
Gate, a way: Margate.
Gill, a ravine: Ormesgill.
Grim, a hero's name: Grimsby.
Hag, haig, haugh, high pasture land: Haggate, Haigh, Kirkhaugh.
Holm, an island: Akholm, Arkholm.
Kell, a spring: Kelby.
Kirk, a church: Kircudbright (=St. Cuthbert's Church), Falkirk.
Lax, a salmon: Laxay, Laxford.
Ness, a headland: Caithness, Sheerness.
Scale, a shealing: Portinscale, Shields.
Scar, scarth, a steep rock: Scarborough, Scarth Gap.
Scaw, a wood: Scawfell.
Skip, a ship: Skipsea.
Ster, a place: Lybster, Ulster.
Suther, sutter, solor, south: Sutherland, Sutterby, Sodor and Man.
Tarn, a mountain lake: Talkin Tarn, Tarnsyke.
Thing, ting, ding, a place of meeting: Thingwall, Tingwall, Dingwall.
Thorpe, thorp, throp, drop, a village: Althorpe, Grimsthorp, Milnthorp, Staindrop.
Thwaite, an isolated piece of land: Crosthwaite.
Toft, a small field: Lowestoft.
Wig, wick, wich, a small creek or bay: Wigton, Berwick, Greenwich.
With, a wood: Langwith.

2. The termination -son: Swainson, Ericson.

3. Some common words :—

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Are. | Daze. | Leap (year). |
| Bait (v.). | Die. | Ling. |
| Bang. | Din. | Loft (aloft). |
| Bask. | Doze. | Lubber. |
| Bloated. | Droop. | Lurk. |
| Blunt. | Drub. | Muck. |
| Boil. | Dub. | Mumble. |
| Bole. | Dull. | Niggard. |
| Bore (tidal wave). | Dwell. | Odd. |
| Bound (for a journey). | Earl. | Pudding. |
| Box (blow). | Fellow. | Rap (n.). |
| Bracken. | Flatteu. | Root. |
| Bray. | Flimsy. | Same. |
| Braze. | Flit. | Scald (a poet). |
| Buckle-to. | Fond. | Scold. |
| Bunker. | Fool. | Shrug. |
| Bustle. | Fro. | Skull. |
| Cake. | Froth. | Sky. |
| Call. | Gait. | Slant. |
| Carouse. | Gust. | Slush. |
| Cast (v.). | Hug. | Sly. |
| Chime. | Hustings. | Snug. |
| Clip. | Ill. | Thrive. |
| Clumsy. | Irk. | Ugly. |
| Cross. | Keg. | Weak. |
| Curl. | Kid. | Whim. |
| Dairy. | Kindle | Window. |
| Dash. | | |

Obs.—Many Scandinavian words are obsolete or linger only in provincial dialects. Such are :—*Boun*, ready ; *busk*, prepare ; *flay*, to frighten ; *flit*, to change houses ; *gar*, to make ; *greet*, to weep ; *lowe*, a flame ; *neif*, a fist ; *shuw*, a wood.

513. The Latin element includes :—

1. In the *First Period* (A.D. 43—410)—words referring to military affairs or stations :—*Castra*, a camp (as, *Lancaster*, *Chester*) ; *colonia*, a colony (as, *Lincoln*) ; *fossa*, a trench (*Fossbury*) ; *pons*, a bridge (*Pontefract*) ; *portus*, a harbour (*Bridport*) ; *strata*, a paved way (*Stratton*, *Watling Street*) ; *vallum*, a rampart (*Wallbury*).

2. In the *Second Period* (A.D. 596—1066) :—

(a) **Ecclesiastical words** :—*Alms*, *altar*, *anchorite*, *apostle*, *ark*, *bishop*, *candle*, *canon*, *chalice*, *chapter*, *clerk*, *cloister*, *cowl*, *creed*, *cross*, *deacon*, *disciple*, *feast*, *font*, *heretic*, *hymn*, *martyr*, *mass*, *monk*, *offer*, *pagan*, *pall*, *porch*, *preach*, *priest*, *psalm*, *psalter*, *sacrament*, *saint*, *stole*, *synod*. Several of these words are of Greek origin, but came to us through the Latin.

(b) **Names of foreign productions** :—*Agate*, *anise*, *beet*, *box*, *camel*, *cedar*, *chalk*, *cherry*, *crystal*, *cucumber*, *elephant*, *elm*, *fig*, *hellebore*, *laurel*, *lettuce*, *lily*, *lion*, *mallow*, *marble*, *millet*, *mule*, *myrrh*, *oyster*, *palm*, *pard*, *peach*, *peacock*, *pear*, *pearl*, *pease*, *pepper*, *phoenix*, *pine*, *pumice*, *rue*, *sponge*, *sycamore*, *tiger*, *trout*, *turtle*, *vulture*.

(c) **Miscellaneous words** :—*Acid, anchor, axle, belt, bench, bile, butter, capital, castle, chancellor, cheese, chest, circle, city, cook, coulter, crest, crisp, crown, cymbal, ell, empire, epistle, fever, fork, gem, giant, grade, inch, metre, mile, mint, mortar, muscle, nurse, ounce, palace, philosopher, plant, plaster, plume, pound, prone, prove, provost, purple, rheum, rule, sack, school, senate, spade, table, temple, theatre, title, tunic, verse.*

3. In the *Third Period* (A.D. 1066—1480)—words introduced through the French : as, *balm, caitiff, coy, fashion, frail*. The original form of such words is better seen in *balsam, captive, quiet, faction, fragile*.

The words of this period consist of those pertaining to :—

a. **Feudalism and war** :—*Aid, armour, arms, array, assault, banner, baron, battle, buckler, captain, challenge, chivalry, constable, count, duke, equerry, esquire, fealty, fief, gallant, harness, hauberk, herald, homage, joust, lance, lieutenant, mail, march, marquis, peer, mayor, relief, scutage, scutcheon, soldier, standard, tallage, tenant, prince, tournament, trumpet, truncheon, usher, vassal, viscount, vizor, war, ward, warden.*

b. **The church** :—*Baptism, Bible, ceremony, charity, devotion, friar, homily, idolatry, interdict, penance, piety, pilgrim, prayer, relic, religion, sacrifice, scandal, sermon, tonsure.*

c. **The law** :—*Advocate, annoy, approver, arrest, assize, attorney, case, cause, chancellor, contract, court, damages, dower, estate, fee, felony, fine, judge, jury, justice, larceny, mulct, nuisance, paramount, parliament, plaintiff, plea, plead, prison, puisne, sentence, statute, sue, suit, summons, surety, tax, trespass.*

d. **The chase** :—*Bay, brace, chase, copse, couple, covert, falcon, forest, leash, leveret, mews, palfrey, quarry, rabbit, reclaim, reynard, sport, squirrel, tiercet, venison.*

e. **Domestic life** :—*Attire, aunt, beef, boil, boot, broil, chair, chamber, consort, costume, cousin, curtain, dress, furniture, garment, lace, mutton, pantry, parent, parlour, pork, salmon, sausage, spouse, sturgeon, uncle, veal, veil.*

4. In the *Fourth Period* (from A.D. 1480)—words of all kinds with little change of form.

During the period from A.D. 1480 to the present time, classical words have been profusely introduced. Even now the requirements of science and of the industrial arts lead to the adoption of new classical words—e.g., *Caloric, dentist, emigrant, locomotive, prospectus*, etc.

514. The **Greek** language has contributed many words, especially scientific terms : as, *physiology, botany, zoology, anatomy*, etc.

515. The **English** language has borrowed a vast number of miscellaneous words : as,

I. Hebrew :—*Abbey, abbot, amen, behemoth, cabal, cherub, cinnamon, ephod, gehenna, hallelujah, hosanna, Jehovah, jubilee, leviathan, manna, pharisaical, rabbi, sabbath, sapphire, seraph, shekel, shibboleth.*

II. Arabic :—*Admiral, alchemy, alcohol, alcove, alembic, algebra, alkali, almanac, amber, ambergris, amulet, arrack, arsenal, artichoke,*

assassin, atlas, attar, azimuth, bazaar, borax, cadì, caliph, camphor, candy, carat, cararan, carob (tree), chemistry cipher, civet, coffee, cotton, crimson, damask, damson, dragoman, elixir, emir, felucca, firman, gazelle, giraffe, harem, hazard, hegira, islam, jar, julep, koran, lemon, lime, lute, magazine, mameluke, mattress, minaret, mohair, monsoon, moonshee, moslem, mosque, mufti, mummy, nadir, naphtha, nard, opium, ottoman, popinjay, salaam, saffron, sandal (wood), sheik, sherbet, shrub, simoom, sirocco, sofa, sultan, syrup, tabor, talisman, tamarind, tambourine, tariff, zenith, zero.

Obs.—Many of these words from Arabic are connected with astronomy and other sciences, and were derived from the Moors in Spain.

III. Persian:—*Azure, backsheesh, balcony, barbican, bushaw, cararan, checkmate, chess, curry, derrish, emerald, hookah, howdah, indigo, jackal, jasmin, kaffir, lilac, musk, orange, paradise, pasha, pawn and rook (in chess), saraband, sash, satrap, scarlet, shawl, taffety, tiffin, tulip, turban.*

IV. Hindu:—*Banian, betel, brahmin, buggy, bungalow, calico, cassowary, chintz, coolie, cowny, dimity, durbar, jungle, lac, lascar, loot, mullagatawny, muslin, nabob, pagoda, palanquin, pariah, punch, pundit, rajah, rice, rum, rupee, sepoy, shampoo, sugar, suttee, thug, toddy.*

V. Malay:—*Amuck, bamboo, bantam, cajeput, cockatoo, creese, gamboge, gingham, gong, gutta-percha, junk, mango, mangrove, ourang-outang, rattan, sago, upas, verandah.* Polynesian:—*boomerang, kangaroo, taboo, tattoo.*

VI. Chinese:—*Bohea, caddy, congou, hyson, joss-stick, mandarin, nankeen, pekoe, satin, souchong, soy, tea.*

VII. Turkish:—*Bey, bosh, caftan, caïque, chibouk, chouse, divan, fakir, fez, janissary, khan, kiosk, odalisque, scimitar, seraglio, yashmak, yatagan.*

VIII. American:—*Alpaca, buccaneer, calumet, cannibal, canoe, caoutchouc, cayman, cocoa, condor, guano, hammock, hominy, hurricane, jerked (beef), jaguar, jalap, lama, mahogany, maize, mocassin, opossum, pampas, pemmican, potato, skunk, squaw, tapioca, tapir, tobacco, tomahawk, tomato, wampum, wigwam, yam.*

IX. Italian:—*Akimbo, alarm, alert, allegro, alto, ambassador, ambuscade, arquebuse, askance, askant, altitude, arast, bagatelle, balcony, ball, ballad, balloon, balustrade, bandit, bankrupt, banquet, bass, bassoon, bigot, biretta, boa, bosky, bravo, breve, brigade, brigand, brigantine, brocade, broccoli, bronze, brush, bubble, buffoon, burlesque, bust, buzz, cadence, cameo, cannon, canteen, canto, cape, caper, caprice, captain, caricature, carmine, carnival, cartel, cartoon, cascade, casemate, casino, cassock, castle, catafalque, caracade, charlatan, cicerone, citadel, colonnade, company, companion, comrade, conceit, concert, contralto, conversazione, cornice, corridor, cossut, cozen, crate, cupola, curvet, cutlass, despatch, dilettante, ditto, doge, domino, extracaganza, fiasco, folio, fresco, gabion, gambado, garnet, gazette, generalissimo, gondola, granite, grate, grotesque, grotto, guitar, gulf, harlequin, imbroglio, improvisatore, incognito, influenza, intaglio, inveigle, lagoon, lava, lazaretto, macaroni, madonna, madrigal, malaria, manifesto, martello, masquerade, mezzotinto, motett, motto, moustache, niche, nuncio, opera, paladin, palette, pantaloons, parapet, parasol, pedant, pedestal, pianoforte, piazza, pigeon, pilgrim, pistol, policy (insurance), porcupine, portico, proriso, punchinello, quarto,*

regatta, rocket, ruffian, scaramouch, serenade, sketch, soar, sonata, sonnet, soprano, sovereign, stanza, stiletto, stucco, studio, tenor, terrace, terracotta, tirade, torso, trombone, umbrella, vedette, vermicelli, vermilion, vertu, virtuoso, vista, volcano, zany.

Obs.—In the time of Chaucer Italian had a powerful influence on our literature. Italy had produced Dante, Petrarch and Boccaccio before a writer of distinction appeared in any other country of modern Europe. The writings of Surrey, Wyatt, Spenser, and Milton show numerous traces of the influence of Italian. Italy, too, long had the pre-eminence in architecture, music, painting, and sculpture. Hence it is that many of the words derived from Italian relate to these arts.

X. Spanish:—*Alcove, alligator, almond, armada, armadillo, barilla, barricade, battledore, bravado, cannibal, caparison, caracole, carbonado, cargo, castanet, chocolate, cigar, cochineal, cork, creole, desperado, dismay, don, duenna, el-dorado, embargo, embarrass, filibuster, filigree, flotilla, gaberdine, gala, galleon, grandee, grenade, hidalgo, jade, javelin, jennet, maroon, matador, mosquito, mulatto, negro, octoroon, olio, pamphlet, parade, peccadillo, picaroon, port, punctilio, quadroon, renegade, savannah, sherry, tornado, vanilla.*

XI. Portuguese:—*Albatross, ayah, cash, caste, cobra, cocoa-nut, commodore, fetishism, marmalade, moidore, palanquin, palaver, porcelain, tank.*

XII. French:—Words relating to :—

(a) **Literature, art, and business:** *Aperçu, attaché, ballet, belles lettres, bon mot, brochure, bureau, clef, clique, connoisseur, coup d'état, coupon, crayon, critique, cue, début, dénouement, doctrinaire, encore, esprit, façade, feuilleton, finesse, hautboy, jeu d'esprit, laissez faire, mise-en-scène, naïveté, nom de plume, nom de guerre, parlement, parvenu, persiflage, personnel, portfolio, portrait, pourparler, précis, programme, rédaction, régime, renaissance, résumé, rôle, rondeau, routine, savant, tapis, troubadour, vers de société.*

(b) **Fashion and manners:**—*A la mode, amende honorable, badinage, beau, belle, bizarre, blasé, bonbon, bonhomie, bonne, boudoir, bouquet, brusque, carte, chaise, congé, cròquet, distingué, eau de Cologne, éclat, élite, ennui, entrée, etiquette, fête, foible, mésalliance, millionnaire, le beau monde, nonchalance, outré, pas, rechauffé, recherché, roué, rouleau, sangfroid, soirée, ton, valet.*

(c) **Dress:**—*Blonde, blouse, bonnet, busk, chemise, chignon, coif, coiffure, crinoline, crochet, deshabelle, fichu, golosh, modiste, moire, paletot, peignoir, pelisse, queue, rouge, surtout, trousseau.*

(d) **Cookery:**—*Biscuit, déjeuner, diner, entrées, entremêts, fricassée, goût, menu, omelet, ragoût.*

(e) **War:**—*Aide-de-camp, bayonet, bivouac, casern, chevalier, cordon, corps, élan, émeute, epaulet, fusée, glaci, hors-de-combat, intern, manœuvre, marque (lettre de), matériel, mêlée, mitrailleuse, mobilise, parley, parole, picquet, redan, retreat, reveille, ruse, scarp, sortie, squad, tirade, tirailleur.*

(f) **Miscellaneous:**—*Accoucheur, accouchement, à propos, au fait, café, canard, chagrin, château, chef, cortège, crèche, cul de sac, débris, dépôt, dernier ressort, devoir, douceur, douche, ensemble, entourage, fracas, immortelles, lieu, penchant, prestige, protégé, rapport, rêverie, séance, soi-disant, souvenir, tête-à-tête, tic douloureux, vis-à-vis, rogue.*

XIII. Dutch :—*Block, boom, boor, bowsprit, cruise, hoy, loiter, lubber, luff, ogle, ravel, reef, ruffle, scamper, Schiedam, schooner, skates, skipper, sloop, smack, smuggle, spoor, stiver, taggail, wear (a ship), yacht.*

Obs.—These words are, for the most part, nautical and trading terms.

XIV. German :—*Cobalt, felspar, landgrave, landgravine, lansquenet, loafer, margrave, meerscham, morganatic, nickel, plunder, quartz, waltz, zinc.*

Obs.—Some compound terms are formed after the German model: as, *hand-book* *fatherland*, *folk-lore*, etc.

XV. Russian :—*Czar, drosky, knout, morse, ukase.*

XVI. Swiss :—*Dawn, dismal, fetlock, glimpse, haggie, mart.*

XVII. Walloon (N.E. France and Belgium) :—*Fester, funk, harridan.*

XVIII. Hungarian :—*Hussar, uhlan.*

XIX. Tartar :—*Caviare, mammoth, steppe.*

XX. African dialects :—*Assegai, canary, gorilla, kraal, zebra.*

XXI. Names of Persons :—*Amazon (the Amazons, a warlike nation of women in Scythia), ammonite (Jupiter Ammon), atlas (the demi-god), August (Augustus Cæsar), Bacchanalian (Bacchus, god of wine), Bluchers (Marshal Blücher), Biggin (Béguines, a French religious society), [to] boycott (Captain Boycott), braggadocio (a character in the "Faery Queen"), brougham (Lord Brougham), buhl (Boule, a French worker in ebony), [to] burke (the murderer Burke), camellia (Kamel, a Moravian Jesuit), chauvinism (Chauvin, the chief character in Scribe's "Soldat Laboureur"), chimera (Chimæra, a fabulous monster), cicerone (Cicero), cinchona (Countess del Cinchon), colt, a revolver (Colt), cravat (the Croats), dædal (Dædalus), daguerrotype (Daguerre), dahlia (Dahl, a Swede), Davy lamp (Sir Humphry Davy), dolomites (Dolomien), doyley (Doyley, the maker), draconian (Dracon, the Athenian legislator), dunce (Duns Scotus), epicure (Epicurus), filbert (St. Philibert), fuchsia (Fuchs, a German botanist), galvanism (Galvani), garibaldi, a red shirt (General Garibaldi), gordian (Gordius, king of Phrygia), [to] gorgonise (Medusa, one of the Gorgons), grimalkin (grey Malkin, Malkin being a diminutive of Mal=Mary), grog (Admiral Vernon, who wore grogram breeches), guillotine (Dr. Guillotin), hansom (Mr. Hansom), [to] hector (Hector, the Trojan chief), herculean (Hercules), hermetic (Hermes), hippocras (Hippocrates), Jacobite (Jacobus, James II.), January (Janus), jeremiad (Jeremiah), Jesuit (Jesus), jovial (Jupiter or Jove), July (Julius Cæsar), June (Junius, a Roman gens), knickerbockers (Diedrich Knickerbocker, imaginary author of Irving's "History of New York"), lazaretto (Lazarus), [to] lynch (Lynch, an American), macadamize (Macadam), mackintosh (Mackintosh, the inventor), magnolia (Magnol, a French botanist), March (Mars), maudlin (Magdalene), mausoleum (Mausolus, king of Caria), May (Maia, "the increaser"), mentor (Mentor, guide of Telemachus), mercurial (Mercury), merry Andrew (Andrew Borde, an itinerant physician), mesmerism (Mesmer, a German physician), morris-dance (the Moors), negus (Colonel Negus), nicotine (Nicot), orrery (Lord Orrery), pæan (Apollo, called Pæan=healer), paladium (Pallas), pandar (Pandarus), panic (Pan), parrot (Perrot, diminutive of Pierre=Peter), pasquinade (Pasquin, a Roman cobbler), petrel (Peter), phaeton (Phaethon), philippic (Philip, king of Macedon, against whom Demosthenes delivered orations),*

platonian (Plato), *plutonic* (Pluto), *protean* (Proteus), *punch* (Punchinello, from Pulcinello, a droll character in Neapolitan comedy), *quassia* (Quassia, a negro sorcerer of Surinam), *quixotic* (Don Quixote), *rhodomontade* (Rodomont, a Moorish hero in Boiardo and Ariosto), *samphire* (Saint Pierre = St. Peter), *sarcenet* (Saracen), *saturnine* (Saturn), *silhouette* (M. de Silhouette), *simony* (Simon Magus), *spencer* (Earl Spencer), *stentorian* (Stentor), *syringa* (Syrinx, a nymph who was changed into a reed), *tantalize* (Tantalus), *tawdry* (Saint Audry = Saint Etheldreda), *thrasonical* (Thraso), *tontine* (Tonti, an Italian), *valentine* (St. Valentine), *vernicle* (St. Veronica), *volcano* (Vulcanus), *vulcanite* (Vulcanus), *voltaic* (Volta), *wellingtons* (Duke of Wellington).

XXII. Names of Places:—*Academy* (Academia, where Plato taught), *agate* (Achates, a river in Sicily), *angora* (Angora), *Arabesque* (Arabia), *arras* (Arras), *artesian* (Artois), *attic* (Attica), *baldacchino* (Baldacco = Babylon), *bantam* (Bantam in Java), *bayonet* (Bayonne), *bedlam* (Bethlehem), *bergamot* (Bergamo in Lombardy), *bezant* (Byzantium), *bilbo* (Bilbao in Spain), *brobdignagian* (Brobdignag), *buncombe* (Buncombe in North Carolina), *calico* (Calicut), *cambric* (Cambray), *canary* (Canary Islands), *candy-tuft* (Island of Candy), *canter* (Canterbury), *carronade* (Carron in Scotland), *caryatides* (Caryæ in Laconia), *cashmere* (Cashmere), *chalcedony* (Chalcedon), *cherry* (Cerasos in Pontus), *china* (China), *copper* (Cyprus), *cypress* (Cyprus), *cordwainer* (Cordova), *currants* (Corinth), *damask* (Damascus), *damson* (Damascus), *delf* (Delft in Holland), *diaper* (Ypres in the Netherlands), *dittany* (Mount Dicte in Crete), *elysian* (Elysium), *ermine* (Armenia), *faience* (Faenza in Italy), *florin* (Florence), *fustian* (Fostel, a suburb of Cairo), *galloway* (Galloway), *gamboge* (Cambodia), *gasconade* (Gascony), *guernsey* (Guernsey), *guinea* (Guinea), *gypsy* (Egypt), *hock* (Hockheim in Germany), *indigo* (India), *italics* (Italy), *jalap* (Jalapa in Mexico), *japan* (Japan), *jersey* (Jersey), *laconic* (Laconia), *landau* (Landau in Bavaria), *liliputian* (Liliput), *lockram* (Loc-renan in Brittany), *lumber* (Lombardy), *meander* (Mæander, a river in Asia Minor), *magnesia* (Magnesia in Thessaly), *magnet* (Magnesia in Thessaly), *majolica* (Majorca), *malmsey* (Malvasia in the Morea), *malvoisie* (Malvasia in Thessaly), *mantua* (Mantua in Italy), *milliner* (Milan), *morocco* (Morocco), *muslin* (Mosul), *nankeen* (Nankin), *palace* (Mons Palatinus in Rome), *palatine* (Mons Palatinus in Rome), *parchment* (Pergamos), *peach* (Persia), *pheasant* (Phasis, a river of Colchis), *pistol* (Pistoja near Florence), *port* (Oporto), *quince* (Cydon, a town of Crete), *rhubarb* (the Rha or Volga), *sardonic* (Sardinia), *savoy* (Savoy), *shallot*, from Fr. *eschalotte* (Ascalon), *sherry* (Xeres), *solecism* (Soli in Cilicia), *spaniel* (Spain), *stoic* (Stoa Pœcile, a portico at Athens), *swede* (Sweden), *tarantula* (Tarentum), *tobacco* (Tobago), *turkey* (Turkey), *tweed* (Tweed), *utopian* (Utopia), *worsted* (Worsted in Norfolk).

516. Before the Norman Conquest there were two dialects, the Northern and the Southern, the latter being the literary language. After the Conquest the dialects became more marked, and in the thirteenth and fourteenth century we find three:—

1. *Northern*, spoken in Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, and the Scottish Lowlands.

2. *Middle*, spoken in the midland and East Anglian counties and in those west of the Pennine Chain (Cumberland, Westmoreland, Lancashire, and Shropshire).

3. *Southern*, spoken in the counties south of the Thames, in Somersetshire, Gloucestershire, and in parts of Herefordshire and Worcestershire.

517. As the midland dialect was very widely diffused it had various local forms, of which the most marked were the Eastern Midland and the Western Midland. In the beginning of the thirteenth century, it was cultivated as the literary dialect. Wicliffe, Gower, and Chaucer wrote in it. Thus it gradually became the standard language.

518. The various **Stages of the English language** are :—

First Stage, 449—1100. In this period the grammar was synthetic.

1. Nouns and adjectives possessed grammatical gender.
2. Nouns had at least three declensions and five cases (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative or instrumental).
3. The definite article was inflected.
4. Pronouns had a dual number (*wit*, we two ; *git*, ye two).
5. The infinitive of verbs ended in *an*, the dative infinitive in *anne* (*enne*), and only the dative infinitive was preceded by *to*.
6. The present or incomplete participle ended in *ende*, and the passive participle had the prefix *ge*. Both participles were declined as adjectives.

The chief works were *Beowulf*, Cædmon's *Paraphrase*, Alfred's *Translations from Bede and Boethius*, Ælfric's *Homilies*, and the earlier part of the *Saxon Chronicle*.

Second Stage, 1100—1250. The following were the principal changes :—

1. The articles *se* and *seo* were less frequently used.
2. The ablative case was disappearing.
3. Inflexions of nouns were dropping off.
4. The ending of the infinitive was changed from *an* to *e*.

The chief works were Layamon's *Brut*, Ormin's *Ormulum*, *History of King Leir*, and the closing part of the *Saxon Chronicle*.

Third Stage, 1250—1350. The following were the principal changes :—

1. The article *the* was of all genders, but had different case-endings.
2. Grammatical gender disappeared in nouns.
3. Cases were expressed by prepositions, except in the accusative.
4. The dual forms of pronouns were obsolete.
5. The infinitive was expressed by *to* as well as by the ending.
6. The ending of the dative infinitive disappeared.
7. Participles had no declension ; the ending *ende* was changed to *ing*.

The chief works were *Genesis and Exodus*, *Harlok the Dane*, Robert of Gloucester's *Chronicle of England*, and his *Lives and Legends of English Saints*, and Wicliffe's *English Bible*.

Fourth Stage, 1350—1550. The following were the principal changes :—

1. The article *the* was now of all cases and genders.
2. There was only one declension of nouns, with some irregular plurals (*feet, etc.*).

3. The accusative ending ceased.

4. The infinitive was used with *to*, and the ending dropped.

The chief writers were Longlande, who wrote *Piers Plowman*, Mandeville (*Travels*), Chaucer (*Canterbury Tales*), Gower (*Confessio Amantis*), Lydgate (*Histories of Thebes and Troy*), Caxton (*Translations, etc.*), More, Tyndale, Surrey (*Sonnets*).

Fifth Stage, 1550 to the present time. By the reign of Elizabeth, the English language had received its present shape, though many words used by Shakespeare have become obsolete, and new ones introduced as they were required by the great advancement of science and arts. Dr. Johnson brought in a Latinized style, which is only now disappearing.

Obs.—The assigning of dates to different stages is intended as a help to the memory and not as a rigid limit. The common names given to these stages are, by most philologists considered misleading, and are falling into disuse. The following list exhibits these names and those which it is proposed to substitute for them :—

| Stage. | Date. | Common Name. | New Name. |
|--------|-----------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| First | 449—1100 | Anglo-Saxon | Old English, or First English. |
| Second | 1100—1250 | Semi-Saxon | } Transition English. |
| Third | 1250—1350 | Early English | |
| Fourth | 1350—1550 | Middle English | } Modern English. |
| Fifth | 1550— | Modern English | |

Earle calls the second stage "Broken Saxon," the third "Early English," and the fourth "First national English."

QUESTIONS ON §§ 499—518.

1. How may the languages spoken in the world be divided? 2. Mention the Aryan languages. 3. Name the Hindu languages. 4. Name the Iranian languages. 5. Name the Celtic languages. 6. Name the Italian languages. 7. Name the Greek languages. 8. Name the Teutonic languages. 9. Name the Lettic languages. 10. Name the Slavonic languages. 11. What does *Aryan* mean? 12. Name European peoples not belonging to the Aryan family. 13. State Grimm's law. 14. Give examples of Grimm's law. 15. To which family of languages does the English belong? 16. Give the derivation of *England* and *English*. 17. Enumerate the settlements made by our English forefathers in this country. 18. In what respects did the First English differ from our present English? 19. What is the source of the Keltic element in English? 20. Name the periods at which Latin words have been introduced. 21. What effect had the Danish invasions on the English language? 22. What effect on the language was produced by the Norman Conquest? 23. What has been the influence on English of the advance of science and the spread of commerce? 24. How many words are there in English? 25. What kinds of words are included in the purely English element? 26. What does the Keltic element include? 27. What does the Danish element include? 28. What does the Latin element in the first period include? 29. What does the Latin element in the second period include? 30. What does the Latin element in the third period include? 31. What does the Latin element in the fourth period include? 32. What does the Greek element include? 33. Give examples of words borrowed from (1) Hebrew, (2) Arabic, (3) Persian, (4) Hindu, (5) Malay, (6) Chinese, (7) Turkish, (8) American, (9) Italian, (10) Spanish, (11) Portuguese, (12) French, (13) Dutch, (14)

German, (15) Russian, (16) Swiss, (17) Walloon, (18) Hungarian, (19) Tartar, (20) African dialects. 34. Give examples of words derived from names of persons. 35. Give examples of words derived from names of places. 36. What dialects of English were there before the Norman Conquest? 37. Name the three English dialects of the thirteenth century. 38. Which of these became the standard language. 39. Mention the periods or stages of the English language. 40. What were the characteristics of the first period? 41. Name the chief writers of the first period. 42. What were the characteristics of the second period? 43. Name the chief writers of the second period. 44. What were the characteristics of the third period? 45. Name the chief writers of the third period. 46. What were the characteristics of the fourth period? 47. Name the chief writers of the fourth period. 48. When did the English language receive its present shape? 49. What influence had Dr. Johnson on the language?

Examination Papers.

A. QUESTIONS SET TO PUPIL-TEACHERS.

First Year.

1. Parse, with syntax, the following sentence: "Many authors have written on the variety of this world, and on its incapacity to produce lasting happiness."

2. State the different kinds of nouns, and give an example of each.

3. Give the past participle of the following verbs:—*freeze, sweat, run, sleep, wind, flee*.

4. "An adjective qualifies a noun." What does this mean? Illustrate your answer by examples.

5. Which consonants are called *flats* and which are called *sharps*?

6. State the distinction between *strong* and *weak* verbs, and give the past tense and passive participles of the following verbs:—*creep, peep, teach, reach, flay, pay, slay, read, lead, tread*.

7. Give the comparative and superlative of the adjectives:—*evil, little, fore, old, sad, bad, happy, gay*.

8. Parse the following:—

Neither a borrower nor a lender be,
For loan oft loses both itself and friend.

9. Classify the following nouns:—*Queen, May, slate, captain, steam-vessel, regiment, virtue, wealth, riches, duke, Wellington, youth, wages, people, goods, news*.

10. State briefly, as if to a junior class, what you have to say about the numbers, persons, tenses, moods, and participles of any transitive verb.

11. Compare the following adjectives:—*Late, free, near, kind, fore, many, much, trustworthy, horrid*.

12. Describe the methods by which the plural of nouns is formed; illustrate by an example in each case, and introduce, if you can, nouns which we borrow directly from Greek and Latin.

13. Describe the case and declension of a noun. Give the singular and plural possessive cases of these nouns:—*Henry, Charles, princess, goose, child, father, house*.

14. Give the past tense and past participle of:—*be, go, have, bring, cling, sting*.

15. Parse:—"Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown."

16. Give an account of the infinitive mood as if you were teaching a class.

17. Give a list of adjectives which do not admit of comparison.

18. Classify adjectives, and point out the adjectives in the following lines:—

His drooping head sinks gradually low,
And from his side the red drops, cbbing slow
From the red gash, fall heavy one by one,
Like the first of a thunder show'r.

19. Parse carefully all the verbs and all the nouns in the following lines:—

Ye mariners of England,
That guard our native seas,
Whose flag has braved a thousand years
The battle and the breeze,
Your glorious standard launch again,
To match another foe.

20. Pick out, first, all the nouns, and secondly, all the adjectives, in the following sentence, and parse each of the nouns:—"Truth may be called the very basis of all that is excellent and praiseworthy in human character."

21. Parse fully all the nouns, verbs, and adjectives in the following sentence :—
 “In these sayings I have in very truth taught thee all that is enough for man to know in this nether world.”

22. There is sweet music here that softer falls
 Than petals from blown roses on the grass,
 Or night dews on still waters between walls
 Of shadowy granite in a gleaming pass ;
 Music that gentlier on the spirit lies
 Than tired eye-lids upon tired eyes.

(a) Name the prepositions in the above, and show between what nouns each preposition shows the relation.

(b) Parse each word in the last two lines of the above.

(c) What is the more usual mode of comparing “gently,” and what is the rule for the comparison of adverbs?

23. Distinguish between personal and demonstrative pronouns. Name the personal pronouns.

24. For he to-day that sheds his blood with me
 Shall be my brother; be he ne’er so vile
 This day shall gentle his condition.

Parse all the nouns and adverbs in the above.

25. Mention pronouns that are used both adjectively and substantively. Give examples of their use in each capacity.

26. In what respects do prepositions resemble conjunctions, and in what respects are they distinguished from conjunctions?

27. I walked *about*, *admired* of *all* and *dreaded*
 On hostile ground, *none* daring my *affront*.
 Then *swoll’n* with pride into the snare I *fell*.

Analyse the above, parsing the words in italics.

28. What is the ordinary ending of past participles of (a) strong verbs, (b) weak or regular verbs?

Illustrate your answer from the above passage.

29. The affix *-ing* may indicate (1) a present participle ; (2) a verbal noun ; (3) an adjective. Write out three sentences, introducing the word “daring” in each of these uses.

Second Year.

1. Mention as many as you can of the pure English prefixes.
2. Mention the defective, auxiliary, and impersonal verbs.
3. What consonants are called *labials* (or lip-letters)?
4. Classify pronouns and illustrate each class by examples.
5. Comment on the expressions *abcd*, *in two*, *at large*, *betimes*, *to-day*.
6. Parse the pronoun *what* in the sentence “I do what is just,” and also parse the two verbs *do* and *is*.
7. Give a list of adverbs which, besides an adverbial, have a conjunctive force, and illustrate their use by sentences.
8. Explain fully and clearly the force of prepositions, and illustrate your explanation by sentences.
9. “And everyone to rest themselves betake.” “I have heard from my father that is in America.” Are the foregoing sentences inaccurate, and if so, why?
10. Parse carefully the following :—“The more you learn, the more likely you are to become a wise man.”
11. Classify adverbs, and give an instance of an adverb of each class.
12. “A preposition can connect the noun which follows it only with a noun, a verb, or an adjective.” Show that you understand this by writing three short sentences in illustrating it.
13. Give a list of the *relative* pronouns, and explain the name. Decline *who*, and give all the forms in which it is compounded.
14. With what other parts of speech can adverbs combine? Write three short sentences, showing the adverb combined with other parts of speech.
15. Parse the following passage :—“Sir Roger was no sooner dressed than he called for a glass of the Widow Ruby’s water, which he told me he always drank before he went abroad. We then set out together.”
16. Give a list of participles most commonly used as prepositions.
17. Parse, with syntax :—“The fall from riches to poverty, as it commonly occasions the most real distress to the sufferer, so it seldom fails to excite the most sincere commiseration in the spectator.”

18. Parse the following :—

Give thy thoughts no tongue,
Nor any unproportioned thought his act.

19. Explain any difference of sense in the use of the preposition "of" in the following sentence :—"The son of Philip, Alexander, a youth of great promise, was one of the officers."

20. Parse the following :—

Enough for me,
With joy I see
The different dooms our fates assign.

21. Clear *had the day been* from the dawn,
All chequered was the sky,
Their clouds like scarfs of cobweb lawn
Veiled heaven's most glorious eye.
The wind had no more strength than this,
That leisurely it blew
To make *one leaf the next to kiss*
That closely by it grew.

(a) Say in your own words what this passage means.

(b) Parse the words printed in italics.

(c) Analyse the second passage, from the fifth to the eighth line.

22. Correct, if needful, these sentences, and give reasons for your correction :—

That is the best of the two.
He is a stronger man than me.
Whom did you say it was?

23. What are the exact meanings of these words, and of their parts :—*Impose, interpose, expose, repose, depose, and suppose*?

24. As with the force of winds and waters *pent*
When mountains tremble, *those two* massy *pillars*
With horrible convulsions *to and fro*
He *tugg'd*, he shook, *till down* they came and *drew*
The whole roof after *them*.

Analyse the above, parsing the words in italics.

25. From what language are the noun-ending *-ance*, and the adjective-ending *-ive* derived? Give instances of each, and state what meanings those terminations give to words.

26. Paraphrase the following :—

I dare do all that may become a man ;
Who dares do more, is none.

Third Year.

1. Which consonants are *labials* (lip-letters), and which are *dentals* (tooth-letters)?

2. Give a careful classification of conjunctions, and illustrate by examples.

3. Parse and analyse :—"I pray thee, Launce, and if thou see my boy, bid him make haste."

4. "He was idle, therefore he did not succeed." State whether you consider *therefore* in this case as an adverb or a conjunction, and your reason for doing so.

5. Parse fully the following sentence :—"I do not much care whether he go or stay."

6. Analyse the following sentence :—"Know thou this truth, enough for man to know : virtue alone is happiness below."

7. Give a list of pure conjunctions which are never used as prepositions or as adverbs. Also give a list of phrases serving as conjunctions.

8. Give examples of co-ordinate and of dependent sentences.

9. In the sentence "The sun and moon shine," show that the conjunction does more than merely couple the two nouns.

10. Parse and analyse the sentence :—"I told him that he was mistaken if ever man was."

11. Write a sentence containing a co-ordinate conjunction, and a second sentence containing a subordinate conjunction.

12. Explain the terms *subject* and *predicate* ; also write a sentence showing an enlargement of the subject and an extension of the predicate.

13. Parse and analyse :—" If this be good nature, let me always be a churl."
 14. Comment fully on the word *than*. State what part of speech you take it for, and give your reasons ; also illustrate what you say by sentences.
 15. Parse and analyse :—" Love is the fulfilling of the law ; and, therefore, if a man hate another, he sins against the law."
 16. What letters in the alphabet are sibilants ?
 17. Explain and analyse the following passage :—

It is the first mild day of March ;
 Each minute sweeter than before,
 The redbreast sings from the tall larch,
 That stands beside our door.

18. Define *subordinative conjunctions*, and explain and illustrate their use.
 19. Parse, and afterwards analyse, the following sentence :—" In outward things I will look to those that are beneath me, that, if I must build myself out of others, I may rather raise content than murmur."
 20. Take the words, *dignity*, *regal*, *restless*, and *submit*. Explain the meaning of their parts, and give examples of other words formed in the same way.
 21. Make a complex sentence, containing an adjective sentence and an adverbial sentence, besides the principal ; and show by example the difference between a sentence and a phrase.
 22. Parse the sentence :—

I had as lief not be, as live to be
 In awe of such a thing as I myself.

Explain the two different uses of the word "be" in this sentence.

23. But when, *from* under this terrestrial ball,
 He fires the proud tops of the eastern pines,
 And darts his light in every guilty hole,
 Then murders, treasons, and detested sins,
 The cloak of night being plucked from off their backs,
 Stand bare and naked.

Analyse the foregoing passage, parsing the word in italics.

24. Pick out ten words of English origin in the passage, and explain the derivation of any of them.
 25. What is the prefix in each of the following words :—Append, illegal, allude, co-heir, suggest, effect, deacon ?

Fourth Year.

1. Give a sentence with an infinitive as subject.
 2. Describe the Spenserian stanza.
 3. Make out a table of adjectives formed from nouns, classified according to the way in which they are formed.
 4. Classify the three *flat* consonants, *b*, *d*, and *g*, and the three *sharp* consonants, *p*, *t* and *k*, as dentals, gutturals, and labials.
 5. Parse and analyse :—" Hannibal's manoeuvre made him change his route, so that he was forced to keep the lake on his right."
 6. *Different*, *assign*, *despair*. Show the Latin prefixes in these words, with their meaning.
 7. Classify the letters of the English alphabet as fully as you can.
 8. Write sentences, one containing a noun clause, a second containing an adjective clause, and a third containing an adverbial clause.
 9. Point out the historical order in which the component parts of the English language were severally incorporated with it.
 10. Give the plurals of *ape*, *automaton*, *bandit*, *cherub* ; and give the feminine of *fox*, *testator*, *hero*, *marquis*, *traitor*.
 11. Parse and analyse :—

From that bleak tenement
 He, many an evening to his distant home
 In solitude returning, saw the hills
 Grow larger in the distance.

12. The Latin word *pono* means " I place." Explain the literal force of the following words :—*Opposition*, *compose*, *depose*, *dispose*, *expose*, *impose*, *interpose*, *oppose*, *preposition*, *postpone*, *propose*, *suppose*, *superposition*, *repository*, *transpose*.

13. Parse with syntax, and scan the following passage :—

Though now no more the musing ear
Delights to listen to the breeze
That lingers o'er the greenwood shade,
I love thee, winter, well.

14. Parse, and afterwards analyse, the following :—

To reign is worth ambition though in hell :
Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.

15. Parse, and afterwards analyse, the following lines :—

Not enjoyment, and not sorrow,
Is our destined end or way,
But to act, that each to-morrow
Find us further than to-day.

16. Parse and analyse the following lines :—

Here, on this delightful day,
I cannot choose but think
How oft a vigorous man I lay
Beside this water's brink

17. Explain the following words with special reference to their prefixes :—*Amputate, compact, counteract, dilate, occur, presume.*

18. The infinitive is sometimes called the substantive mood. Explain this, and give some sentences in which the infinitive is equal to a noun.

19. Take the two Latin verbs *scribo* and *verto*, and give as many English derivatives from them as you can, with the meaning of each.

20. Analyse this sentence :—

In the golden lightning
Of the sunken sun,
O'er which clouds are brightening,
Thou dost float and run,
Like an unbodied joy whose race is just begun.

21. What is meant by the "Revival of Learning" in England? Say when it happened, and what effect it had on the English language.

22. The *manner, circumstances, and conclusion* of that voyage, with the rare accidents which happened in it, will *no doubt* be *at large remembered* by *whosoever* shall have the courage to write the transactions of that time with *that integrity* he *ought to do* : in *which* it will manifestly appear, *how much* of the prophet was in the wisdom of the king.

Analyse the above passage, parsing the words in italics.

23. Make a list of the words in the above derived from Latin roots.

24. So where a *ship well freighted* with the stores
The sun *matures* on *India's* spicy shores,
Has *dropped* her anchor and her canvas *furled*
In some safe haven of the Western world,
'Twere vain *inquiry* to *what* port she went,
The gale informs us, *laden* with the scent.

Analyse the foregoing lines, parsing the words in italics.

25. What is the root of the following words :—Museum, royal, instruction, imperial, exaggerate, patriot, amiable, union?

26. How was the English language affected by the Norman Conquest?

B. QUESTIONS SET TO CANDIDATES FOR ADMISSION INTO TRAINING COLLEGES.

1. To which parts of speech do the following words belong :—*Yes, no, whence, whereof, ill, well, godly, only, alone, but, less, more, how, why, wherefore?*

2. What are the rules for the comparison of adjectives? Explain the forms *inmost, utmost, former, foremost, nearest, next, farther, further.*

3. Enumerate the different kinds of Pronouns. Decline such pronouns as admit of declension.

4. "I sometimes even improved upon the hints he furnished." Is this a complete construction? If not, complete it; parse whatever you insert, and give the name of the grammatical figure which denotes the omission of words.

5. Which of the parts of speech have the effect of abbreviating language? Give examples.

6. Explain the real use of the conjunction. Classify conjunctions.

7. What kind of verbs can be used in the passive voice, and what kind cannot? Give a reason for this.

8. Explain the terms *subject*, *object*, *predicate*. Give examples.

9. What is meant in grammar by the term *inflection*? Show that nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and adverbs admit of inflection.

10. What Latin prepositions enter into the words *surprised*, *extraordinary*, *extra-dition*, and what is the English of these prepositions?

11. At what period did the English language assume nearly its present form?

12. Explain what is meant by *rhyme* and what by *metre*.

13. Classify adverbs, giving examples of each class.

14. Give examples of English words which are derived from (1) Latin, (2) French, (3) Greek. Whence do we get the words *muslin*, *sofa*, *tea*, *sherry*?

15. Give a list of English pronouns.

16. Name the different kinds of verbs, and state what is meant by the terms *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *number*, and *person* when applied to verbs. Enumerate our principal auxiliary verbs.

17. Give the meanings of the following Latin prepositions, and exemplify them by English compound words in which they occur—viz., *ad*, *de*, *pro*, *præter*, *sub*, *supra*, *ante*, *post*, *inter*, *extra*.

18. Write a brief account of the sources and growth of the English language.

19. What are the comparatives and superlatives of *many*, *red*, *old*, *barren*, *interesting*, *heavy*, *indifferent*, *tidy*, *low*, and *sad*?

20. Account historically for the presence of so many words of foreign origin in the English language.

21. Enumerate the most usual English prefixes, and illustrate their meaning by examples.

22. Write out the following words, so as to mark (by hyphens) the root and the affix or prefix. Draw a line in each case under the root.

Neighbour, *vigorous*, *profession*, *experiment*, *obtained*, *conversation*, *occasionally*, *sinewy*.

23. Classify the letters of the alphabet.

24. What is a preposition, and what case do English prepositions govern?

25. Give the various rules for the formation of the plural of nouns, with illustrative examples.

26. How do you distinguish between adverbs and conjunctions, adverbs and prepositions, adverbs and adjectives?

27. What are participles, and to what uses are they applied in the formation of sentences?

28. Give instances of the employment of adverbial and prepositional phrases, and classify them according to their meaning.

29. Parse the words in italics in the following passage, not omitting to give and explain their syntax, and carefully distinguishing the words which occur twice over :—

For therein stands the office of a *King*,
His honour, *virtue*, merit, and chief praise,
That for the public *such* a weight he bears.
Yet he who reigns *within himself*, and rules
Passions, desires, and fears, is *more* a *King*.
Which every wise and virtuous man attains :
And who *attains* not, ill *aspires* to rule
Cities of men or headstrong multitudes,
Subject *himself* to anarchy *within*,
Or lawless passions in *him*, which he serves.

30. Analyse the passage (in 29) into its component sentences, and show in separate columns :—

(a) The nature of the sentence : (b) (If dependent) its relation to the principal sentence : (c) Subject : (d) Its enlargements (if any) : (e) Predicate : (f) Extensions (if any) : (g) Object (if any) : (h) Its enlargements (if any).

31. Of the fifteen nouns in the above passage (question 29), nine are of Anglo-Saxon, eight of Latin, and two of Greek origin. Classify them accordingly. About which word only may there be a difference of opinion, and why?

32. Make a list of the auxiliary verbs, distinguishing those of mood from those of tense.

33. Give examples of English words in which differences of (a) case, (b) number, (c) gender, (d) degree, (e) mood, (f) tense, (g) voice, are indicated by changes in the form of the word itself (inflection).

34. Point out the historical order in which the several foreign elements were incorporated into the English language. During what period did English seem to be dying out, and under what circumstances and influences did it revive?

35. Parse the words in italics in the following passage, not omitting to give and explain their syntax :—

I *met* a traveller from an antique land,
Who said : Two vast and trunkless legs of stone
 Stand in the Desert. † Near *them*, on the sand,
Half-sunk, a shattered visage lies, *whose* frown
 And wrinkled lip and sneer of cold command,
Till that the sculptor well those passions *read*
Which still survive, *stamped* on these lifeless things,
 The hand *that* mocked them, and the *heart* that *fed* :
 And on the pedestal these words appear :—
 “ My name is Ozymandias, *King* of kings,
 Look on my works, ye mighty, and *despair* !”
Nothing *beside* remains. *Round* the decay
 Of *that* colossal wreck, *boundless* and bare
 The lone and level sands *stretch* far away.

36. Analyse either the first or the last half of the above passage into its component sentences (as in question 30).

37. Examine and illustrate the etymology of any five of the following words from the above sonnet :—Traveller, visage, passions, survive, despair, level, boundless, lone, decay, colossal, desert, lip, pedestal.

38. Show by definition and examples what is meant by (a) substantive, (b) intransitive, (c) passive, (d) defective, (e) strong (irregular), and (f) weak (regular) verbs. To which of the two last-named classes would you refer the verbs *to lead*, *to spread*, *to show*, *to sweep*, *to spend*, and why?

39. Give your definition of an adverb, a preposition, and a conjunction, and show by examples the difference between each of them and the other two. Can you mention any words belonging to these three classes which cannot be parsed without knowing their position in a sentence?

40. Give a short historical sketch, with dates, of the origin and growth of the English language.

C. QUESTIONS SET TO FIRST YEAR STUDENTS IN TRAINING COLLEGES.

1. Parse the following sentences and be careful to give in full the syntax of the prepositions, conjunctions, and pronouns :—“ For all of us have it in our choice to do everything that a good man would desire to do ; and are restrained from nothing but what would be pernicious either to ourselves or our fellow-citizens.”

2. In what cases is the sign of the infinitive mood omitted?

3. Give the etymology and etymological meaning of *explain*, *protect*, *enforce*, *absolute*, *rights*, *simple*, *relative*, *connections*, *complicated*.

4. What is the general meaning of the terminations *ive*, *tion*, *an*, *wise*, *al*, *ty*, *ous*? Give instances of each.

5. In how many different ways may the word *that* be parsed? Give examples, with a full explanation of each.

6. Make a list of the Saxon prefixes which occur before verbs, with their meanings.

7. With what verbs are the following nouns connected by derivation :—*bliss*, *girth*, *latch*, *share*, *woof*, *ditch*, *hilt*, *thrift*, *toll*, *dole*, *ruth*?

8. Name the different kinds of adjectives, and assign each of the following to its proper class—viz., *this*, *yonder*, *such*, *much*, *every*, *great*, *heavy*, *wise*, *wonderful*, *twenty*, *twentieth*.

9. Explain the meaning, formation, and derivation of each of the following words, and distribute them under the heads of (a) derivatives, and (b) compound words—viz., *enrich*, *outrun*, *magnify*, *whiten*, *otherwise*, *homeward*, *ditch*, *braveheart*, *gainsay*, *manuscript*, *homœopathy*, *rendezvous*, *kneedeep*, *diameter*, *catastrophe*, *parseproud*.

10. Give the rules of syntax as to the number of the verb, (a) when the subject consists of one or more persons or things (distinguishing the different combinations); (b) when the subject is a collective noun. Give examples of each rule.

11. Give a classified list of the auxiliary verbs in the English language.

12. State, and show by examples, what words or combinations of words may form the subject of a sentence.

13. Give examples of English words in which differences of (a) number, (b) gender, (c) person, (d) case, (e) mood, and (f) tense, are marked by changes in the *form* of the word.

14. Furnish a classified list of the compound pronouns.

15. Name the auxiliaries of mood and conjugate them.

16. Enumerate the points and marks used in written and printed language.

17. Comment on the words *than*, *but*, and *that* in all their various uses, with examples.

18. For what purpose do English verbs change their form? What is mood? Name the several moods, and give their distinctive meanings.

19. Conjugate the verb "to strike" in the passive voice, giving the infinitive, imperative, and potential moods, and the participles.

20. Give some general rules for the order in which parts of speech are to be placed, relatively to each other, in an English sentence.

21. Parse and analyse the following:—

In vain the sage, with retrospective eye,
Would from the apparent what conclude the why,
Infer the motive from the deed, and show
That what we chanced was what we meant to do.

22. Parse and analyse the following:—

Inmeasurable strength they might behold
In me, of wisdom nothing more than mean;
This with the other should, at least, have pair'd,
These two proportioned ill drove me transverse.

23. What is meant by the "Nominative Absolute," "Parenthesis," and "Metaphor"?

24. Compose one or two sentences with a verb in the infinitive mood or a sentence acting as nominative to a following verb.

25. What is the perfect tense of "Methinks"? Define, with three examples of each, *Impersonal*, *Intransitive*, *Strong*, and *Weak Verbs*.

26. Distinguish between Derivation and Composition in Language; and give examples of Adjective and Adverbial Suffixes, and Verb and Adjective Compounds.

27. Give a list of verbs which have *both* the weak and the older strong form in the past tense or perfect participle. Also give instances of nouns which have two forms in the plural.

28. State the various kinds of Attributive Adjuncts which may be employed, and give instances. Also analyse the following sentence:—"If I had not seen Blondin's feat, I could not have believed but that he must fall."

29. Parse the words italicised in the following passages:—

- (a) *Hard* by a cottage chimney smokes.
- (b) There held in holy passion *still*
Forget *thyslf* to marble.
- (c) Till old experience do *attain*
To *something* like prophetic strain.
- (d) We drove *afield*, and *both together* heard
What time the gray-fly winds her sultry horn.
- (e) *What* recks it *them*? what need they? They are sped.
- (f) Blind *mouths*! that scarce *themselves* know *how* to hold
A sheephook, or have learned *ought else* the least
That to the faithful herdsman's art belongs!

30. Analyse fully the following sentences:—

- (a) Thus done the tales, to bed they creep.
- (b) If the air will not permit,
Some still removed place will fit,
Where glowing embers through the room
Teach light to counterfeit a gloom.
- (c) But, O sad Virgin, that thy power
Might raise Musæus from his bower,
Or bid the soul of Orpheus sing
Such notes as, warble to the string,
Drew iron tears down Pluto's cheek,
And made hell grant what love did seek!

(d) May at last my weary age
Find out the peaceful hermitage,
The hairy gown and mossy cell,
Where I may sit and rightly spell
Of every star that heaven doth shew
And every herb that sips the dew,
Till old experience do attain
To something like prophetic strain.

(e) Together both, ere the high lawns appeared
Under the opening eyelids of the morn,
We drove afield, and both together heard
What time the gray-fly winds her sultry horn,
Battening our flocks with the fresh dews of night,
Oft till the star that rose at evening bright,
Towards heaven's descent had sloped his westerling wheel.

31. Derive *melancholy*, *contemplation*, *counterfeit*, *twilight*, *ecstasies*, *wizard*, *primrose*, *amaranthus*.

32. Explain the force of the prefix or suffix in *yeleped*, *delude*, *bested*, *downward*, *ennobled*, *underneath*, *reanling*, *flowerets*.

33. Make a table showing the sources of our language from which you derive *heron*, *pageantry*, *matins*, *harmony*, *demure*, *cherub*, *demon*, *tourney*, *trophy*, *cloisters*, *hermitage*, *gverdon*.

34. Give the force of the metaphors in the following phrases:—"low-browed rocks," "wreathed smiles," "the chain that ties the hidden soul of harmony," "labouring clouds," "dewy feathered sleep."

D. QUESTIONS SET TO SECOND YEAR STUDENTS IN TRAINING COLLEGES.

1. What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive moods? Illustrate your answer.

2. In each of the following words, separate the root (by hyphens) from the other part, and state precisely the grammatical difference which that other part makes to the root: *Splendour*, *assume*, *moment*. Exhibit the same roots in combination with other prefixes or terminations, and state the precise change thereby occasioned in each instance.

3. Separate the root from the other parts in the following words, and show the precise effect of each of the additions:—*Unmeritable*, *slandereous*, *business*, *empty*, *valiant*, *provender*, *corporal*, *barren*, *fashion*.

4. Give the third person singular of the verb *to write* in all the forms of the tenses of the indicative mood.

5. Define an adverb and a conjunction. Mention words which are used as both one and the other, and show the points of approach and difference between these parts of speech.

6. Classify extensions of the predicate, (1) as to their form, (2) as to their subject matter.

7. What is the precise office of a preposition? Distinguish accurately between a preposition and an adverb. Have any words passed from being one to being the other? Can prepositions be compared?

8. Is the word *but* ever a preposition? Prove your answer. How may prepositions become conjunctions and *vice versa*?

9. Distinguish accurately between extensions and completions of the predicate.

10. What is antithesis?

11. Give, with any comments, the positive and comparative of *next*, *farther*, *first*, *last*, *innermost*, *atmost*.

12. Illustrate fully the usages of *that*, *but*, *as*, *all*, *either*.

13. Exemplify by sentences the various kinds of adverbial clauses.

14. Give a list of the principal terminations of English adjectives and state, where you can, the force of each termination and from what language it is taken. Illustrate by examples.

15. How do strong verbs form their past tenses, and generally also their past participles? Take as examples *blow*, *shake*, *drink*, *fight*, *creech*, *lose*. Give a list of verbs which are weak in their past tenses but strong in their past participles.

16. Give examples of the following special rules relating to the objective case, (a) Neuter verbs sometimes take an object after them; (b) Some passive verbs take an object after them; (c) Some transitive verbs take two objects after them; (d) The conjunction *than* is followed by the objective case in certain instances. Explain, as far as you can, the reason of each of these exceptional rules.

17. Give a classification of the pronouns, and show how they differ from nouns in signification, form, and position relative to words.

18. What is the rule of syntax for the government of the verb in each of the following cases? (a) When two or more singular subjects are connected by a copulative conjunction. (b) When they are connected by an alternative or adversative conjunction. (c) When they are qualified by a distributive or negative adjective. (d) When two or more alternative subjects are of different forms. (e) When, of two subjects, the one is affirmative and the other negative. Give an example of each rule laid down, and mention any exceptions that occur to you.

19. Derive the words sterling, Hallowmas, forego, caitiff, attorney, sympathy, attainder.

20. Scan the following lines :—(a) My manors, rent, revenues, I forego. (b) The badges of his grief and patience. (c) His eyes do drop no tears, his prayers are in jest. (d) And let thy blows doubly redoubled. (e) Making the hard way sweet and delectable.

21. What is peculiar in the grammatical construction of the following passages :—

- (a) Two kinsmen digged their graves with weeping eyes." *Richard II*
- (b) How camest thou by this ill tidings?
- (c) Peace shall go sleep.
- (d) Ay, no; no, ay; for I must nothing be. Therefore, no, no. *Rich II*
- (e) Vex not yourself, nor strive not with your truth.
- (f) Chasing the royal blood with fury from his native residence.

E. QUESTIONS SET AT THE MATRICULATION EXAMINATIONS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON.

1. Give three instances in which the subjunctive mood is used, and quote the rules which regulate its use.

2. Give some examples of "irregular" verbs and adjectives; and explain how the irregularity may be accounted for.

3. With what familiar English words are the following derivatives connected? *Ditch, ought, wander, should, gift, month, husband, doomsday, length, woof, huntsman, seed, burden, forlorn, shadow, mirth.*

4. Make a sentence containing a simple subject and predicate only; and add other sentences showing how subject or predicate may be enlarged by phrases or by subordinate sentences. Resolve the following sentence into its elements :—

"What seem'd his head
The likeness of a kingly crown had on."

5. Make a list of English pronouns, classifying them according to the system which you prefer. Point out any examples of true inflexion which your list contains.

6. Define *inflexion* in grammar. Show what classes of words admit of the most varied inflexion, and what classes of words are incapable of it. Comment also on the inflexion of the following words :—*Geese, pence, vixen, what, brethren, eldest, whom, could, did, themselves, stricken, worse, kept, ought.*

7. What is a Relative Pronoun? Make a table of English Relatives, and mention any words derived from them. Quote the rules for their concord and government, and give examples.

8. To what use do we put the verb *to be* in the English language?

9. Give some examples in English of compound words. How may such words be classified?

10. Explain fully how number and person are indicated in English verbs.

11. Discuss the following forms :—*Are, wert, could, methinks, durst, ought, distraught.*

12. Explain fully the various uses and constructions of *but, than, and as* respectively.

13. When is *that*, as a relative, preferable to *which*?

14. How are conjunctions most conveniently classified? Do they connect sentences only, or words also? Justify your answer.

15. Give the exact force of the following prefixes and affixes : *Man-hood, spin-ster, wof, sea-m, slav-ish, tire-some, spark-le, mis-give, for-get, with-stand, be-troth, innocent, n-ever.*

16. Give the past and perfect tenses of *sit, sew, shrink, thrive, lend, run, lead, lie, set, lay, swing, scethe*; and give the past tense of the following :—"I dare do all that may become a man;" and "I ought to know."

17. Conjugate the future tense of any verb, and give a rule for the use of *shall* and *will* in future forms. What are *indefinite* forms of a tense? and what *continuous*?

18. Distinguish adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions ; and classify them.
19. How are English plurals formed ? Give examples of anomalous and of obsolete formations. Give instances of nouns that vary their meaning with their number.
20. Point out the difference between an adverb and a conjunction ; and give examples of words used both as adverbs and conjunctions. What adverbs take degrees of comparison ?
21. Parse the following sentences :—(1) “The Lord hear thee in the day of trouble ;” (2) “They gave him such a reception as gratified him, and such an answer as he wished to receive.”
22. Give the plural forms of *brother, cargo, valley, strife, seraph, virtuoso, madame, memorandum, fish, penny, vesper, Mr. Thomson, yea*. Comment on the forms which violate the common rules.
23. Give the past tense and the complete participle of *lie down, lay, freight, hide, shear, saw, sow, see, sit, set, put, bid*.
24. Take the forms *man, fer (fero)*, and *graph (grapho)* ; add as many prefixes and affixes as you can, giving the force of each.
25. Into what two parts may every simple and complex sentence be divided ? How many enlargements and extensions does each part admit ?
26. Give rules for English punctuation.
27. What is *than* after a comparative, and by what case is it followed ? Criticize the following :—“Than whom none higher sat.”—*Milton*.
28. What tense-forms have we in English for calling attention to the continuousness of an act ? What are indefinite forms ? And what are emphatic forms ?
29. What affixes are used in English to express diminutiveness (*a*) in nouns, (*b*) in adjectives, and (*c*) in verbs ? Give affixes that indicate an agent, a state, and a place.
30. How are compounds and derivatives distinguished ?
31. What are correlative conjunctions ? Give the correlatives of *either, though, both*, and of *such* and *so* with different senses.
32. Append the appropriate prepositions to the following : *Independent, difference, agree, averse, dissent, correspond, conformable*.
33. In what different ways are objective cases governed in English ?
34. Explain the following constructions :—“Is the news true ?” “The people are divided.” “Every limb and every feature appears with its appropriate grace.” “Justice, as well as benevolence, is our rule.”
35. What is the meaning of adjective-endings in *er* ? Give a list of irregular superlative forms.
36. Show the relationship of English to other languages of the Indo-European family.
37. Explain the formation of the comparative and superlative in the adjectives *good, bad, much, little, far, and near*.
38. Distinguish between *which* and *that* as relatives.
39. “Duncan comes here to-night.” Explain the use of the present indefinite in this sentence. What other distinct forms of thought can be expressed in English by the use of the same tense ?
40. Tell the history of the use of *to* before a verb in the infinitive ; and discuss the difference of usage in such phrases as “I dare say ;” and “I ought to say.”
41. Explain peculiarities in conjugation of the verbs *be, go, ought, must*.
42. Distinguish between “I think” and “Methinks.” What is the grammatical structure of each of the following phrases ?—“The self-same day ;” “Many a day ;” “A house to let ;” “Lady-Day ;” “To wit ;” “By rights ;” “Forty pounds a year ;” “A few things.”
43. What do you understand by “Gender” in grammar ? Show how your definition applies to each of these words :—*Aunt, Sempstress, She, That, Man-servant, Testatrix, Mistress, Heroine, Margravine*.
44. What is apposition ? Give some examples, and enunciate any rules which they respectively illustrate.
45. Explain the precise signification of the words *it* and *there* in the sentences :—It rains ; It is he ; I struck it with a sword ; There lived a man ; Are there many in the room ? There, at the foot of yonder nodding beech ; Go there as fast as possible ; Is it not we that are in fault ?
46. Take the following adjectives and convert them, by the help of prefixes or suffixes, into verbs :—*Large, just, humble, strong, wide* ; and take the following verbs and convert them into nouns :—*Sow, sew, dig, weave, compel, receive, think*. Explain in each case the law of formation, and give other examples of it.
47. Give rules for the right use of the Subjunctive in English, with examples.
48. Discuss and illustrate the conditions of Perfect Rhyme.
49. Explain the suffixes in the words *hillcock, hemlock, wedlock, knowledge, freedom, fellowship* ; and account for the vowel in the first syllable of the words *kitten, vixen, thimble*.

50. What is meant by the Infinitive Mood of a verb? Distinguish between Gerund and Participle.

51. Give the Rules of Syntax which concern the use of Pronouns.

52. What foreign ingredients are to be found in our English vocabulary? Account historically for their presence.

53. State Grimm's Law, and give some illustrations of it.

54. Give some examples (1) of irregular comparison in adjectives, (2) of double superlatives, (3) of the use of the historical present.

55. Trace the derivation of the words *strength*, *wrought*, *west*, *wealth*, *uncouth*, *songstress*, *twain*, *drench*, *methinks*, *ought*, *vixen*, *farthing*.

56. Give some rule for determining the case of a relative pronoun in an English sentence, and cite some examples.

57. What is Grammar, and why is it so named?

58. Define each of the Parts of Speech.

59. Explain the terms Declension, Conjugation, Case, Mood, Tense, Participle, Gerund, and illustrate each by an example.

60. Explain the origin and force of the terminations *-fy*, *-ize*, *-ty*, *-head*, *-th*, *-est*, *-ness*, and give illustrations showing to what parts of speech words having these endings respectively belong.

61. Explain the syntax of the following sentences, with special reference to the words in italics :—

62. He was paid a *shilling*. I taught him *Latin*. We walked twenty *miles*. That is a horse of *mine*. It grieves me to hear this. *Who* runs may read.

"There is no man here
But honours you."

63. Give examples showing how the predicate of a sentence may be modified (1) by a word, (2) by a phrase, (3) by a subordinate sentence.

64. Give examples of Correlative words in English, and some sentences illustrative of their proper use.

65. What is the force of *-en* and of *-er* as terminations,—in nouns, in adjectives, and in verbs?

66. In what classes of terms, and among what parts of speech, do we find the largest proportion of purely English words? How do you account for the presence in our vocabulary of so many words of foreign origin?

67. Write out a list of Prefixes, distinguishing those of English from those of Latin origin. Cite some examples of hybridism in English words.

68. Put the following phrases into sentences, and give a reason for the construction which you employ :—"As good as I;" "As good as me;" "Wiser than he;" "Wiser than him;" "Than whom;" "A friend of my brother's;" "All but her;" "Many a man;" "You and I;" "You and me."

69. What do you know of words terminating as follows, (1) as to the part of speech to which they belong, (2) as to the language from which they are derived? *-ful*; *-ize*; *-en*; *-ible*; *-ness*; *-ty*; *-ous*; *-ar*; *-ory*; *-tion*; *-fy*; *-ling*; *-less*; *-isk*.

70. Analyse :—

Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise,
That last infirmity of noble mind,
To scorn delights and live laborious days :
But the fair guerdon when we hope to find,
And think to burst out into sudden blaze,
Comes the blind Fury with the abhorred shears
And slits the thin-spun life.

71. By the help of Suffixes, convert the following Adjectives into Nouns :—*Sweet*, *humble*, *wise*, *broad*, *pure*, *perfect*; and the following Nouns into Adjectives :—*Snow*, *grace*, *brother*, *sense*, *fool*, *wood*. Give two examples of each formation, and state to what language each affix belongs.

72. Parse and analyse the sentence :—

What thou biddest,
Unargued I obey.

73. Take the following forms, and state from them the rules for forming English plurals :—*men*, *kine*, *churches*, *animalcula*, *sons-in-law*.

74. In what cases are the several words italicized?—This cost five *shillings*. He was offered a *pension*. He died as a *Christian*. He lived a *saint*. "And all the air a solemn *stillness* holds." The investment yielded me large profit.

75. Place each of the following phrases in a sentence of your own construction, so as to illustrate the way in which it may be properly used :—"Better than he;" "Better than him;" "Than whom;" "And which;" "As good as I;" "As good as me;" "The wiser man;" "Would that;" "Sixty head,"

76. Take the following sentence, and arrange in three groups the words of Saxon, Greek, and Latin origin, respectively: give fully the derivation of the words italicized :—

Not *second* he, who rode *sublime*
 Upon the seraph wings of *ecstasy*
 The *secret* of the abyss to spy.
 He passed the flaming bounds of place and time,
 The living throne, the sapphire blaze,
 Where angels tremble while they gaze,
 He saw ; but, blasted with excess of light,
 Closed his eyes in endless night.

77. Define the meaning of the following grammatical terms, and give examples of their use :—"Relative;" "Transitive;" "Predicate;" "Infinitive;" "Apposition."

78. State the origin and describe the force of the following Prefixes and Suffixes respectively :—*Re-*, *-ness*, *-kin*, *for-*, *-tion*, *dis-*, *-our*, *pre-*, *-ster*, *sub-*, *pur-*, *-full*.

79. Correct or justify the following phrases, and in each case give your reasons :—

- (1) Let each esteem other better than themselves. *Richard II*
- (2) Are either of these men your friend?
- (3) It is not me who he is in love with.
- (4) Who shall I give it to?
- (5) They will never believe but what I have been to blame.
- (6) Neither precept nor discipline are so forcible as example.
- (7) The thunder was heard roll over our heads.
- (8) I am verily a man who am a Jew.
- (9) Extravagance as well as parsimony are to be avoided.

80. Correct or justify the following, adding in each case your reason :—

"Of which doctrine we assert that no teaching can so certainly deaden spiritual life."

"Of all others he is the ablest writer they have."

"He is arrived."

"I knew it to be he."

"The Thames is derived from the Latin *Tamesis*."

"Every thought and feeling are opposed to it."

"Milton seems to have been well acquainted with his own genius, and to know what it was nature had bestowed on him."

"Men all slept sound save she who loved them both."

81. Discuss the correctness of the following sentences :—

- (1) His worship and strength is in the clouds.
- (2) Neither Charles nor William were there.
- (3) Good order and not mean savings produce great profit.
- (4) The two first boys in the class.
- (5) Alfred, than whom never wiser prince governed England
- (6) Whether you will or no.
- (7) He does not know but what it is true.
- (8) Are either of those horses yours?
- (9) He went away all of a sudden.
- (10) It was thought to be he.

82. Write down the words in the Lord's Prayer which are not of Saxon origin.

83. Correct or justify the following, stating in each case your reasons. Parse (c), (m), and (n).

- (a) Let each esteem other better than themselves.
- (b) Nobody said so but him.
- (c) He had liked to have been drowned.
- (d) The fact of me being a minor cannot matter.
- (e) He was scarce gone when you came.
- (f) He has eaten no food nor drunk no wine this two days.
- (g) Who should I meet to-day but him you are talking of?
- (h) Will that be all you want?
- (i) My "Lives of the Poets" are reprinting.
- (k) He or you are in the wrong.
- (l) Nor want nor cold his course delay.
- (m) What and if I did?
- (n) Many a day.

84. Correct or justify the following, giving in each case your reason :—

(a) How beautiful must be
The God that made so good a thing as thee !

- (b) There are many ways of dressing a calve's head.
(c) You must either be quiet or must leave the room.
(d) The Muses sung before the throne of Jupiter.
(e) Thoughts are only criminal when they are first chosen and then voluntarily continued.

(f) And when he was set he opened his mouth and taught.

(g) You did not ought to go.

(h) I called upon him, and wished to have submitted my MS. to him.

85. Correct or justify the following sentences, and give in each case your reason :—

- (1) It is most likely that neither of these are the correct version.
(2) This man and that man was born there.
(3) In modern English two negatives destroy one another.
(4) Every one has their faults.
(5) The admiration of this poem was unanimous.
(6) The boats were drawn ashore, having first taken out the cargo.
(7) He trusted to have equalled the Most High.
(8) The Duke of Wellington is not one of those who interferences with matters over which he has no control.
(9) We know little individually of his hearers.

86. Explain fully the formation of plurals in English. Give examples (1) of words that have two plurals; (2) of plurals which have no singular. How is the plural formed of words compounded (1) of two nouns; (2) of a noun and an adjective; (3) of a noun and a participle; (4) of a noun and a verb?

87. How is a word known to be an adjective? Give examples of adjectives which have come to be used as nouns. Are English adjectives ever declinable? Give six examples of irregular forms of comparison. Of what word is "first" the superlative?

88. Explain all terms used in the classification of the letters of the Alphabet.

89. Describe and account for the different methods of indicating Case, Gender, and Number in nouns.

90. Write three short sentences showing the use of the word "that," (1) as a demonstrative pronoun, (2) as a relative pronoun, and (3) as a conjunction.

91. Give rules and examples showing the syntax of the Pronoun, when it is either the subject or in any way related to the subject of a sentence.

92. Analyse the following sentence :—

"I was confirmed in this opinion, that he who would not be frustrate of his hope to write well hereafter in laudable things, ought himself to be a true poem."

93. Correct or justify the syntax in each of the following sentences :—

"Avoid those kind of things."

"He printed a great number of authors in such a manner as show him to be a very ingenious and learned man."

"*Petulant*.—You were the quarrel.

"*Millamant*.—Me!"

"Regard is to be had to every one's circumstances, healths, and abilities."

"He was neither learned in the languages nor philosophy."

"I was going to have written him a letter."

"Now either spoke, as hope or fear impressed
Each their alternate triumph in the breast."

"The tale is to be in five chapters, and I have finished the first three."

94. Our "three" is in Latin "tres," in German "drei." Give some account of the law deduced from such variation in the form of words within the family of languages to which English belongs.

95. Trace the derivation of the words *stitch*, *rouse*, *wrench*, *dole*, *loss*, *loan*, *sud*, *glaze*, *dredge*,—distinguishing between primary and secondary derivatives.

96. "Plain *living* and high thinking are no more;" "This *living* death." Distinguish grammatically between the two forms of the word italicized in these two sentences, and add some information about what is called the Infinitive Mood in Verbs.

97. Write a few sentences to illustrate as fully as you can the fact that the grammatical use of the same word may vary, so that it shall be now one part of speech and now another.

98. Comment upon the grammar of each of the following sentences :—

"But the greatest error of all the rest is the mistaking or misplacing of the best or furthest end of knowledge."—*Bacon*.

"'Tis they, that still renew Ulysses' toils."—*Prior*.

"Thou great first cause, least understood,
Who all my sense confined."—*Pope*.

"The sun has rose and gone to bed,
Just as if Partridge were not dead."—*Swift*.

"In the temper of mind he was"—*Steele*.

" . . . which I had no sooner drank, but I found a pimple rising in my forehead."—*Addison*.

"'Twas Love's mistake, who fancied what it feared."—*Crabbe*.

99. What is "to" in the following phrases?—(1) "Early to bed and early to rise;" (2) "To-morrow;" (3) "What went ye out for to see?" After what verbs is "to" generally not inserted before the infinitive?

100. Explain the following forms, and state in each case the meaning of the italicized letters:—*Poet-ess*, *weal-th*, *dast-ard*, *satch-el*, *man-hood*, *with-stand*, *for-give*, *blu-ster*, *be-dim*, *be-times*, *truth-ful*, *John-son*, *coul-d*, *to* morrow.

101. Correct or justify the following, giving your reason in each case :—

"What kind of an article is *the*?"

"These ten last examples are of a different nature to the former."

"Seldom or ever did a lawyer rise to eminence by wit."

"Wrongs are engraved on marble, benefits too often on sand."

"These are apt to be requited, those forgot."

"In modern English two negatives destroy one another."

"No man is so perfect but what he may err."

"Without you learn it soon, it will be too late."

"Whom do you think he is?"

"He is one of the wisest that has ever lived."

102. Justify or correct the following, giving your reasons in each case :—

"While shame, *thou looking on*, did utmost vigour raise."—*Milton*.

"Homer as well as Virgil were studied on the banks of the Rhine."—*Gibbon*.

"There is *sometimes more* than one auxiliary to a verb."—*Murray*.

"*More than* a little is required of us."—*Butler*.

"Nothing but grave and serious studies delight him."

"Can England spare such men as him?"—*Brougham*.

"It is better for you and I as it is."

"You ought *to have come*."

"I expected *to have finished* at six."

"Mantua's law

Is death to any he that utters them."—*Shakespeare*.

"This sentence of the *Dean's* is itself ungrammatical."—*Cobbett*.

"I could not see it in the posture I lay."—*Swift*.

103. Correct or justify the following :—

"Who can it be from?"

"In men, as in carriages, firmness and softness in each is the best arrangement for the safety of all."

"The logical and historical analysis of a language often coincides."

"A history now by a Mr. Hume would be examined with different eyes than had it borne any other name."

"*'S* cannot be a contraction of *his*, for it is put to *female nouns*."

"*Men* are put in the plural number because they mean many."

"It is neither Osmyn nor Jane Shore that speak."

"His father's and his mother's names are on the blank leaf."

"His father and his mother's name is on the blank leaf"

"Like I did."

"Their healths were drank with great enthusiasm."

"Having failed in this attempt, no further trial was made."

104. Criticize the structure of the following sentences; and give the reason for any correction which you think it necessary to make :—

"This principle is of all others the most important."

"His conduct lost him the king's confidence."

"He took his departure from the same point from which his father had done."

"He was angry at me quitting the house."

"I had rather not go."

"The king then entered on that career of misgovernment, which, that he was able to pursue it, is a disgrace to our history."

"Thy honourable metal may be wrought
From that it is disposed."

"What conscience dictates to be done,
Or warns me not to do,
This, teach me more than hell to shun,
That, more than heaven pursue."

105. Examine the following expressions ; and give your reasons for thinking them either good or bad :—

"The Senate have decided."

"The King with the Lords and Commons form the Legislature."

"If thou beest he."

"Whom do you think I am?"

"From London to Brighton is fifty miles."

"I had rather not."

"Did he not confess his fault, and begged to be forgiven?"

"Our mutual friend."

106. Correct or justify the following, giving your reason in each case :—

"A versifier and poet are two different things."

"Liberal not lavish is kind Nature's hands."

"Not Prester John or Cham of Tartary
Are in their houses monarch more than I."

"I know how much pains have been taken in his case."

"I wish to cultivate a farther acquaintance with you."

"The sentence is faulty somewhat in the same manner with the last."

"Myself is (not am) weak : Thyself is (not art) strong."

"She fell a-laughing like one out of their right mind."

"A wise man scorneth nothing, be it never so small or homely."

"There are five compartments ; put it in either of them."

"Avoid extremes ; and shun the fault of such
Who still are pleased too little or too much."

"I was offered the post a year ago."

107. With what languages of Europe is English in origin most closely connected? What exactly is its relation to Latin? What to French?

108. Explain the term Anglo-Saxon. What objections are there to it? What terms have been proposed in its stead? Give reasons for its retention.

109. Mention any words that have been added to our vocabulary in the present century.

110. Discuss the plural form *children*. Write down some nouns that have no special form to express plurality. Is it correct to speak of "a two-foot rule"?

111. Point out the grammatical difference between *the* in such a phrase as "He did his duty, and was the happier for it," and the *the* in "He was the happier of them."

112. Examine the forms *lesser*, *worst*, *foremost*, *elder*, *farther*. Derive *next*, *last*, *best*, *further*, *rather*.

113. Explain the terms "strong" and "weak" as applied to verbs ; also the term *conjugation*. To which conjugation do you assign *teach*, *fight*, *work*, *do*, *fly*, *flow*, *flee*, *till*, *tell*, *toll*?

114. Mention some verbs that, being originally preterites, have come to be used as presents. Can you account for such a usage?

115. What is the force of *run* in such a phrase as "To run wild ;" of *wear* in "The day wears ;" of *give* in "The shoe gives ;" of *obtain* in "This doctrine obtained ;" of *take* in "Take offence"? Mention any noticeable uses of *to taste*, *ring*, *sit*, *stand*, *go*.

116. Point out and discuss anything grammatically questionable in these sentences :—

(a) The threatened assault was met by Buckingham by a counter attack on the Earl of Bristol, whom he knew would be the chief witness against him.

(b) They were desirous of removing those abuses which the Stuart kings had introduced into the Government, and which overlaid the Constitution.

(c) And many a holy text around she strews
That teach the rustic moralist to die.

(d) This view has been maintained by one of the greatest writers that has appeared in this country.

(e) The administration of so many various interests, and of districts so remote, demand no common capacity and vigour.

117. Give examples of verbs that are used both as "complete" and as "incomplete predicates;" and explain these terms.

118. Analyse these sentences:—

(a) What is this?

(b) I had rather not go.

(c) Who is he, to behave in such a manner?

(d) There were readers in multitudes; but their money went for other purposes, as their admiration was fixed elsewhere.

(e) His answers were such as to win unqualified praise.

119. Describe the metre of the following stanza:—

We look before and after,
And pine for what is not;
Our sincerest laughter
With some pain is fraught;

Our sweetest songs are those that tell of saddest thought.

120. Discuss each of these plural forms:—*Leaves, oxen, kine, men, brethren*; also the forms *news, pains, riches, caves, summons*.

121. What is a Cardinal Number? Distinguish between the forms of *two* and *twain*. Discuss the origin of the words *ten, eleven, twelve, hundred, thousand, dozen, score*.

122. Write eight sentences, giving four examples of the use of the same verb transitively and intransitively. Rewrite the four sentences containing transitive verbs with change of voice from active to passive. Add some notes upon the present use of the Subjunctive Mood in English.

123. Give the fullest sub-division of an English verb into tenses that you have met with in any grammar. Which of those tenses are distinguished by inflexions? Distinguish between *shall* and *will* as signs of a Future Tense.

124. Which form would you prefer to use: *He dare not*, or *He dares not*? What is to be said on behalf of each form? Explain the forms *willy nilly, won't, to wit*.

125. Explain, with reference to their origin, the use of the words *own* and *owe*, in "*I own a pound*," "*I owe a pound*," and "*I own I owe a pound*." Explain the verbs in the question "*How do you do?*"

126. Show how adverbs may be classified according to their meaning. Why are *Yes* and *No* placed among adverbs.

127. Analyse the sentence:—"There is no branch of human work whose constant laws have not close analogy with those which govern every other mode of man's exertion."

128. Correct or justify the syntax in the following passages, giving for each case the rule that is in question:—

(a) "It has generally been observed, that the European population of the United States is tall, and characterized by a pale and sallow countenance."

(b) "When distress and anguish cometh upon you."

(c) "By young Telemachus his blooming years."

(d) "Sorrow not as them that have no hope."

(e) "He having none but them, they having none but he."

(f) "Breaking a constitution by the very same errors that so many have been broke before."

(g) "They are not only the most charitable of any other nation, but most judicious in distinguishing the properest objects of compassion."

(h) "The part of this reed used by the Indians is from ten to eleven feet long, and no tapering can be perceived, one end being as thick as another."

(i) "It is observable that each one of the letters bear date after his banishment."

(j) "If he had writ me word by the next post this had been just and civil."

F. QUESTIONS SET AT THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LOCAL EXAMINATIONS (JUNIORS).

1. Define and derive (a) *pronoun*, (b) *preposition*. Shew how your answers apply to the words printed in italics in the following—(1) To be or not to be,—*that* is the question; (2) They had nothing to amuse themselves *with*.

2. Give the rules for forming the plurals of (a) nouns ending in *y*, (b) nouns ending in *ch*. Write down the possessive case plural of *fox*, *ox*, *salmon*, *youth*, *tooth*, *man-servant*, *servant-man*, *man-of-war*.

3. What parts of speech may an adverb modify? Parse fully the words *alone*, *almost*, in each of the following sentences:—(a) He almost succeeded alone; (b) He succeeded almost alone; (c) He, alone, almost succeeded.

4. What is a *passive* verb? Why so named? Write down (a) the infinitive *active*, (b) the infinitive *passive*, of the verbs to which belong *hast*, *did*, *willeth*, *bade*, *lade*, *made*.

5. What does the infinitive mood express? Parse fully the verbs in the following:—“It is laughable to see beginners play.”

6. Correct:—

(a) Should the frost continue as sharp as last week, which I do hope it may, the large pond will bare.

(b) He advised me to choose the smallest of the two, and which certainly appears to be the most preferable.

(c) If I had only ran the few last yards instead of walked, I should have caught the train easy enough.

7. Distinguish between a *phrase* and a *sentence*:—

“The Saxons invaded England.” Write out this sentence (a) with the predicate extended by a prepositional phrase, (b) with the predicate extended by an adverbial sentence relating to time.

8. Analyze:—

In Bruges town is *many* a stree
Hence busy life hath fled;
 Where, without hurry, noiseless feet
 The grass-grown pavement tread.
 There heard we, *halting* in the shade,
Flung from a convent-tower,
 A harp that tuneful prelude made
 To a voice of *thrilling* power.

Parse fully the words in italics.

9. Write down in a column all the parts of speech. Underline the one you consider most important, and doubly underline the two which you consider least important, giving reasons in each case for your opinion.

10. Give the derivation and definition of the term *adjective*. Distinguish the different kinds of adjectives in the sentence:—“Every man did that which was right in his own eyes.” Give one example of each kind of adjective not represented in the preceding sentence.

11. Write down, in tabular form, the past tense and past participle of each of the verbs *awake*, *flee*, *hurt*, *melt*, *ring*, *sew*, *slay*, *sow*, *wring*. Point out three of the above verbs which may be used both transitively and intransitively. Illustrate in each instance by a short sentence.

12. Parse the infinitives in the following sentences:—(1) To tell the truth I think you are to blame for going to sleep to kill time; (2) To think that any one, who can help it, should be content to live with nothing to do!

13. Give the derivation and definition of the term *participle*. Shew how your answer applies to the participles in the following sentence:—In playing tennis he was always forgetting that a ball returned by his opponent, if it touched the top of the net dividing the courts, was likely to twist.

14. Point out the ambiguities in the following sentence:—“Ethel told Mary that it would not be her fault if she did not succeed.”

Distinguish the different meanings obtained by changing the position of the word *only* in the following:—John attempted only three problems.

15. Correct:—(a) They each followed in their turn; (b) If he don't know I am sure I don't; (c) He did it without intending to.

16. Analyse, in tabular form:—

This England never did, nor never shall,
 Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror,
 But when it first did help to wound itself.
 Now these her princes are come home again,
 Come the three corners of the world in arms,
 And we shall shock them. Nought shall make us rue,
 If England to itself do rest but true.

Parse fully the words in italics.

17. Define *inflexion*. Which of the parts of speech are incapable of inflexion? Give two examples of each.

18. Give the derivation and definition of the term *pronoun*. Name the different classes of pronouns, and give two examples of each class.

19. What are *auxiliary verbs*? Give a list of them.

20. Which of the following verbs are intransitive :—*Bring, deceive, defy, destroy, fall, find, flow, raise, smile, strive*? Distinguish clearly between the meaning of *It is destroyed*, *He is deceived*, on the one hand, and that of *It is fallen*, *He is rich*, on the other.

21. Define *adverb*. Shew by examples what parts of speech adverbs qualify. Mention two adverbs of place, two of time, and two of degree; and form adverbs from *north, other, three, whole*.

22. In the following passage parse *fully* the words in italics :—

“The wonder is, not *that Wordsworth rose no higher*, but that, considering the level on which his taste was formed, he had power to rise to the height above his age, *which he did attain*. He has left the marks of his *teaching* upon every poet who has written verses *worth reading* for the *last twenty years*.”—C. Kingsley.

23. Correct the following, and give your reasons for the changes you make :—(a) I said that I will try again : (b) The son walks exactly like the father did : (c) This is one of the best books that has ever been written : (d) I heard of him saying as you were ill.

24. Analyse, in tabular form :—

The swallow stopt as he hunted the bee,
The snake slipt under a spray,
The wild hawk stood with the down on his beak,
And stared, with his foot on the prey,
And the nightingale thought, “I have sung many songs,
But never a one so gay,”
For he sings of what the world will be
When the years have died away.

G. QUESTIONS SET AT THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LOCAL EXAMINATIONS (SENIORS).

1. How many letters are there in the English alphabet? Which of these may be considered superfluous? Distinguish between *labials, dentals, gutturals, and sibilants*.

2. State the principal ways in which difference of gender in nouns is indicated. Write down the feminines of *gaffer, executor, emperor, fox, stoven, sultan*.

3. Define an adjective. Of what inflexions are adjectives susceptible? Give examples of adjectives that are capable of being used substantively.

4. What are the three natural divisions of time? How are these subdivided in grammar? Give the past tense and the past participle of the following verbs, and classify them :—*to awake, to beseech, to catch, to draw, to help, to strive, to weep*.

5. What is a preposition? Distinguish between the uses of prepositions and conjunctions. Give two examples of *phrase-adverbs* and *phrase-prepositions*.

6. State the rule for the agreement of the relative with its antecedent. When may the relative be omitted? Give an example.

7. Parse the words in italics in the following lines :—

The night is chill; the forest bare,
Is it the wind that moaneth bleak?
There is not wind enough in the air,
To move away the ringlet curl
From the lovely lady's cheek.—Coleridge.

8. Analyse :—

So cheer'd he his fair spouse, and she was cheer'd;
But silently a gentle tear let fall
From either eye, and wip'd them with her hair;
Two other precious drops that ready stood,
Each in their crystal sluice, he ere they fell
Kiss'd, as the gracious signs of sweet remorse
And pious awe, that feared to have offended.—Milton.

9. What is the meaning of *predicate, participle, adverb, apposition, genitive, infinitive mood*? Illustrate by an instance in each case.

10. Give the feminine of *sonyger, marquis, beau*; the masculine of *witch, roc, slut*; the plural of *sheep, sheaf, cargo, cameo*. Compare *out, awry, sad, fore, late*.

11. Distinguish between the use of *shall* and *will*; also between the use of *would* and *should*, giving examples original or quoted.

12. Give the past tense (1st person) and past participle of *drive, weave, slay, flee, cling, wring, wreak, help*. What forms of inflection of verbs (not taking auxiliary verbs into account) survive in English? Give one example of each kind.

13. Parse fully the italicised words in the following passages :—(1) He had *laid* him low : (2) It *were* best let alone : (3) Choose whom you will, we will pay *him* respect.

14. Analyse :—

In such a place as this, at such an hour,
If ancestry in aught can be believed,
Descending spirits have conversed with man,
And told the secrets of the world unknown.

15. Give English examples of the nine chief natural varieties of the verb as to *kind of action and time of action*.

16. Correct the following sentences and point out the nature of the mistakes :—*I had more rather he be neither a soldier or lawyer. Will boast boldlier than me?*

17. What is an inflexional language? What parts of speech may be inflected in English? Illustrate your answer by examples.

18. How does the possessive case differ both in form and in use from the old genitive? State and illustrate the rules for its use in the singular and in the plural.

19. In what cases may the subject be omitted in English? Explain the construction of *methought* in the sentence :—“*Methought the billows spoke and told me of it.*”

20. State the various ways in which the infinitive mood may be used. Give illustrative sentences.

21. Point out and correct, giving your reasons, any grammatical irregularities in the following sentences :—

(a) The look of immovable endurance which underlaid his expression.

(b) I offer a prize of six pairs of gloves to whomsoever will tell me what thought is passing through my mind.

22. Parse fully the italicised words in the following passage :—

All this, I know well *enough*, will sound *wild* and chimerical to the profane herd of those vulgar and mechanical politicians, who have no place among us : a sort of people who think that nothing exists *but what* is gross and *material* ; and *who*, therefore, *far from being qualified* to be directors of the great movement of empire, are not fit to turn a wheel in the machine.

23. Analyse :—

Daughter of Jove, relentless power,
Thou tamer of the human breast,
Whose iron scourge and torturing hour
The bad affright, afflict the best !
Bound in thy adamantine chain
The proud are taught to taste of pain,
And purple tyrants vainly groan
With pangs unfelt before, unpitied and alone.

24. What are the chief constituent elements of the English language? Give the derivation of six of the following words, pointing out any change of meaning :—*ally, agony, chaffer, check, dyspeptic, girl, journal, lord, oar, person, ornithologist, poison, rival, sherry, silly, somersault, spiec, telegraph, villain, volume.*

H. QUESTIONS SET AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY LOCAL EXAMINATIONS (JUNIORS).

1. What is a noun? Enumerate the various kinds of nouns, and instance objects to which they may be severally applied.

2. How is the past participle formed? Illustrate your explanation by reference to the following forms :—*Received, c'oven, fled, brought, flung, laden, shorn, put.*

3. What do you mean by Gender?

4. How should you describe “child” and “fowl” with respect to Gender? And what are the feminine forms of *actor, executor, hero, and lad?*

5. Analyse the following passage :—

From his native hills
He wandered far, much did he see of men.
Their manners, their enjoyments and pursuits,
Their passions and their feelings ; chiefly those
Essential and eternal in the heart,
That 'mid the simpler forms of rural life,
Exist more simple in their elements,
And speak a plainer language.

6. Parse each word in the following passages :—

- (1) His *caking* laid aside, he lived at ease.
- (2) The youth resigned
A task he was unable to perform.
- (3) We parted, nothing willingly.
- (4) He could afford to suffer
With those whom he saw suffer.

7. Give the past tense and the past participle of the following verbs :—*Steal, hold, creep, espy, tell, wear, build, receive, catch, bespeak, gird, receive, shut, stick, strike, sit, leave, decline.*

8. What is a pronoun?
9. What is the difference between a relative and a demonstrative pronoun?
10. What is an intransitive verb?
11. What is a verb in the passive voice?
12. Give an account of the English auxiliary verbs.
13. What is an adverb?
14. How are adverbs classified?
15. Analyse this passage :—

Yet not for these,
Nor what the potent victor in his rage
Can else inflict, do I repent or change,
Though changed in outward lustre, that fixed mind,
And high disdain from sense of injured merit,
That with the Mightiest raised me to contend.

16. Parse every word in the following passage :—

His spear, to equal which the tallest pine
Hewn on Norwegian hills, to be the mast
Of some great admiral, were but a wand,
He walked with.

17. Derive the following words :—*Puny, arrive, paramount, apathy, treason.*
18. Explain :—Simile, metaphor, elision, oblique narration.
19. Give the derivation of the following words :—*Profusely, assault, presage, master, courteous.*
20. Parse the words in italics :—

- (1) *What recks it them?* What need they? They are *sped*.
- (2) *Had ye been there?*
- (3) *Thin-spun* life.
- (4) That *sunk* so low.
- (5) "Who hath *reft*," quoth he, "my dearest pledge?"
- (6) *Let our frail thoughts dally.*

21. Derive :—*Isle, dirge, paradise, sprightly, ambush, melancholy, remorse, bower.*
22. Give some account of the following terms :—Syntax, Consonant, Analysis, Mood, Abstract Nouns, Participle.
23. Distinguish *case, tense, mood : rhyme, rhythm, metre.*
24. Parse every word in the following lines :—

It was that fatal and perfidious bark,
Built in th' eclipse, and rigg'd with curses dark,
That sunk so low that sacred head of thine.

25. Analyse and punctuate correctly :—

Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise
That last infirmity of noble mind
To scorn delights and live laborious days
But the fair guerdon when we hope to find
And think to burst out into sudden blaze
Comes the blind Fury with th' abhorr'd shears
And splits the thin-spun life.

I.—QUESTIONS SET AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY LOCAL EXAMINATIONS (SENIORS).

1. Explain the terms :—(a) Objective Case, (b) Apposition, (c) Abstract Nouns, (d) Auxiliary Verb, (e) Intransitive Verb. Illustrate your explanations by examples.
2. Give the past tense and perfect participle of each of these verbs :—*Sink, dig, flee, lie, lay, set, sit, thrive, fall, fell, rise, swim.*
3. Give the origin and meaning of the following prefixes :—*Con, de, dis, ac, sub, sym, un, in.* Illustrate your answer by examples.

4. Distinguish the imperfect participle from the participial substantive. Explain the expressions :—(a) Walking stick ; (b) Running footman ; (c) The house is a-building ; (d) He is building a house ; (e) Acting is better than talking.

5. What is a preposition ? Distinguish the preposition from the conjunction.

6. Analyse this passage :—

And where two raging fires meet together,
They do consume the thing that feeds their fury ;
Though little fire grows great with little wind,
Yet extreme gusts will blow out fire and all.

7. Parse each word which is printed in italics in the following passages, and state its grammatical connection with other words of the same sentence :—

(1) "*Boast* not my fall," he cried, "*insulting* foe !
Thou by some other shall be laid as *low*.
Nor think, *to die* dejects my lofty mind ;
All that I dread is *leaving you* behind."

(2) Come one, *come* all, this rock shall fly
From its firm base *as soon as* I.

(3) Besides, it were a *mock*
Apt to be rendered, for some one to say
"*Break up* the Senate till another time,
When *Cæsar's* wife shall meet with better dreams."
If *Cæsar* *hide himself*, they shall not whisper
"Lo, *Cæsar* is afraid !"

8. Name and distinguish the different uses of each of the following words :—*Himself, which, besides, rather, very, but, as*.

9. Explain the difference between :—(1) Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, (2) Adverbs and Conjunctions, (3) Subject and Object, (4) Nouns and Pronouns.

10. How does the language of Chaucer differ from modern literary English in the use of Inflections ? Trace the several changes as completely as you can.

11. Distinguish between :—*Lie, lay, laid ; eat, ate ; rode, road, rowed ; fell, fallen ; dyed, died ;* and give the present and past participles of :—*Slay, bray, reply, rise, shake, speed, shrive, flee, obey, shoot, teach, set*.

12. Parse fully all words in italics in the following passages :—

(1) *Ill* fares the land, to hastening *ills* a prey,
Where wealth accumulates, and *men* decay.

(2) For him *light* labour spread *her* wholesome store,
Just gave *what* life requir'd but gave no *more*.

(3) All *but you* widow'd solitary thing,
That feebly bends *beside* the plashy spring.

13. Punctuate the following passage :—

The needy traveller serene and gay
Walks the wild heath and sings his toil away
Does envy seize thee crush the upbraiding joy
Increase his riches and his peace destroy
New fears in dire vicissitudes invade
The rustling brake alarms and quivering shade
Nor light nor darkness brings his pains relief
One shows the plunder and one hides the thief.

14. Define a pronoun, and give a classification of pronouns, illustrating each class by examples.

15. Give the characteristic forms (present indicative, past imperfect indicative, and past participle), of *shake, scethe, meet, burst, lose, leap, ride, lie*, (1) to speak falsely, (2) to recline, and *lay*.

16. Write out the present subjunctive and the past subjunctive of "to be."

17. Distinguish between the use of "that" and "who" or "which" as relative pronouns.

18. Parse the words printed in italics in the following sentences or phrases :—

- (1) A *fool* of honour *better than* I was
- (2) He *creates* Lucius *proconsul*.
- (3) Matter of scorn *not to be given* the foe.
- (4) He spent a fortune *in educating* his son.

19. Distinguish between :—"Only he lost his child," "He only lost his child," "He lost only his child" "He lost his only child." "He lost his child only."

20. Analyse :—

Then she, for her good deeds and her pure life,
 And for the power of ministration in her,
 And likewise for the high rank she had borne,
 Was chosen abbess, there, an abbess, lived
 For three brief years, and there, an abbess, passed
 To where beyond those voices there is peace.

21. Parse the words in italics :—

His years but young but his experience old ;
His head unmelting, but his judgment ripe ;
And in a word (for far behind his worth
Come all the praises that I now bestow)
He is complete in feature and in mind,
With all good grace to grace a gentleman.

J. QUESTIONS SET AT EXAMINATIONS OF THE COLLEGE OF PRECEPTORS.

1. What facts in the early history of Britain are shown in the names Colchester, Caerleon, Lincoln, Stretford, Kirby, Sutherland?

2. Enumerate, with examples, the vowel sounds commonly found in modern English.

3. What letters in the English alphabet are superfluous, and why? What sounds have no separate symbol to represent them?

4. Do active and passive verbs differ in meaning? If not, how do they differ? What is a cognate accusative? Give an example. Parse *me*, in the sentence, "Write *me* a detailed account."

5. Analyse the following :—"*Every day is a little life, and our whole is but a day repeated: those therefore that dare lose a day, are dangerously prodigal: those that dare misspend it, desperate.*" Parse the italicised words.

6. Analyse the following passage :—

Gather the rosebuds while ye may,
Old Time is still a-flying ;
And the same flower, that smiles to-day,
To-morrow will be dying.

7. Parse the words in italics in the above passage.

8. Explain the use of the subjunctive mood, and distinguish between the words *might, should, could*.

9. Correct the errors, if any, in the following sentences, and account for your corrections :—

- (i.) Between you and I that man is greatly over-rated.
- (ii.) Morning or evening are the best time for meditation.
- (iii.) That wife of my cousin's makes him a clever housekeeper.
- (iv.) Every one must judge of their own feeling.
- (v.) If he speaks so he be a liar.
- (vi.) This writer's works are fraught with good and bad grammar.

10. Form two short sentences to show agreement in gender, and two others to show agreement in number, and then explain what grammatical agreement means.

11. How is the semicolon employed? Write two sentences in which it is used.

12. Point out the affixes in the following derivatives, and explain the force of each affix :—*Drunkard, brooklet, horsemanship, blackness, hatchet, sponsor, sophist, Canaanite, multitude, globule.*

13. Explain the meaning of the words :—*Opportune, Quixotic, enthusiasm, testimonial, privilege, implication* ; and form short sentences to show the usage of each.

14. Parse fully the words in italics in the following sentence :—

There is a Reaper whose name is Death,
 And *with his sickle keen*
 He *reaps* the bearded grain at a breath
 And the *flowers that grow between.*

15. Show clearly, by a table, the verbs, subjects, and objects in the following sentence :—"Our ship touched at an island on the way home, where my black servant took me a walk over rocks and hills, till we passed a garden where we saw a man walking."

16. Write three short sentences to show the use of personal pronouns. Give the objective case (singular and plural) of the pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it*.

17. What is meant by the *voice* of a verb, an *intransitive verb*, a *strong verb*? Write the following sentence in the passive form :—"The master scolded the boy."

18. What is the force of the prefix in each of the following words:—*mischance*, *unfortunate*, *retrospective*, *prospective*, *subterranean*, *contemporary*?

19. Write the present indicative 1st person singular of the verbs of which the following are the past participles:—*taught*, *spoken*, *chidden*, *eaten*, *shod*, *wrung*, *borne*.

20. Correct the following sentences, giving your reasons:—

(i.) He had not began his studies.

(ii.) Who are you looking for?

(iii.) The knife was laying on the table.

(iv.) His was one of those violent tempers that produces such sad results.

21. Punctuate, and put the necessary capitals and inverted commas in the following passage:—pompey was sailing about near the coast of asia in the year bc 66 after completing the destruction of the pirates when the news reached him of the great authority which had been given him though he had been longing for it in his heart and inducing his friends to try and get it for him he pretended not to like it now that he had it what he said will rome burthen me with a new war must i never have any rest.

K. QUESTIONS SET AT THE CIVIL SERVICE EXAMINATION FOR ENGINEER STUDENTS.

1. Divide the following lines into separate sentences, and name the kind of sentence each of them is. Define *sentence*, *subject*, *predicate*, and divide each of the separate sentences into subject and predicate:—

“Then think I of deep shadows *on* the grass;
Of meadows *where* in sun the cattle graze,
Where, as the breezes pass,
The *gleaming* rushes lean *a* thousand ways;
Of leaves *that* slumber in a cloudy mass,
Or whiten in the wind: *of* waters blue
That from the distance sparkle *through*
Some woodland gap.”

2. Parse those words in the above which are printed in italics.

3. What is an adjective? a preposition? a verb? What kinds of verbs are there? Write sentences containing examples of all the kinds, naming the kinds in each case.

4. In the following lines state clearly the nature of the work each word does in its sentence, and then name its part of speech:—

“A land, where, girt with friends or foes,
A man may speak the thing he will.”

5. What is a pronoun? What kinds of pronouns are there? From the following lines pick out the pronouns, and state of what kind each is:—

“I write not to hurt any, but to profit some.”

“This is the point whereat he would have stayed.”

“What’s that she mumbles?”

“What is he that shall buy his flock and pasture?”

“Certain came in that day who said Gordon had been slain.”

L. SELECT PASSAGES FOR PARSING AND ANALYSIS FROM EXAMINATION PAPERS.

1. Scarce the third glass of measur d hours was run,
When like a fiery meteor sunk the sun,
The promise of a storm; the shifting gales
Forsake by fits, and fill the flagging sails;
Hoarse murmurs of the main from far were heard,
And night came on, not by degrees prepared,
But all at once; at once the winds arise,
The thunders roll, the forky lightning flies.

2. For your wants,
Your suffering in this dearth, you may as well
Strike at heaven with your staves, as lift them
Against the Roman State; whose course will on
The way it takes, cracking ten thousand curbs
Of more strong links asunder, than can ever
Appear in your impediment: for the dearth,
The gods, not the patricians make it: and
Your knees to them, not arms, must help.

3. Serene will be our days, and bright
And happy will our nature be,
When love is an unerring light,
And joy its own security.
And they a blissful course may hold
Ev'n now who, not unwisely bold,
Live in the spirit of this creed ;
Yet find that other strength, according to their need
4. Yet did the King almost forsaken quite
By all his men, maintain a noble fight,
As if ashamed to outlive the sad
Discomfiture which his own rashness made
Nor did his faltering hand e'en then forget
To play a soldier's part ; appearing yet
Worthy the fear of his assailing foe,
While death attended every furious blow
5. Far differently the mute Oneyda took
His calumet of peace and cup of joy ;
As monumental bronze unchanged his look
A soul that pity touched but never shook :
Trained from his tree-rocked cradle to his bier
The fierce extreme of good and ill to brook
Impassive—fearing but the shame of fear—
A stoic of the woods—a man without a tear.
6. Come, lady, while heaven lends us grace
Let us fly this cursed place,
Lest the Sorcerer us entice
With some other new device.
7. Two such I saw, what time the labour'd ox
In his loose traces from the furrow came,
And the swink'd hedger at his supper sat ;
I saw them under a green mantling vine,
That crawls along the side of yon small hill,
Plucking ripe clusters from the tender shoots ;
Their port was more than human as they stood ;
I took it for a faery vision
Of some gay creatures of the element,
That in the colours of the rainbow live,
And play i' th' plighted clouds.
8. A while the maid the stranger eyed,
And reassured, at last replied,
That Highland halls were open still
To wildered wanderers of the hill.
Nor think you unexpected come
To yon lone isle, our desert home ;
Before the heath had lost the dew,
This morn, a corch was pulled for you ;
On yonder mountain's purple head,
Have ptarmigan and heath-cock bled,
And our broad nets have swept the mere,
To furnish forth your evening cheer.
9. Pure, quick, and sportful, is the wholesome day ;
But soon elaps'd. The horizontal sun,
Broad o'er the south, hangs at his utmost noon,
And, ineffectual, strikes the gelid cliff.
His azure gloss the mountain still maintains,
Nor feels the feeble touch. Perhaps the vale
Relents awhile to the reflected ray ;
Or from the forest falls the clustered snow,
Myriads of gems, that in the waving gleam
Gay twinkle as they scatter. Thick around
Thunders the sport of those who, with the gun
And dog impatient bounding at the shot,
Worse than the season, desolate the fields.

10. Above, below, in Ocean, Earth, and Sky,
Thy fairy worlds, Imagination, lie,
And Hope attends, companion of the way
Thy dream by night, thy visions of the day.
In yonder pensile orb, and every sphere
That gems the starry girdle of the year ;
In those unmeasur'd worlds, she bids thee tell,
Pure from their God, created millions dwell,
Whose names and natures, unreveal'd below,
We yet shall learn, and wonder as we know.
11. Still, where rosy pleasure leads,
See a kindred grief pursue ;
Behind the steps that misery treads
Approaching comfort view :
The hues of bliss more brightly glow,
Chastised by sabler tints of woe ;
And blended form, with artful strife,
Thy strength and harmony of life.
12. About the captive tides of Trojans flow ;
All press to see, and some insult, the foe.
Now hear how well the Greeks their wiles disguised ;
Behold a nation in a man comprised.
Trembling the miscreant stood : unarmed and bound,
He star'd, and roll'd his haggard eyes around,
Then said, " Alas ! what earth remains, what sea
Is open to receive unhappy me ?
What fate a wretched fugitive attends,
Scorn'd by my foes, abandon'd by my friends ?"
13. Her younger sister, that Speranza hight,
Was clad in blew, that her beseemed well ;
Not all so chearefull seemed she of sight,
As was her sister ; whether dread did dwell,
Or anguish in her heart, is hard to tell :
Upon her arme a silver anchor lay,
Whereon she leaned ever, as betell :
And ever up to heaven, as she did pray,
Her stedfast eyes were bent, ne swarved other way.
14. Dames of ancient days
Have led their children thro' the mirthful maze,
And the grey grandsire, skilled in gestic lore,
Has frisked beneath the burden of threescore.
So blest a life these thoughtless realms display
Thus, idly busy, rolls their life away :
Theirs are those arts which mind to mind endear,
For honour forms the social temper here :
Honour, that praise which real merit gains,
Or e'en imaginary worth obtains,
Here passes current ; paid from hand to hand
It shifts, in splendid traffic, through the land.
15. Though boundless snows the withered heath deform
And the dim sun scarce wanders through the storm,
Yet shall the smile of social love repay
With mental light, the melancholy day !
And when its short and sullen noon is o'er,
The ice-chained waters slumbering on the shore,
How bright the faggots in his little hall
Blaze on the hearth and warm the pictured wall !
16. This idol's day hath been to thee no day of rest
Labouring thy mind
More than the working day thy hands,
And yet perhaps more trouble is behind
For I descry this way
Some other tending ; in his hand
A sceptre or quaint staff he bears,
Comes on amain, speed in his look.
By his habit I discern him now
A public officer and now at hand :
His message will be short and voluble

APPENDIX.

Faulty Sentences.

N.B.—The references are to the Sections in the Grammar

Correct the following:—

1. Who does this book belong to?
This is incorrect, because, by Rule XVII., § 312, prepositions govern the objective case. "Who" should, therefore, be "whom," objective case, governed by the preposition "to." The corrected sentence stands thus:—To whom does this book belong?
2. Whom do you think owns this estate? (§ 294).
3. He is a servant whom I consider deserves promotion (§ 294).
4. You and me will take a walk (§§ 294, 372).
5. Whom do men say that he is? (§ 295).
6. I little thought it was her (§ 295).
7. That face of yours grows pale (§ 302, *Obs.* 4).
8. We called at Franklin's, the bookseller's (§ 303).
9. Somebody said so, I forget whom (§ 294).
10. Let you and I the battle try (§§ 305, 372).
11. Who do you think I met this morning? (§ 305).
12. He asked my father and I to visit him (§§ 305, 372).
13. I do not know who to send (§ 305).
14. Neither of them are better than they ought to be (§§ 324, 349)
15. Stephen is a better scholar than me (§ 373).
16. Is he older than her? (§ 373).
17. Was you there? or was it him? (§ 349, *Obs.* 3; § 295).
18. Neither you nor I answers the questions which are put (§ 354).
19. I have neither gold or silver (§ 374).
20. The boy and his father is coming (§ 350).
21. The waves dash him to earth; there let him lay (§ 161).
22. He don't like it (§ 349).
23. He has drove me wrong (§ 362, *Obs.* 4).
24. Me and you went to London (§ 294).
25. Observing the house actually on fire, it was evident the engines were required (§ 362).
26. I can't go unless John comes home (§ 355).
27. Riches does not belong to everybody (§ 349).
28. I saw a black and white man walking together (§ 330).
29. He picked up the man who he knocked down (§ 305).
30. Of London and Paris the former is the wealthiest (§ 318).
31. Going into the garden, the grass wetted my feet (§ 362).
32. You neither honour your father or your mother (§ 374; § 375, *Obs.* 4).
33. I saw the secretary and treasurer, and they examined my accounts (§ 330).
34. Of all other nations England is the greatest (§ 318, *Obs.* 2).
35. Being a fine day, I went out for a walk (§ 362).
36. How will we know whether is the greatest of the two? (§§ 148, 318).
37. Neither John or Thomas considered that morning or evening are the best time for study (§§ 374, 351).
38. Every member of our families have been introduced to each other (§ 349).

39. These sort of accidents often occur (§§ 331, 349).
40. I shall ride to-morrow if it is fine (§ 355).
41. If I was to run quick, I would fall (§§ 355, 367, 143).
42. He runs quicker than me (§§ 367, 373).
43. "Did you do it?" "Me? certainly not" (§ 294).
44. Tell me who you mean (§ 305).
45. Neither you or me are invited (§§ 374, 294, 351).
46. He did not get so many marks as me (§§ 372, 294).
47. Was you in time or not? (§ 349, *Obs.* 8).
48. Honour as well as profit are to be gained by this (§ 351, *Obs.* 1).
49. Solomon made as wise proverbs as any one has done, Him only excepted who was a much wiser man than Solomon (§ 298).
50. The council have no intention to adhere to its former decision (§ 352).
51. This is the best as I ever met with (§ 82).
52. He is more worthy of blame than me (§ 373).
53. The lion, having laid down, roared (§ 161).
54. Each of the boys read in their turn (§§ 349, 334).
55. The happiness or misery of men's lives depend very much on his early training (§§ 351, 334).
56. My "Lives of the Poets" are reprinting (§ 349, *Obs.* 3).
57. The effluvia was offensive (§§ 50, 349).
58. The object of the candidates are uncertain (§ 349).
59. Three months' interest are due (§ 349).
60. Neither king nor commoner were happy (§ 351).
61. Either he or I are in fault (§ 351).
62. No sound but their own voices were heard (§ 349).
63. Where was you all last night? (§ 349, *Obs.* 8).
64. What signifies promises without performance? (§ 349).
65. Every man and boy showed their joy by clapping their hands (§ 350, *Obs.* 3).
66. Are either of those sheep yours? (§§ 324, 349).
67. The "Last Days of Pompeii" were written by Bulwer Lytton (§ 349, *Obs.* 3).
68. He was one of the wisest men that has ever lived (§§ 342, 349).
69. Everybody has their faults (§ 334).
70. Having finished the chapter, the book was closed (§ 362).
71. I do not like those kind of things (§ 331).
72. This is the greatest error of all the rest (§ 318).
73. Homer as well as Virgil were studied at that period (§ 351, *Obs.* 1).
74. Nothing but grave and serious studies delight him (§ 349).
75. Such a prince as him had not been seen (§ 372).
76. The fleet are to sail to-morrow (§ 352).
77. The cavalry wears helmets (§ 352).
78. The pope and emperor were at variance (§ 330).
79. The parliament were dissolved (§ 352).
80. A numerous party were already there to greet him (§ 352).
81. Shakespeare is greater than any dramatist (§ 318, *Obs.* 2).
82. Shakespeare is the greatest of all other dramatists (§ 318, *Obs.* 2).
83. These kind of fish are very plentiful (§ 331).
84. Cicero was an orator and a statesman (§ 329).
85. Can you see a stone and a brick house? I can see neither (§ 330).
86. This folly is of all others the most prevalent (§ 318, *Obs.* 2).
87. Many an emigrant have regretted the domestic pleasures from which they have been deprived, and which were impossible to be carried to their new country.
88. The family was well conducted and regular attendants at church.
89. He had two sisters: the one a wealthy spinster, the other, a married sister, is the wife of a farmer.
90. As he lay down the weight, it slipped and broke his arm.
91. Whom do you suppose was going to go for it?
92. He said he won't give me none.
93. Neither of those boys have learned to read quick.
94. Louis was in some respects a good man, but being a bad ruler his subjects rebelled.
95. I do not know who you wished to read this letter.
96. I never have and never can believe it.
97. James and me was at school together; but John was older than us both.
98. The diligent study of classics and mathematics prepare the mind for any pursuit in which it might engage.
99. There has been at least three times as much rain fall this week than has been the case in the previous week.

100. He didn't ought to have broke the window.
101. Let each esteem other better than themselves.
102. I had more rather he be neither a soldier or lawyer.
103. If I had not broke your stick, you would never have run home, nor begun to tell those kind of lies, which nobody but foolish men believe.
104. *Horses* are plural.
105. She was angry at me making the remark.
106. What is the use of him saying so?
107. He accused the Minister for betraying the Dutch.
108. A man is the noblest work of the creation.
109. Every one of the rebels were banished from his native country.
110. His being at enmity with Caesar and Antony were the cause of perpetual discord.
111. The son walks exactly like the father did.
112. The British parliament consist of King, Lords and Commons.
113. Anybody may have this; I care not whom.
114. He married nobody knows who.
115. Nothing but misfortunes have been the result.
116. More than one writer has made the same remark.
117. Let you and I take a walk.
118. I said that I will try again.
119. These sort of apples are good to eat.
120. They have not yet began the game.
121. He talked like one out of their mind.
122. This must be drank on the premises.
123. The duke had not behaved with that loyalty as was expected.
124. In his writings there are not only beauty of style, but originality of thought.
125. We must be careful of our healths.
126. I saw many dead soldiers riding across the battle-field.
127. He seemed to eagerly listen.
128. I was going to have written him a letter.
129. They which seek wisdom will certainly find her.
130. They have chose the part of honour and virtue.
131. I would like to have seen him.
132. An army present a painful sight to a feeling mind.
133. He durst not to displease his master.
134. I expected to have seen you in the summer-house.
135. Who art thou who would oppose the king?
136. He has only done that much of his work.
137. Both Luther and Melancthon were sincere and zealous Reformers; but Luther was the most intrepid.
138. He was as rich or even richer than his father.
139. The centres of each ceiling are beautifully ornamented.
140. The "Lives of the Chancellors" are a voluminous work.
141. No nook or corner were left unexplored.
142. Mend your speech a little lest it mars your fortune.
143. The mourner began to bitterly weep.
144. I never knew one of them to find fault with it.
145. Eve was the fairest of her daughters.
146. Orestes had spoke the exact truth.
147. That face of yours is sad.
148. A more braver man I never knew.
149. Homer was the greatest of all other epic poets.
150. The council, being awakened by the serjeant-at-arms, rubbed its eyes.

For other examples, see "Examination Papers," pp. 260-283; and "English Composition," pp. 150-169.

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED
CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.
All books are subject to immediate recall.

NOV 4 1977

RECEIVED

NOV 18 1980

CIRCULATION

JAN 5 1982

RECEIVED BY

REC. CIR. OCT 23 781 2 1982

CIRCULATION DEPT.

JUL 1 1979

REC. CIR. MAY 30 1978

REC'D MUSIC

NOV 17 1980

LD21-32m-1,775
(S3845L)4970

Un

LD 21A-53m-12,30
(B6221810)4736

Aug 25
Gen
Universi
Berke

5PM

17

U C BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C052043143

